User Manual

Tektronix

TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series Digital Storage Oscilloscopes

071-1658-02

More Application, Information, and Pricing available at:

TestWorld

250 Technology Way
Rocklin, CA 95765

sales@testworld.com
1-855-200-TEST (8378)

Click to go www.TestWorld.com

This document applies to firmware version 1.0 and above.

www.tektronix.com

Copyright © Tektronix, Inc. All rights reserved. Licensed software products are owned by Tektronix or its subsidiaries or suppliers, and are protected by national copyright laws and international treaty provisions.

Tektronix products are covered by U.S. and foreign patents, issued and pending. Information in this publication supercedes that in all previously published material. Specifications and price change privileges reserved.

TEKTRONIX and TEK are registered trademarks of Tektronix, Inc.

TekConnect MyScope, and VocalLink are registered trademarks of Tektronix, Inc.

TekVISA, FastFrame, Pinpoint, and MultiView Zoom are trademarks of Tektronix, Inc.

Contacting Tektronix

Tektronix, Inc.
14200 SW Karl Braun Drive
P.O. Box 500
Beaverton, OR 97077
USA

For product information, sales, service, and technical support:

- In North America, call 1-800-833-9200.
- Worldwide, visit www.tektronix.com to find contacts in your area.

Warranty 2

Tektronix warrants that this product will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year from the date of shipment. If any such product proves defective during this warranty period, Tektronix, at its option, either will repair the defective product without charge for parts and labor, or will provide a replacement in exchange for the defective product. Parts, modules and replacement products used by Tektronix for warranty work may be new or reconditioned to like new performance. All replaced parts, modules and products become the property of Tektronix.

In order to obtain service under this warranty, Customer must notify Tektronix of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period and make suitable arrangements for the performance of service. Customer shall be responsible for packaging and shipping the defective product to the service center designated by Tektronix, with shipping charges prepaid. Tektronix shall pay for the return of the product to Customer if the shipment is to a location within the country in which the Tektronix service center is located. Customer shall be responsible for paying all shipping charges, duties, taxes, and any other charges for products returned to any other locations.

This warranty shall not apply to any defect, failure or damage caused by improper use or improper or inadequate maintenance and care. Tektronix shall not be obligated to furnish service under this warranty a) to repair damage resulting from attempts by personnel other than Tektronix representatives to install, repair or service the product; b) to repair damage resulting from improper use or connection to incompatible equipment; c) to repair any damage or malfunction caused by the use of non-Tektronix supplies; or d) to service a product that has been modified or integrated with other products when the effect of such modification or integration increases the time or difficulty of servicing the product.

THIS WARRANTY IS GIVEN BY TEKTRONIX WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT IN LIEU OF ANY OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. TEKTRONIX' RESPONSIBILITY TO REPAIR OR REPLACE DEFECTIVE PRODUCTS IS THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY PROVIDED TO THE CUSTOMER FOR BREACH OF THIS WARRANTY. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER TEKTRONIX OR THE VENDOR HAS ADVANCE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Table of Contents

General Safety Summary xiii

Environmental Considerations xv

Preface xvii

About This Manual xvii

Related Manuals and Online Documents xviii

Getting Started

Product Description 1-1

Model Key Features 1-1

Product Software 1-2

Software Upgrade 1-3

Installation 1-5

Unpacking 1-5

Checking the Environment Requirements 1-6

Connecting Peripherals 1-6

Powering On the Instrument 1-8

Shutting Down the Instrument 1-9

Backing Up User Files 1-9

Installing Software 1-10

Removing the Removable Hard Drive 1-13

Reinstalling the Removable Hard Drive 1-14

Enabling or Disabling Your LAN and Connecting to a Network 1-15

Setting up a Dual Display 1-16

Incoming Inspection 1-21

Self Tests 1-21

Functional Tests 1-22

Check Vertical Operation 1-23

Check Horizontal Operation 1-25

Check Trigger Operation 1-27

Perform the Extended Diagnostics 1-29

Operating Basics

Operational Maps 2-1

Documentation Map 2-2

System Overview Maps 2-3

Functional Model Map 2-3

Process Overview Map 2-5

User Interface Map - Complete Control and Display 2-6

Front-Panel Map - Quick Access to Most Often Used Features 2-7

Display Map - Single Graticule 2-8

Front Panel I/O Map 2-9

Rear Panel I/O Map 2-10

Reference

Acquiring Waveforms 3-1
Signal Connection and Conditioning 3-2
Connecting and Conditioning Your Signals 3-3
To Set Up Signal Input 3-6
To Autoset the Instrument 3-9
To Reset the Instrument 3-10
To Get More Help 3-10
Input Conditioning Background 3-11
Setting Acquisition Controls 3-17
Using the Acquisition Controls 3-18
To Set Acquisition Modes 3-24
To Start and Stop Acquisition 3-26
To Set Roll Mode 3-27
Acquisition Control Background 3-28
Acquisition Hardware 3-28
Sampling Process 3-29
Acquisition Modes 3-29
Waveform Record 3-30
Real-Time Sampling 3-31
Equivalent-Time Sampling 3-31
Interpolation 3-32
To Set Display Format 3-33
Using FastFrame 3-35
Using FastFrame Acquisitions 3-36
To Set FastFrame Mode 3-37
Time Stamping Frames 3-39

Triggering 3-43
The Pinpoint Trigger System 3-43
Triggering Concepts 3-44
The Trigger Event 3-44
Trigger Sources 3-45
Trigger Types 3-45
Trigger Modes 3-46
Trigger Holdoff 3-46
Trigger Coupling 3-47
Horizontal Position 3-48
Slope and Level 3-48
Delayed Trigger System 3-49
Triggering from the Front Panel 3-49
Access Procedures 3-49
To Check Trigger Status 3-53
Additional Trigger Parameters 3-54
Advanced Triggering 3-59

To Trigger on a Glitch 3-65
To Trigger on a Runt Pulse 3-67
Trigger Based on Pulse Width 3-69
To Trigger Based on Transition Time 3-71
Triggering on a Window 3-74
Trigger Based on Pulse Timeout 3-76
Trigger on a Pattern 3-77
To Trigger on a State 3-80
To Trigger on Setup/Hold Time Violations 3-81
Logic Qualify a Trigger 3-84
Sequential Triggering 3-85
Using Sequential Triggering 3-86
To Trigger on a Sequence 3-91
Comm Triggering 3-95
Serial Pattern Triggering 3-95

Displaying Waveforms 3-97

Using the Waveform Display 3-98
Using the Display 3-99
To Display Waveforms in the Main Graticule 3-103
Setting MultiView Zoom Controls 3-105
Using with Waveforms 3-105
To Zoom Waveforms 3-105
Customizing the Display 3-110
Using Display Controls 3-110
Set Display Styles 3-114
Customize Graticule and Waveforms 3-116

Measuring Waveforms 3-119

Taking Automatic Measurements 3-119
Using Automatic Measurements 3-121
To Take Automatic Measurements 3-123
To Localize a Measurement 3-128
Taking Cursor Measurements 3-130
Using Cursors 3-131
To Set the Cursor Sources 3-134
Taking Histograms 3-136
Using Histograms 3-137
To Start and Reset Histogram Counting 3-137
HistogramMeasurements 3-139
Optimizing Measurement Accuracy 3-139
To Compensate the Instrument 3-139
To Connect the Probe Calibration Fixture 3-141
To Calibrate Probes 3-141
To Deskew Channels 3-141
To Compensate Passive Probes 3-142
Serial Mask Testing 3-144

Creating and Using Math Waveforms 3-145

Defining Math Waveforms 3-146
Using Math 3-147
To Define a Math Waveform 3-153
Operations on Math Waveforms 3-156

Using Math Waveforms 3-156
To Use Math Waveforms 3-157
Defining Spectral Math Waveforms 3-160
Using Spectral Math Controls 3-161
Recognizing Aliasing 3-182
To Select a Predefined Spectral Math Waveform 3-184
To Define a Spectral Math Waveform 3-185
Spectral Math Example 3-193

Data Input/Output 3-199
Saving and Recalling a Setup 3-199
Using Auto-IncrementFile Name 3-200
To Save Your Setup 3-201
To Recall Your Setup 3-204
Saving and Recalling Waveforms 3-205
To Save Your Waveform 3-206
To Recall Your Waveform 3-209
To Clear References 3-211
Exporting and Copying Waveforms 3-213
To Export Your Waveform 3-215
To Use an Exported Waveform 3-222
To Copy Your Waveform 3-224
Printing Waveforms 3-228
To Print from Front Panel 3-228
To Print from Menu Bar 3-228
To Set Up the Page 3-229
To Preview the Page 3-230
To Print Using Print Screen 3-231
To Date/Time Stamp Hardcopies 3-232
Remote Communication 3-233

MyScope 3-235
Using MyScope Control Windows 3-238

Appendices

Appendix A: Automatic Measurements Supported A-1
Levels Used in Taking Amplitude, Timing, and Area Measurements A-5
Levels Used in Taking Eye Measurements
(Optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series) A-6
P Values A-7
T1 Values A-8
T2 Values A-8
DCD Values A-8
Measurements Annotations A-9

Appendix B: Menu Bar Commands B-1
File Commands B-1
Edit Commands B-3
Vertical Commands B-4
Horizontal and Acquisition Commands B-5
Trigger Commands B-7
Display Commands B-9
Cursors Commands B-11
Measure Commands B-11

Masks Commands B-13
Math Commands B-14
Application Commands B-14
Utilities Commands B-15
Help Commands B-16
Buttons B-16

Appendix C: Serial Mask Testing and Serial Triggering C-1
Product Description C-1
Installing Optional Serial Mask Testing and Serial Pattern Trigger Functions . C-3
Serial Mask Testing Functions C-4
Accessing Serial Pattern Trigger Functions C-7
Mask Testing C-8
Communication (Comm) Triggering C-28
Serial Pattern Trigger C-32
Supported Mask Types and Standards C-34
Supported Communication Trigger Codes and Standards C-38
Automatic Communication Signal Measurements C-41
Levels Used in Taking Eye Measurements C-42
Supported Mask Types and Standards C-45
Supported Communication Trigger Codes and Standards C-49
Automatic Communication Signal Measurements C-51
Levels Used in Taking Eye Measurements C-52

Appendix D: Cleaning D-1
Exterior Cleaning D-1
Flat Panel Display Cleaning D-2

Glossary

Index

List of Figures

Figure 1-1: Locations of peripheral connectors on rear panel 1-7
Figure 1-2: Powering on the instrument 1-9
Figure 1-3: Removing the hard drive 1-13
Figure 1-4: Reinstalling the hard drive 1-14
Figure 1-5: Enabling your LAN and connecting to a network 1-15
Figure 1-6: Setting up a dual display 1-17
Figure 1-7: Drag area for Windows task bar 1-18
Figure 1-8: Moving Windows desktop icons to the external monitor 1-19
Figure 1-9: Universal test hookup for functional tests - CH 1 shown 1-23
Figure 1-10: Channel button location 1-24
Figure 1-11: Setup for time base test 1-26
Figure 1-12: Setup for trigger test 1-28

Figure 3-1: Input and Acquisition Systems and Controls 3-2
Figure 3-2: Setting vertical range and position of input channels .. 3-13
Figure 3-3: Varying offset moves the vertical acquisition window on the waveform 3-14
Figure 3-4: Horizontal Acquisition window definition 3-15
Figure 3-5: Common trigger, record length, and acquisition rate for all channels 3-17
Figure 3-6: Roll mode 3-22
Figure 3-7: Aliasing 3-23
Figure 3-8: Digitizer configuration 3-29
Figure 3-9: Digital acquisition — sampling and digitizing 3-29
Figure 3-10: The waveform record and its defining parameters ... 3-30
Figure 3-11: Real-time sampling 3-31
Figure 3-12: Equivalent-time sampling 3-32
Figure 3-13: Acquisition XY display 3-34
Figure 3-14: FastFrame 3-35
Figure 3-15: FastFrame time stamp 3-41
Figure 3-16: Triggered versus untriggered displays 3-44
Figure 3-17: Triggered versus untriggered displays 3-46
Figure 3-18: Holdoff adjustment can prevent false triggers 3-47
Figure 3-19: Slope and level controls help define the trigger 3-48

Figure 3-20: Example advanced trigger readout 3-60
Figure 3-21: Violation zones for Setup/Hold triggering 3-64
Figure 3-22: Triggering on a Setup/Hold time violation 3-84
Figure 3-23: Triggering with Horizontal Delay off 3-87
Figure 3-24: Triggering with Horizontal Delay on 3-88
Figure 3-25: Reset trigger limitation 3-89
Figure 3-26: Trigger and Horizontal Delay summary 3-90
Figure 3-27: Display elements 3-98
Figure 3-28: Horizontal Position includes time to Horizontal Reference 3-102
Figure 3-29: Graticule, Cursor, and Automatic measurements 3-119
Figure 3-30: Annotated display 3-120
Figure 3-31: High/Low tracking methods 3-122
Figure 3-32: Reference-level calculation methods 3-123
Figure 3-33: Horizontal cursors measure amplitudes 3-131
Figure 3-34: Components determining Time cursor readout values 3-132
Figure 3-35: Horizontal histogram view and measurement data . . . 3-136
Figure 3-36: Probe calibration and deskew fixture 3-141
Figure 3-37: Pass/Fail mask testing 3-144
Figure 3-38: Spectral analysis of an impulse 3-145
Figure 3-39: Functional transformation of an acquired waveform . 3-146
Figure 3-40: Derivative math waveform 3-150
Figure 3-41: Peak-peak amplitude measurement of a derivative waveform 3-151
Figure 3-42: Duration and resolution control effects 3-162
Figure 3-43: Definition of gate parameters 3-163
Figure 3-44: Effects of frequency domain control adjustments 3-165
Figure 3-45: Effects of adjusting the reference level 3-167
Figure 3-46: Effects of adjusting the reference level offset control . 3-167
Figure 3-47: Example of the effects of setting the phase suppression threshold 3-169
Figure 3-48: Windowing the time domain record 3-171
Figure 3-49: Example of scallop loss for a Hanning window without zero fill 3-173
Figure 3-50: Time and frequency graphs for the Gaussian window 3-174
Figure 3-51: Time and frequency domain graphs for the Rectangular window 3-175
Figure 3-52: Time and frequency graphs of the Hamming window 3-176
Figure 3-53: Time and frequency graphs for the Hanning window . 3-177

Figure 3-54: Time and frequency graphs for the Kaiser-Bessel window 3-178
Figure 3-55: Time and frequency graphs of the Blackman-Harris window 3-179
Figure 3-56: Time and frequency domain graphs for the Flattop2 window 3-180
Figure 3-57: Tek Exponential window in the time and the frequency domains 3-181
Figure 3-58: How aliased frequencies appear in a spectral waveform 3-183
Figure 3-59: Auto-increment file name feature 3-201
Figure 3-60: Print window 3-228
Figure 3-61: Hardcopy formats 3-229
Figure 3-62: Page setup window 3-230
Figure 3-63: Print preview window 3-231

Figure A-1: Levels used to determine measurements A-5
Figure A-2: Eye-diagram values A-7

Figure C-1: Masks control window C-4
Figure C-2: Communication signal trigger functions C-5
Figure C-3: Communication measurement functions C-6
Figure C-4: Serial pattern trigger control window C-7
Figure C-5: Eye-diagram and optical values C-42
Figure C-6: Eye-diagram and optical values C-52

List of Tables

Table 1-1: Additional accessory connection information 1-8
Table 1-2: Vertical settings 1-24

Table 3-1: Additional resolution bits 3-19
Table 3-2: Pattern and state logic 3-62
Table 3-3: Defining and displaying waveforms 3-100
Table 3-4: Operations performed based on the waveform type ... 3-101
Table 3-5: Customizable display elements 3-111
Table 3-6: Cursor functions (types) 3-130
Table 3-7: Cursor units 3-133
Table 3-8: Math expressions and the math waveforms produced .. 3-148
Table 3-9: Spectral analyzer controls 3-161
Table 3-10: Window characteristics 3-172

Table A-1: Supported measurements and their definition A-1
Table A-2: Supported measurements and their definition A-9

Table B-1: File menu commands B-1
Table B-2: Edit menu commands B-3
Table B-3: Vertical menu commands B-4
Table B-4: Horiz/Acq menu commands B-5
Table B-5: Trig menu commands B-7
Table B-6: Display menu commands B-9
Table B-7: Cursor menu commands B-11
Table B-8: Measure menu commands B-11
Table B-9: Masks menu commands B-13
Table B-10: Math menu commands B-14
Table B-11: Application menu commands B-14
Table B-12: Utilities menu commands B-15
Table B-13: Help menu commands B-16

Table C-1: Masks control window functions C-4
Table C-2: Communication trigger functions C-5
Table C-3: Serial trigger functions C-7
Table C-4: ITU-T masks C-35

Table C–5: ANSI T1.102 masks **C–35**
Table C–6: Ethernet masks **C–35**
Table C–7: SONET/SDH masks **C–35**
Table C–8: Fibre Channel masks **C–36**
Table C–9: Fibre Channel Electrical masks **C–36**
Table C–10: InfiniBand masks **C–37**
Table C–11: Serial ATA masks **C–37**
Table C–12: USB 1.1/2.0 masks **C–37**
Table C–13: 1394b masks **C–37**
Table C–14: Rapid IO LP-LVDS masks **C–37**
Table C–15: Rapid IO Serial masks **C–37**
Table C–16: IOF masks **C–38**
Table C–17: PCI-Express masks **C–38**
Table C–18: SAS masks **C–38**
Table C–19: AMI trigger standards **C–39**
Table C–20: B3ZS trigger standards **C–39**
Table C–21: B6ZS trigger standards **C–39**
Table C–22: B8ZS trigger standards **C–39**
Table C–23: CMI trigger standards **C–39**
Table C–24: HDB3 trigger standards **C–40**
Table C–25: MLT3 trigger standards **C–40**
Table C–26: NRZ trigger standards **C–40**
Table C–27: Supported communications measurements and their definition **C–41**
Table C–28: ITU-T masks **C–45**
Table C–29: ANSI T1.102 masks **C–45**
Table C–30: Ethernet masks **C–45**
Table C–31: SONET/SDH masks **C–46**
Table C–32: Fibre Channel masks **C–46**
Table C–33: Fibre Channel Electrical masks **C–46**
Table C–34: InfiniBand masks **C–47**
Table C–35: Serial ATA masks **C–47**
Table C–36: USB 1.1/2.0 masks **C–47**
Table C–37: 1394b masks **C–47**
Table C–38: Rapid IO LP-LVDS masks **C–47**
Table C–39: Rapid IO Serial masks **C–47**
Table C–40: IOF masks **C–48**
Table C–41: PCI-Express masks **C–48**
Table C–42: SAS masks **C–48**

Table C-43: AMI trigger standards C-49
Table C-44: B3ZS trigger standards C-49
Table C-45: B6ZS trigger standards C-49
Table C-46: B8ZS trigger standards C-49
Table C-47: CMI trigger standards C-50
Table C-48: HDB3 trigger standards C-50
Table C-49: MLT3 trigger standards C-50
Table C-50: NRZ trigger standards C-50
Table C-51: Supported communications measurements and their definition C-51

General Safety Summary

Review the following safety precautions to avoid injury and prevent damage to this product or any products connected to it. To avoid potential hazards, use this product only as specified.

Only qualified personnel should perform service procedures.

While using this product, you may need to access other parts of the system. Read the *General Safety Summary* in other system manuals for warnings and cautions related to operating the system.

To Avoid Fire or Personal Injury

Use Proper Power Cord. Use only the power cord specified for this product and certified for the country of use.

Connect and Disconnect Properly. Do not connect or disconnect probes or test leads while they are connected to a voltage source.

Ground the Product. This product is grounded through the grounding conductor of the power cord. To avoid electric shock, the grounding conductor must be connected to earth ground. Before making connections to the input or output terminals of the product, ensure that the product is properly grounded.

Observe All Terminal Ratings. To avoid fire or shock hazard, observe all ratings and markings on the product. Consult the product manual for further ratings information before making connections to the product.

Powering Off. The power cord provides Mains disconnect.

Do Not Operate Without Covers. Do not operate this product with covers or panels removed.

Use Proper Fuse. Use only the fuse type and rating specified for this product.

Avoid Exposed Circuitry. Do not touch exposed connections and components when power is present.

Wear Eye Protection. Wear eye protection if exposure to high-intensity rays or laser radiation exists.

Do Not Operate With Suspected Failures. If you suspect there is damage to this product, have it inspected by qualified service personnel.

Do Not Operate in Wet/Damp Conditions.

Do Not Operate in an Explosive Atmosphere.

Keep Product Surfaces Clean and Dry.

Provide Proper Ventilation. Refer to the manual's installation instructions for details on installing the product so it has proper ventilation.

Symbols and Terms

Terms in this Manual. These terms may appear in this manual:

WARNING. *Warning statements identify conditions or practices that could result in injury or loss of life.*

CAUTION. *Caution statements identify conditions or practices that could result in damage to this product or other property.*

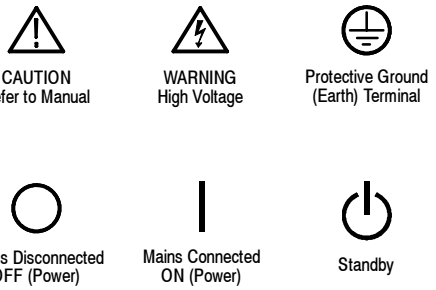
Terms on the Product. These terms may appear on the product:

DANGER indicates an injury hazard immediately accessible as you read the marking.

WARNING indicates an injury hazard not immediately accessible as you read the marking.

CAUTION indicates a hazard to property including the product.

Symbols on the Product. The following symbols may appear on the product:



Environmental Considerations

This section provides information about the environmental impact of the product.

Product End-of-Life Handling

Observe the following guidelines when recycling an instrument or component:

Equipment Recycling. Production of this equipment required the extraction and use of natural resources. The equipment may contain substances that could be harmful to the environment or human health if improperly handled at the product's end of life. In order to avoid release of such substances into the environment and to reduce the use of natural resources, we encourage you to recycle this product in an appropriate system that will ensure that most of the materials are reused or recycled appropriately.

The symbol shown to the left indicates that this product complies with the European Union's requirements according to Directive 2002/96/EC on waste electrical and electronic equipment (WEEE). For information about recycling options, check the Support/Service section of the Tektronix Web site (www.tektronix.com).

Mercury Notification. This product uses an LCD backlight lamp that contains mercury. Disposal may be regulated due to environmental considerations. Please contact your local authorities or, within the United States, the Electronics Industries Alliance (www.eiae.org) for disposal or recycling information.

Restriction of Hazardous Substances

This product has been classified as Monitoring and Control equipment, and is outside the scope of the 2002/95/EC RoHS Directive. This product is known to contain lead, cadmium, mercury, and hexavalent chromium.

Preface

This user manual covers the following information:

- Describes the capabilities of the instrument, how to install it and how to reinstall its software
- Explains how to operate the instrument: how to control acquisition of, processing of, and input/output of information

About This Manual

This manual is composed of the following chapters:

- *Getting Started* shows you how to configure and install your instrument and provides an incoming inspection procedure.
- *Operating Basics* uses maps to describe the various interfaces for controlling the instrument, including the front panel and the software user interface. These maps provide overviews of the product and its functions from several viewpoints.
- *Reference* comprises an encyclopedia of topics that describe the instrument interface and features, and gives background and basic information on how to use them. (The online help onboard the instrument application describes the interface, features, and their usage; detailed descriptions of all programming commands are found in the Programmer Online Guide.)
- *Appendices* provides additional information including cleaning information.

Related Manuals and Online Documents

This manual is part of a document set of standard-accessory manuals and online documentation; this manual mainly focuses on installation, background, and user information needed to use the product features. See the following list for other documents supporting instrument operation and service.

Document name	Description
Online Help	An online help system, integrated with the User Interface application that ships with this product. The help is preinstalled in the instrument.
Reference	A quick reference to major features of the instrument and how they operate.
Programmer Online Guide	An alphabetical listing of the programming commands and other information related to controlling the instrument over the GPIB[1].
Specification & Performance Verification	Provides the instrument's specifications, testing equipment, and performance verification procedures[1].

1 Located on the Product Software CD. See CD instructions for installation instructions.

For more information on how the product documentation relates to the instrument operating interfaces and features, see *Documentation Map* on page 2–2.

Getting Started

Product Description

This chapter describes the TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series Digital Storage Oscilloscopes and their options. Following this description are three sections:

- *Installation* shows you how to configure and install the instrument, as well as how to reinstall the system software included with the product.
- *Incoming Inspection* provides a procedure for verifying basic operation and functionality.
- *Accessories & Options* lists the standard and optional accessories for this product.

Model Key Features

TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series instruments are high performance solutions for verifying, debugging, and characterizing sophisticated electronic designs. The series features exceptional signal acquisition performance, operational simplicity, and open connectivity to the design environment. Classic analog-style controls, a large touch-sensitive display, and graphical menus provide intuitive control. Open access to the Windows operating system enables unprecedented customization and extensibility. Key features include:

- 6 GHz bandwidth and 20 GS/s real time sampling rate, TDS6604B
- 8 GHz bandwidth and 20 GS/s real time sampling rate, TDS6804B
- 12 GHz bandwidth and 40 GS/s real time sampling rate, TDS6124C
- 15 GHz bandwidth and 40 GS/s real time sampling rate, TDS6154C
- Enhanced Bandwidth capability that, when enabled, applies Digital Signal Process (DSP) filters that can extend the bandwidth and flatten the bandpass. Enhanced Bandwidth has three components: magnitude correction through the bandpass, phase linearity correction through the bandpass, and bandwidth extension on some models.
- Record lengths up to 64,000,000 samples, depending on model and option
- Up to 2.0% DC vertical gain accuracy
- Four input channels (each with 8-bit resolution), auxiliary trigger input and output
- Sample, envelope, peak-detect, high-resolution, waveform database, and average acquisition modes

- Full programmability, with an extensive GPIB-command set and a message-based interface
- Trigger types for both A and B Event & Delayed B Event include Edge, Glitch, Runt, Width, Transition Time, Timeout, Pattern, State, Setup/Hold, and Window. All except Edge, Pattern, and State can be Logic State qualified by up to two channels. Trigger sensitivity is up to 4 divisions at 9 Hz. Trigger jitter is as low as >1.1 ps RMS. You can trigger on a glitch or runt of less than approximately 100 ps.
- Powerful built-in measurement capability, including histograms, automatic measurements, eye pattern measurements and measurement statistics
- A large 10.4 inch (264.2 mm) high resolution XGA color display that supports color grading of waveform data to show sample density
- MultiView Zoom to view and compare up to four zoom areas at a time. Lock and manually or automatically scroll up to four zoom areas
- An intuitive, graphical user interface (UI), with online help that is built in and available on screen
- Internal, removable disk storage
- Wide array of probing solutions

Product Software

The instrument includes the following software:

- System Software. Includes a specially configured version of Windows xp preinstalled on the instrument. Windows^{xp} is the operating system on which the user-interface application of this product runs, and provides an open desktop for you to install other compatible applications. Do not attempt to substitute any version of Windows that is not specifically provided by Tektronix for use with your instrument.
- Product Software. Comes preinstalled on the instrument. This software, running on Windows^{xp}, is the instrument application. This software starts automatically when the instrument is powered on, and provides the user interface (UI) and all other instrument control functions. You can also minimize the instrument application.
- Support Software. The compact discs, included with the instrument, contain additional useful software and files that can be installed on your instrument:
  - Readme file. This file contains release notes and updates that could not be included in other product documentation.

- GPIB Programmer Online Help software. This software, in an online help format, contains the information that you need to program the instrument through its GPIB interface. A printable PDF file of this information is also available on the compact disc.
- Performance Verification Procedures. The compact disc contains instructions to perform a performance verification.

See the instructions for the compact discs for information about installing the support software.

Occasionally new versions of software for your instrument may become available at our web site. See *Contacting Tektronix* on the back of the title page.

Software Upgrade

Tektronix may offer software upgrade kits for the instrument. Contact your Tektronix service representative for more information (see *Contacting Tektronix* on the back of the title page).

Installation

This chapter covers installation of the instrument.

Unpacking

Verify that you have received all of the parts of your instrument. The Standard Accessories list shows the standard accessories that you should find in the shipping carton (probes depend on the option you ordered.) You should also verify that you have:

- The correct power cord for your geographical area.
- The compact discs that include copies of the software installed on the instrument and additional support software that may be useful to you: the Operating System Restore, Product Software, and Optional Applications Software. Store the product software in a safe location where you can easily retrieve it.

***NOTE**. The certificate of authenticity (Windows xp licence agreement) is attached to the rear of your instrument. This certificate proves your ownership of the Windows operating system in your instrument. Without this certificate, you might purchase a new Windows license if the hard disk in your instrument requires rebuilding or replacement.*

- All the standard and optional accessories that you ordered.

Fill out and send in the customer registration card.

Checking the Environment Requirements

Read this section before attempting any installation procedures. This section describes site considerations, power requirements, and ground connections for your instrument.

Site Considerations

The instrument is designed to operate on a bench or on a cart in the normal position (on the bottom feet). For proper cooling, at least three inches (7.62 cm) of clearance is required on both sides of the instrument, and the bottom requires the clearance provided by the instrument feet.

If you operate the instrument while it is resting on the rear feet, make sure that you properly route any cables coming out of the rear of the instrument to avoid damaging them.

CAUTION. *To prevent damage to the instrument, keep the bottom and sides of the instrument clear of obstructions for proper cooling.*

Connecting Peripherals

The peripheral connections are the same as those you would make on a personal computer. The connection points are shown in Figure 1–1. See Table 1–1 on page 1–8 for additional connection information.

CAUTION. *To avoid product damage, either power off the instrument or place the instrument in Standby power mode before installing any accessories except a USB mouse or keyboard to the instrument connectors. (You can connect and disconnect USB devices with the power on.) See* Shutting Down the Instrument *on page 1–9.*

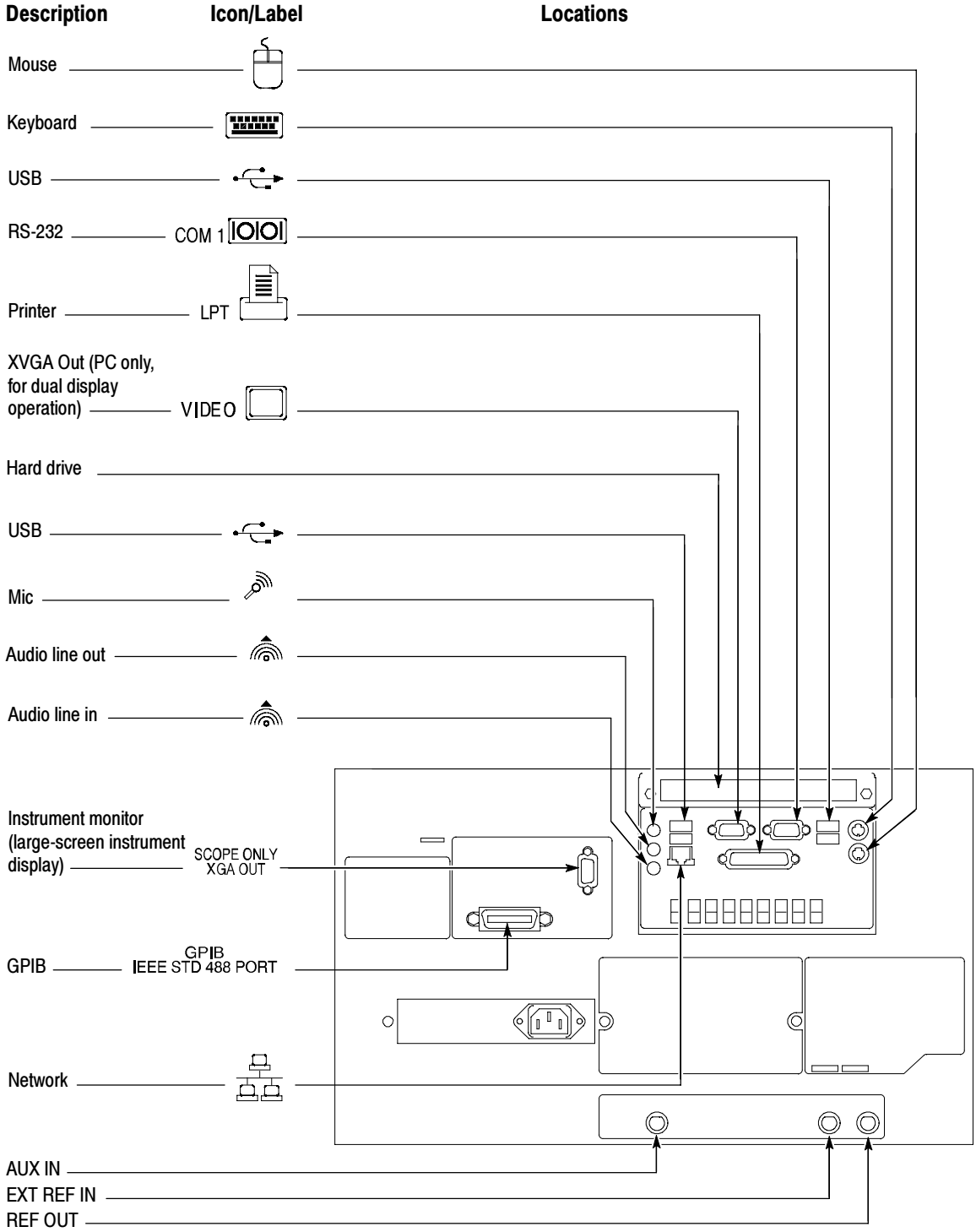


Figure 1-1: Locations of peripheral connectors on rear panel

Table 1-1: Additional accessory connection information

Item	Description
Monitor	If you use a nonstandard monitor, you may need to change the Windows xp display settings to achieve the proper resolution for your monitor. To set up a dual display, see page 1-16.
Printer	Connect the printer to the EPP (enhanced parallel port) connector directly. If your printer has a DB-25 connector, use the adapter cable that came with your printer to connect to the EPP connector. For information on printer usage, see *Printing Waveforms* on page 3-228.
Rackmount	Refer to the Rackmount Installation Instructions for information on installing the rackmount kit.
Other	Refer to the Readme file on the Product Software CD for possible additional accessory installation information not covered in this manual.

Powering On the Instrument

Follow these steps to power on the instrument for the first time.

CAUTION. *Connect the keyboard, mouse, and other accessories before applying power to the product.*

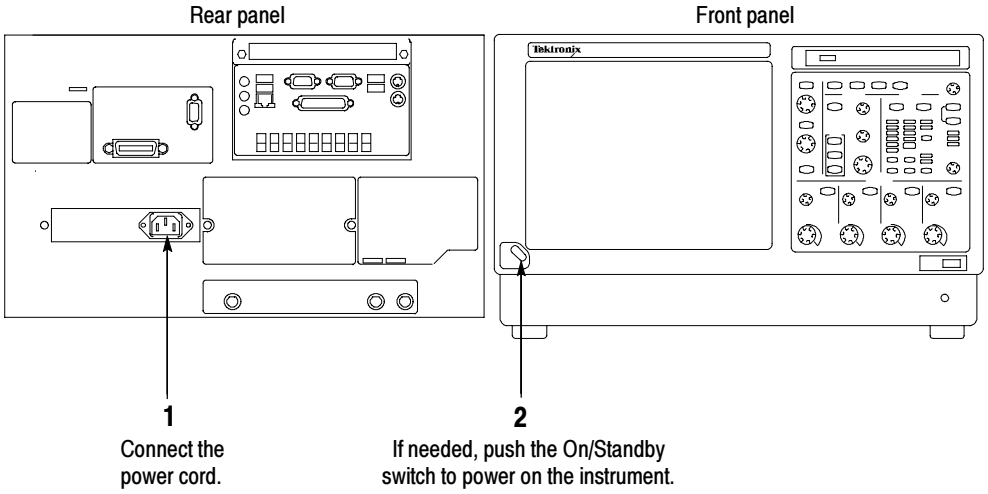


Figure 1- 2: Powering on the instrument

Shutting Down the Instrument

When you push the front-panel On/Standby switch, the instrument starts a shutdown process (including a Windows shutdown) to preserve settings and then removes power from most circuitry in the instrument. Avoid disconnecting the line cord to power off the instrument.

NOTE*. If you do not use the On/Standby switch to shut down the instrument before powering off the instrument, the instrument will be in the factory Default Setup when powered on the next time.*

To completely remove power to the instrument, perform the shutdown just described, remove the power cord from the instrument.

Backing Up User Files

You should back up your user files on a regular basis. Use the Back Up tool to back up files stored on the hard disk. The Back Up tool is located in the System Tools folder in the Accessories folder.

1. Minimize the instrument application by selecting **Minimize** in the File menu.
2. Touch the Windows **Start** button.
3. Select **All Programs**, **Accessories**, **System Tools**, **Backup** in the Start menu.

4. Use the backup tool that displays to select your backup media and to select the files and folders that you want to back up. Use the Windows online help for information on using the Backup tool. You can back up to the CD-RW drive, USB 2.0 memory device, or to a third-party storage device over the printer port (rear panel).

Installing Software

The instrument system and application software is preinstalled at the factory. If you need to reinstall the software, refer to the instructions that accompany the CDs shipped with the instrument. If you need to restore the operating system, you also need the Windows license information from the Certificate of Authenticity shipped with the instrument.

Software Release Notes

Read the software release notes README.TXT ASCII file on the product-software CD before performing installation procedures. This file contains additional installation and operation information that supercedes other product documentation.

To view the README.TXT file, open the Notepad Windows accessory. Then open the file on the Product Software CD.

Accessory Software

The Product Software CD also contains accessory software and files that you can choose to install in the instrument or in another computer. Refer to the instructions that accompany the CD for installation information.

GPIB Programmer Online Help Software. You can install the GPIB Programmer online help on the instrument, but it may be more convenient to install it on the PC that is functioning as the GPIB system controller. From the system controller, you can copy and paste commands from the help directly into your test programs. The programmer information contains the following content:

- GPIB configuration information for the instrument
- Lists of the command groups and the commands they contain
- Detailed command descriptions including syntax and examples
- Status and error messages
- Programming examples

The CD also contains a printable version of the programmer information in the form of a PDF file.

Manual Performance Verification Procedure. This is a printable PDF file that describes how to verify the instrument performance using generic test equipment.

User manual. This is a PDF file of this user manual.

Optional Accessory Software. The *Optional Applications Software* CD contains programs that you can install and run five times per application. You can then purchase an upgrade from Tektronix if you decide that you want to continue to use the application. Refer to the instructions that accompany the CD for installation information.

Desktop Applications

You can install desktop application software on the instrument. The instrument has been tested with the following software products installed:

- Microsoft Office 2000 (including Word, Excel, Powerpoint, and Access)
- MathCad
- MATLAB

Other software products may be compatible but have not been tested by Tektronix. If the instrument malfunctions after you install software, you should uninstall the software, and then reinstall the instrument application to restore proper operation.

Exiting the Instrument Application. Before installing other desktop applications, you should exit the instrument application. Follow these steps to exit the instrument application:

NOTE*. If you are not using a USB keyboard and mouse, you must power on the instrument after attaching your keyboard and mouse.*

1. Connect a keyboard and mouse to the instrument.
2. While holding down the **CTRL** and **ALT** keys, press the **DELETE** key.
3. Select **Task Manager**.
4. In the Applications tab, select **TekScope.exe**, and then select **End Process** to stop the instrument application.

The instrument application will restart after you restart the entire system, following the installation of the desktop application software.

Options

Some options contain software that must be installed and/or enabled. To do the installation, follow the specific instructions that come with the option.

Tektronix provides a key that you must enter (one time) to enable all the options that you have purchased for your instrument. To enter the key, select **Option Installation** in the **Utilities** menu, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

Removing the Removable Hard Drive

The removable hard drive is preinstalled at the factory. You can secure data separate from the instrument with the removeable hard drive. To remove the hard drive follow these steps:

1. Verify that the instrument is powered off.
2. Set the instrument so its bottom is down on the work surface and its rear panel is facing you. See Figure 1–3 on page 1–13. Note, if you have option FHD installed on your instrument, the front panel should be facing you instead of the rear panel.
3. Loosen the thumb screws that secure the hard drive to the drive tray.
4. Grasp the hard disk drive assembly by the thumb screws and pull until the handle is exposed. Grasp the handle and pull the hard drive assembly straight out of the instrument.

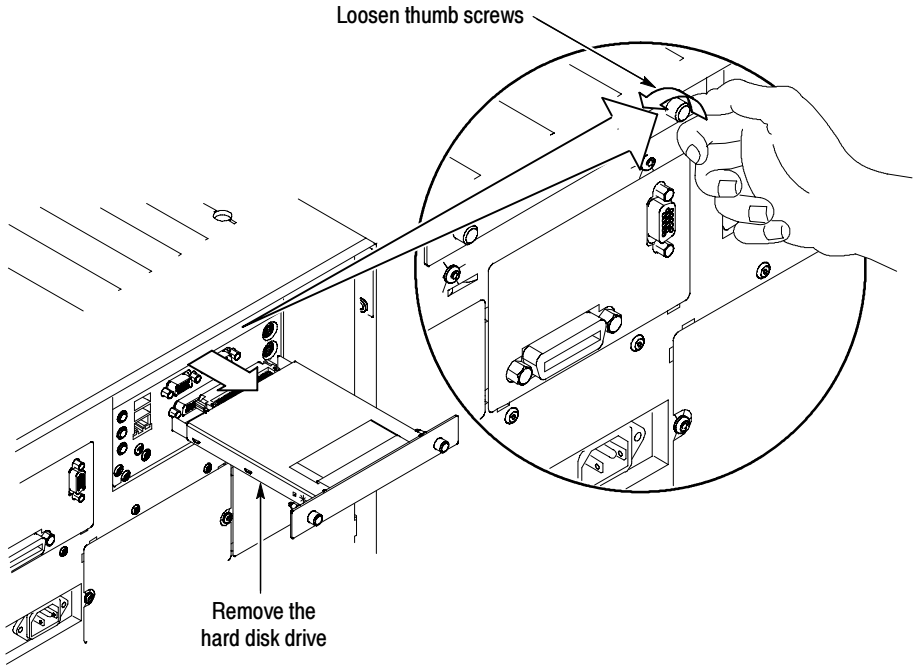


Figure 1-3: Removing the hard drive

Reinstalling the Removable Hard Drive

To reinstall the hard drive follow these steps. See Figure 1–4 on page 1–14.

1. Verify that the instrument is powered off.
2. Leaving the cover/handle extended, push the hard drive assembly into place until it stops, ensuring that it is straight. Push the hard drive assembly firmly to ensure that the connector is seated properly.
3. Slide the cover/handle in until it stops. It will be alsmost flush with the back panel.
4. Finger tighten the two thumb screws to ensure that the removeable hard drive is properly seated.

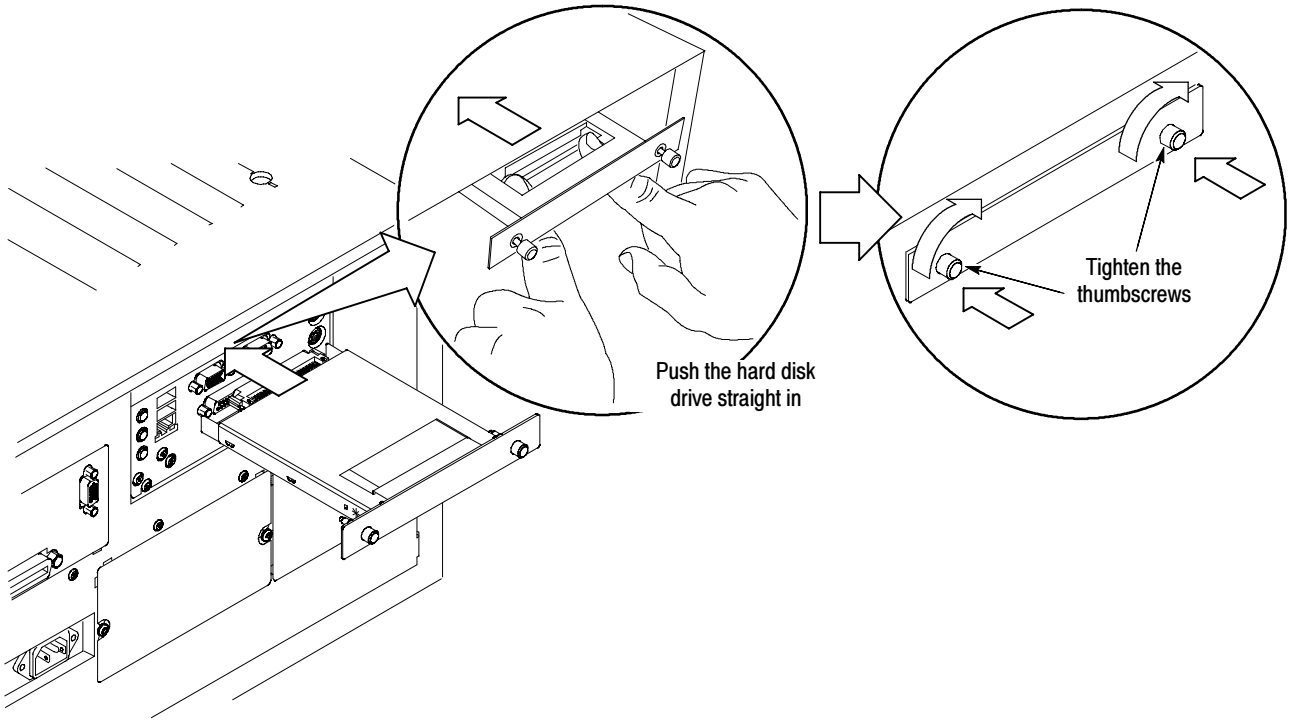


Figure 1-4: Reinstalling the hard drive

Enabling or Disabling Your LAN and Connecting to a Network

You can connect the instrument to a network to enable printing, file sharing, internet access, and other communications functions. Before you make the connection, do the following steps to enable (the default) network access to the instrument:

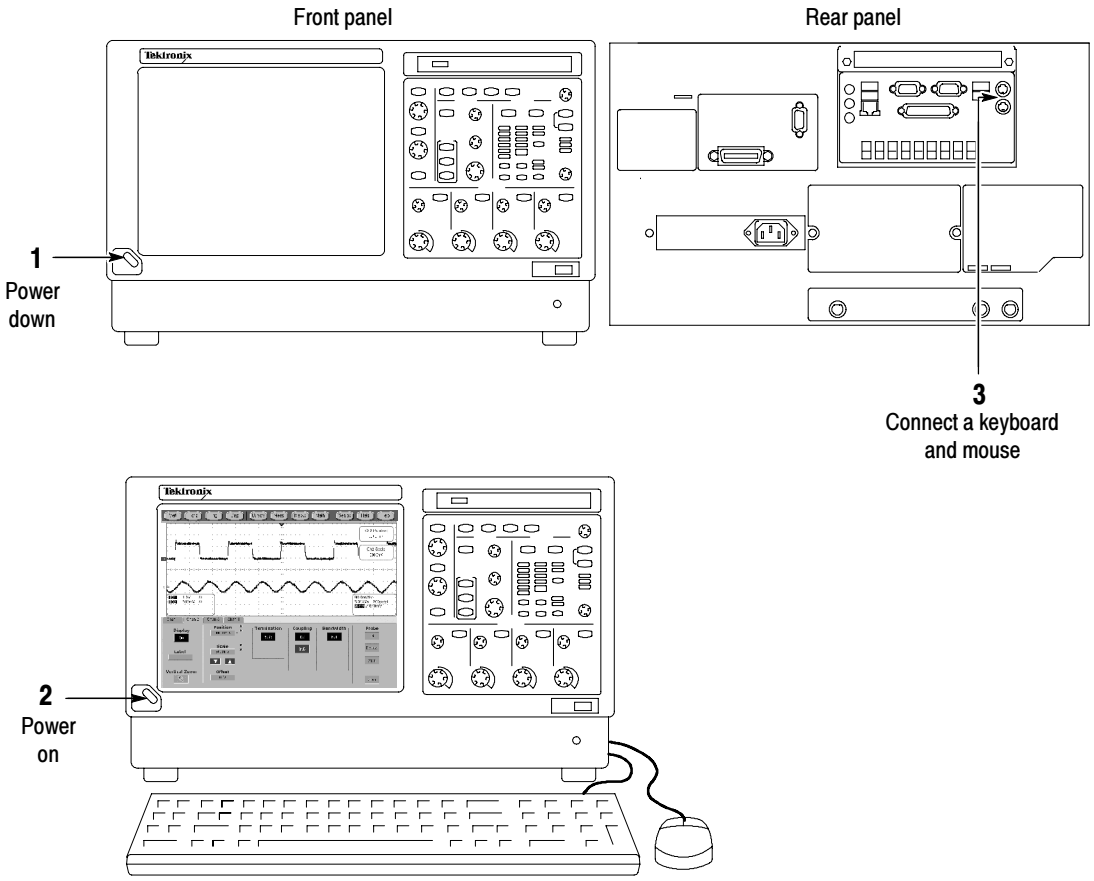


Figure 1- 5: Enabling your LAN and connecting to a network

4. As the instrument begins to boot, press the **F2** key on the keyboard repeatedly until the message "**Entering SETUP**" ("Loading SETUP" on some instruments) appears.
5. In the BIOS Setup Utility, use the right-arrow key on the keyboard to highlight the **Advanced** menu at the top of the screen.
6. Use the arrow down key to highlight **Peripheral Configuration** in the Advanced screen, and then press **Enter**.

7. Use the arrow down key to highlight **Outboard LAN** in the Peripheral Configuration screen, and then press **Enter**.
8. Use the arrow up or down key to highlight **Enabled**, and then press **Enter**.
9. Press the **F10** key to save and exit. Confirm the Save of Configuration changes when you are prompted on screen.
10. Use the Windows network setup utility to define the instrument as a network client and configure it for your network. You can find the network setup utility in the Windows **Start** menu if you select **Settings > Control Panel** and then double-click **Network**. Consult your network administrator for specific instructions to make these settings.

***NOTE**. If you want to disable network access for the instrument, perform the above procedure except substitute Disabled for the command listed in step 8. The instrument will boot faster with network access disabled.*

Setting up a Dual Display

Use the following steps to set up the instrument for dual display operation. You can operate the instrument while having full use of Windows and other applications on the external monitor.

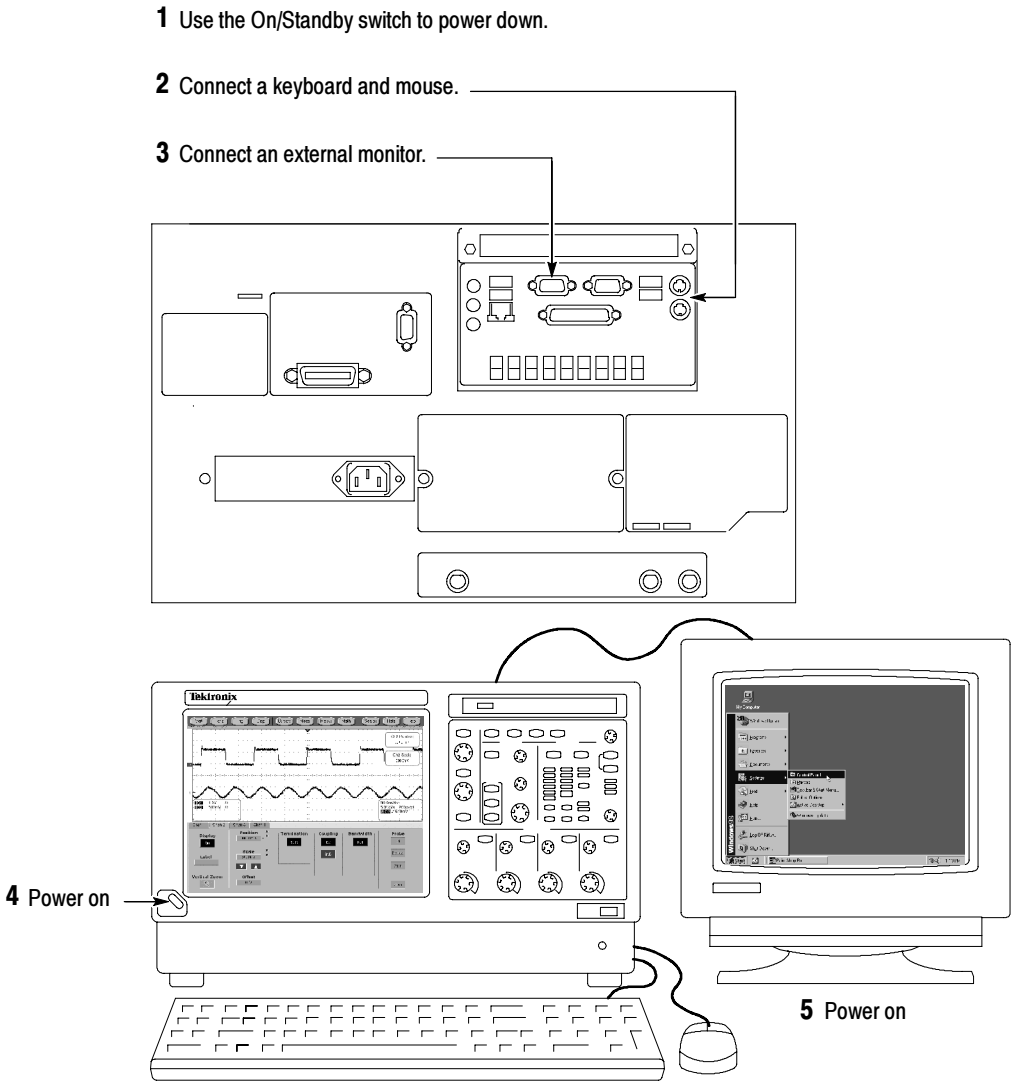


Figure 1- 6: Setting up a dual display

6. Watch for a message on the external monitor telling you that Windows has successfully initialized the display adapter.
7. The instrument should detect that the new monitor was connected. Follow the instructions on the instrument display to install new drivers for the monitor.
8. Type a **Control-M** to minimize the instrument application.
9. In the Windows desktop, right-click the mouse, and then select **Properties** to display the Display Properties dialog box.

10. Select the **Settings** tab, and select the grayed-out monitor in the display box.
11. Select yes when you are prompted to enable the new monitor.
12. Set the resolution that you want to use on the external monitor.
13. Click on the external monitor in the display box, and drag it to the correct orientation.

CAUTION. *Do not change the resolution or color settings for the internal LCD monitor. The internal resolution must be 1024 x 768 and the color setting must be True Color (24 bit).*

14. Select **OK** to apply the settings. The new monitor will display additional desktop area.

To make the best use of the new display area, do these additional steps to move the Windows controls to the external monitor:

1. Click (and hold) on the Windows task bar in the area shown in Figure 1–7, and then drag it upwards and toward the external monitor. The task bar will first go to the side of the internal monitor, then to the side of the external monitor, and finally to the bottom of the external monitor.

Figure 1-7: Drag area for Windows task bar

2. Release the mouse when the task bar is where you want it to be.

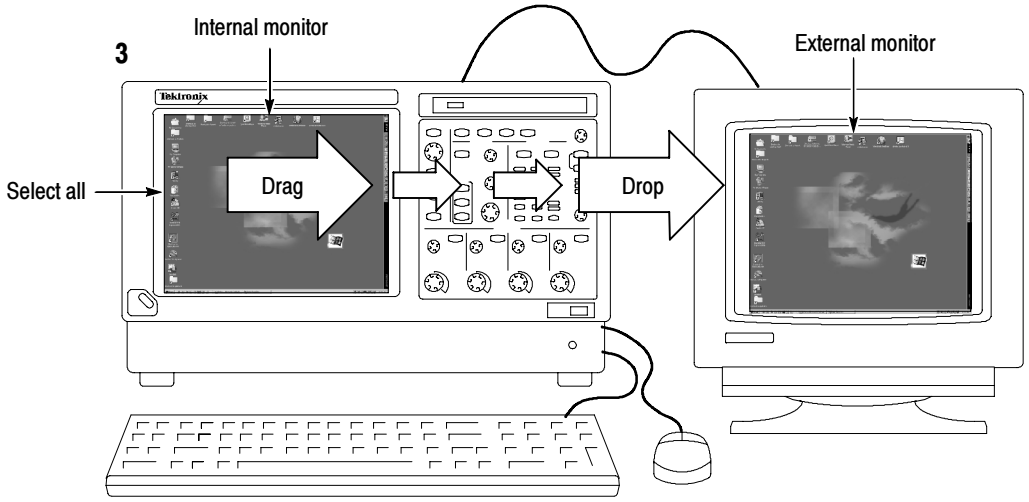


Figure 1- 8: Moving Windows desktop icons to the external monitor

4. If you use the instrument help system, you can drag the help windows to the external monitor so that you can read them while you operate the instrument.
5. When you open any Windows application, drag the windows from the application to the external monitor.

Incoming Inspection

This chapter contains instructions for performing the *Incoming Inspection Procedure*. This procedure verifies that the instrument is operating correctly after shipment, but does not check product specifications.

If the instrument fails any test within this section, it may need service. To contact Tektronix for service, see *Contacting Tektronix* on the back of the title page.

Make sure you have put the instrument into service as detailed in *Installation* starting on page 1–5. Then assemble the following test equipment and proceed with the procedures that follow.

Self Tests

This procedure uses internal routines to verify that the instrument functions and was adjusted properly. No test equipment or hookups are required.

Equipment required	None
Prerequisites	Power on the instrument and allow a 20 minute warm-up before doing this procedure.

1. *Verify that internal diagnostics pass:* Do the following substeps to verify passing of internal diagnostics.

   a. *Display the System diagnostics menu:*

      - If the instrument is in toolbar mode, touch the **MENU** button to put the instrument into menu bar mode.
      - From the **Utilities** menu, select **Instrument Diagnostics . . . .** This displays the diagnostics control window.

   b. *Run the System Diagnostics:*

      - First disconnect any input signals and probes from all four channels.
      - Touch the **Run** button in the diagnostics control window.

   c. *Wait:* The internal diagnostics do an exhaustive verification of proper instrument function. This verification will take several minutes. When the verification is finished, the resulting status will appear in the diagnostics control window.

***NOTE**. If diagnostic error message 512 is displayed, run signal-path compensation and then rerun Instrument Diagnostics.*

d. *Verify that no failures are found and reported on-screen.* All tests should pass.

e. *Run the signal-path compensation routine:*

- From the **Utilities** menu, select **Instrument Calibration . . .** . This displays the Instrument Calibration control window.
- Touch the **Calibrate** button to start the routine.

f. *Wait:* Signal-path compensation may take five to ten minutes to run.

g. *Confirm signal-path compensation returns passed status:* Verify that the word ***Pass*** appears in the instrument calibration control window.

2. *Return to regular service:* Touch the **Close** button to exit the instrument calibration control window.

Functional Tests

The purpose of these procedures is to confirm that the instrument functions properly.

***NOTE**. These procedures verify that the instrument features operate. They do not verify that they operate within limits.*

Therefore, when the instructions in the functional tests that follow call for you to verify that a signal appears on-screen "that is about five divisions in amplitude" or "has a period of about six horizontal divisions," and so forth, do not interpret the quantities given as limits.

***NOTE**. Do not make changes to the front-panel settings that are not called out in the procedures. Each verification procedure will require you to set the instrument to certain default settings before verifying functions. If you make changes to these settings, other than those called out in the procedure, you may obtain invalid results. In this case, repeat the procedure from step **1**.*

When you are instructed to press a front-panel button or screen button, the button may already be selected (its label will be highlighted). If this is the case, it is not necessary to push the button.

Check Vertical Operation

Equipment required	One BNC cable One 015-1018-00, SMA male-to-BNC female adapter TDS6000B or TDS6000C Digital Storage Oscilloscope
Prerequisites	None

1. *Initialize the instrument:* Push the front-panel **DEFAULT SETUP** button.
2. *Hook up the signal source:* Connect the equipment as shown in Figure 1–9 to the channel input you want to test (beginning with CH 1).

***NOTE**. Connect the FAST EDGE output (labeled PROBE COMPENSATION on some TDS6000B instruments) to the channel input using a SMA cable and adapters.*

3. *Turn off all channels:* If any of the front-panel channel buttons are lighted, push those buttons to turn off the displayed channels. See Figure 1–10.
4. *Select the channel to test:* Push the channel button for the channel you are currently testing. The button lights and the channel display comes on.

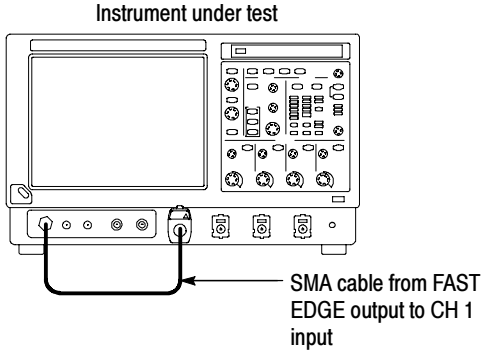


Figure 1-9: Universal test hookup for functional tests - CH 1 shown

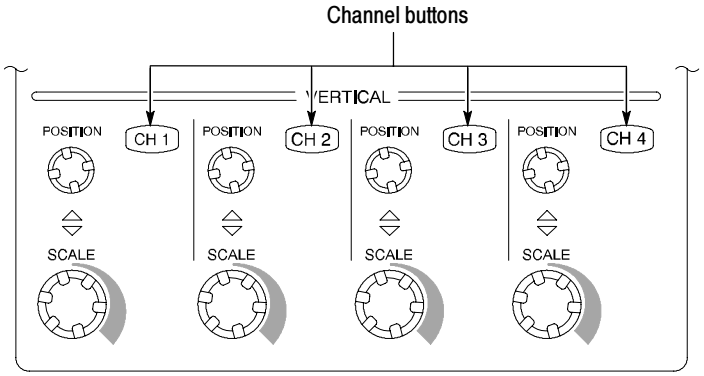


Figure 1-10: Channel button location

5. *Set up the instrument:*

   - Push the front-panel **AUTOSET** button. This sets the horizontal and vertical scale and vertical offset for a usable display and sets the trigger source to the channel that you are testing.
   - Touch the **Vert** button and then touch **Offset**. Confirm that the Ch1 Offset is **0 V**.

6. *Verify that the channel is operational:* Confirm that the following statements are true.

   - Verify that the vertical scale readout and the waveform amplitude for the channel under test (without a probe) are as shown in Table 1–2.

Table 1-2: Vertical settings

Setting	TDS6604B, TDS6804B	TDS6124C, TDS6154C
Scale	100 mV	100 mV
Waveform amplitude	3 divisions	4.4 divisions

   - The front-panel vertical **POSITION** knob (for the channel you are testing) moves the signal up and down the screen when rotated.
   - Turning the vertical **SCALE** knob counterclockwise (for the channel you are testing) decreases the amplitude of the waveform on-screen, turning the knob clockwise increases the amplitude, and returning the knob to the original scale setting returns the amplitude to that shown in Table 1–2 for that scale setting.

7. *Verify that the channel acquires in all acquisition modes:* From the **Horiz/Acq** menu, select **Horizontal/Acquisition Setup . . .** . Touch the

Acquisition tab in the control window that displays. Touch each of the acquisition modes and confirm that the following statements are true (see *Using the Acquisition Controls* on page 3–18 for more information):

- Sample mode displays an actively acquiring waveform on-screen. (Note that there is a small amount of noise present on the square wave).
- Peak Detect mode displays an actively acquiring waveform on-screen with the noise present in Sample mode "peak detected."
- Hi Res mode displays an actively acquiring waveform on-screen with the noise that was present in Sample mode reduced.
- Average mode displays an actively acquiring waveform on-screen with the noise reduced.
- Envelope mode displays an actively acquiring waveform on-screen with the noise displayed.
- Waveform Database mode displays an actively acquiring waveform on-screen that is the accumulation of several acquisitions.

8. *Test all channels:* Repeat steps **2** through **7** until all four input channels are verified.
9. *Remove the test hookup:* Disconnect the equipment from the channel input and the FAST EDGE output.

Check Horizontal Operation

Equipment required	One SMA cable, such as Tektronix part number 174-1427-xx One TCA-SMA adapter
Prerequisites	None

1. *Initialize the instrument:* Push the front-panel **DEFAULT SETUP** button.
2. *Hook up the signal source:* Connect the equipment to the CH 1 input as shown in Figure 1–11.

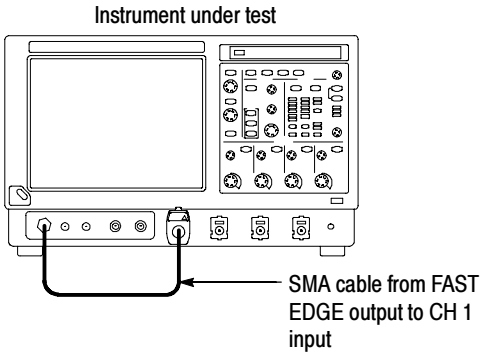


Figure 1- 11: Setup for time base test

3. *Set up the instrument:* Push the front-panel **AUTOSET** button.
4. Touch the **Vert** button and then touch **Offset**. Adjust the Ch1 Offset to **-0.16 V** (TDS6000B Series); **+80 mV** (TDS6000C Series) using the multipurpose knob.
5. Set the Vertical **SCALE** to **100 mV** per division.
6. *Set the time base:* Set the horizontal **SCALE** to **200 µs/div**. The time-base readout is displayed at the bottom of the graticule.
7. *Verify that the time base operates:* Confirm the following statements.
   - One period of the square-wave fast edge signal is about five horizontal divisions on-screen for the 200 µs/div horizontal scale setting.
   - Rotating the horizontal **SCALE** knob clockwise expands the waveform on-screen (more horizontal divisions per waveform period), counter-clockwise rotation contracts it, and returning the horizontal scale to 200 µs/div returns the period to about five divisions.
   - The horizontal **POSITION** knob positions the signal left and right on-screen when rotated.
8. *Verify horizontal delay:*
   a. *Center a rising edge on screen:*
      - Set the horizontal **POSITION** knob so that the rising edge where the waveform is triggered is lined up with the center horizontal graticule.
      - Change the horizontal **SCALE** to **20 µs/div**. The rising edge of the waveform should remain near the center graticule and the falling edge should be off screen.

b. *Turn on and set horizontal delay:*

- From the **Horiz/Acq** menu, select **Horizontal/Acquisition Setup . . . .**
- Touch the **Horizontal** tab in the control window that displays.
- Touch the **Delay Mode** button to turn delay on.
- Double-touch the **Horiz Delay** control in the control window to display the pop-up keypad. Touch the keypad buttons to set the horizontal delay to **1.5 ms**, and then touch the **ENTER** key.

c. *Verify the waveform:* Verify that a falling edge of the waveform is within a few divisions of center screen.

d. *Adjust the horizontal delay:* Rotate the upper multipurpose knob to change the horizontal delay setting. Verify that the falling edge shifts horizontally. Rotate the front-panel horizontal **POSITION** knob. Verify that this knob has the same effect (it also adjusts delay, but only when delay mode is on).

e. *Verify the delay toggle function:*

- Rotate the front-panel horizontal **POSITION** knob to center the falling edge horizontally on the screen.
- Change the horizontal **SCALE** to **40 ns/div**. The rising edge of the waveform should remain near the center graticule.
- Set horizontal **DELAY** to $\simeq$ **-80 ns**. The rising edge should be 2 divisions to the right of the center graticule line.
- Push the front-panel **DELAY** button several times to toggle delay off and on and back off again. Verify that the display switches quickly between two different points in time.

9. *Remove the test hookup:* Disconnect the equipment from the channel input and the FAST EDGE output.

Check Trigger Operation

Equipment required	One BNC cable, such as Tektronix part number 174-1427-xx One TCA-SMA TekConnect adapter
Prerequisites	None

1. *Initialize the instrument:* Push the front-panel **DEFAULT SETUP** button.

2. *Hook up the signal source:* Connect the equipment to the CH 1 input as shown in Figure 1–12.

3. *Set up the instrument:* Push the front-panel **AUTOSET** button.

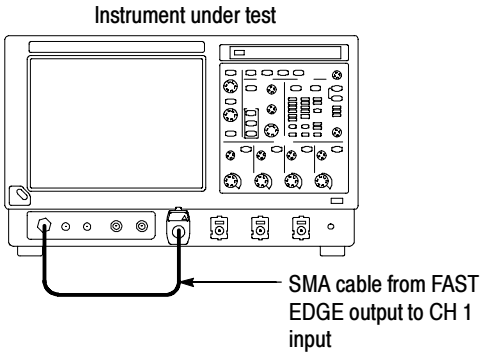


Figure 1- 12: Setup for trigger test

4. Touch the **Vert** button and then touch **Offset**. Adjust the Ch1 Offset to **-0.16 V** (TDS6000B Series); **+80 mV** (TDS6000C Series) using the multipurpose knob.
5. Set the Vertical **SCALE** to **100 mV** per division.
6. *Verify that the main trigger system operates:* Confirm that the following statements are true.
   - The trigger level readout for the A (main) trigger system changes with the trigger-**LEVEL** knob.
   - The trigger-**LEVEL** knob can trigger and untrigger the square-wave signal as you rotate it. (Leave the signal *un*triggered).
   - Pushing the front-panel trigger **LEVEL** knob sets the trigger level to the 50% amplitude point of the signal and triggers the signal that you just left untriggered. (Leave the signal triggered.)
7. *Verify that the delayed trigger system operates:*
   a. *Set up the delayed trigger:*
   - From the **Trig** menu, select **A→B Sequence . . . .** This displays the A→B Sequence tab of the trigger setup control window.
   - Touch the **Trig After Time** button under A Then B.
   - Touch the **B Trig Level** control in the control window.

   b. *Confirm that the following statements are tru*e:
   - The trigger-level readout for the B trigger system changes as you turn the lower multipurpose knob.

- As you rotate the lower multipurpose knob, the square-wave FAST EDGE signal can become triggered and untriggered. (Leave the signal triggered.)

c. *Verify the delayed trigger counter:*

- Set trigger mode to **norm**.
- Double-touch the **Trig Delay** control to pop up a numeric keypad for that control.
- Touch the keypad to enter a trigger delay time of **1000 ms**, and then touch **Enter**.
- Verify that the trigger **READY** indicator on the front panel flashes about once every second as the waveform is updated on-screen.

8. *Remove the test hookup:* Disconnect the equipment from the channel input and the FAST EDGE output.

Perform the Extended Diagnostics

Extended diagnostics and self calibration perform a more detailed functionality check than the incoming inspection and Power-on diagnostics.

NOTE. *Allow a 20-minute warm-up before running the self calibration.*

Disconnect any attached signal from the instrument. Then select the Utilities menu. Run the self calibration followed by the extended diagnostics by first selecting the Instrument Calibration (see page 3–139 for additional information on signal path compensation) and then the Instrument Diagnostics tabs. Results of the tests display on their property pages.

Checking the Underlying System (Optional)

To check the hardware and Windows software underlying the instrument UI (user interface), run the CheckIt Utilities from the Windows Start menu:

1. Minimize the instrument application before running the external diagnostics. From the File menu select **Minimize**.
2. Touch **Start**, then touch **Programs** in the Start Menu. Finally, touch **CheckIt Utilities**.
3. From the Go To menu, select and run the tests you want to perform.
4. Check test results. All tests except the Modem and CD-ROM tests should pass. The CD-ROM test requires data from the CheckIt Utilities CD.

5. Dismiss the CheckIt Utilities: Select **Exit** in the File menu.

6. Restart your instrument UI software: On the Quick Launch bar, touch **TekScope**.

Operating Basics

Operational Maps

This chapter acquaints you with how the instrument functions and operates. It consists of several maps that describe the system, its operation, and its documentation:

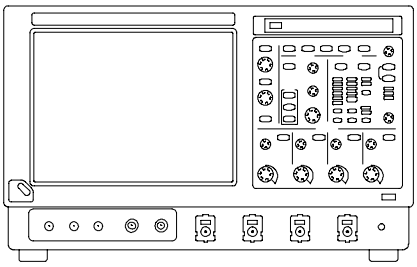
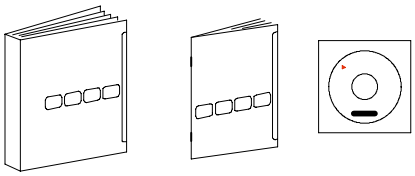
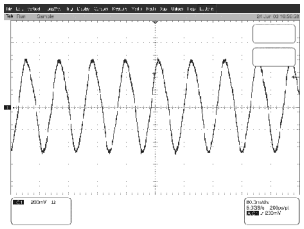
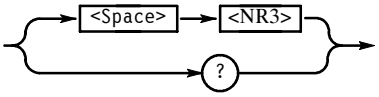
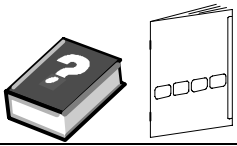
- *Documentation Map,* lists the documentation that supports the instrument.
- *System Overview Maps*, describe the high-level operating blocks and operating cycle of the instrument.
- *User-Interface Map*, describes the elements of the User Interface (UI) application, which provides complete control of the instrument.
- *Front-Panel Map,* describes the elements of the instrument front panel and cross references information relevant to each element.
- *Display Map*, describes elements and operation of single-graticule and multiple-graticule displays.
- *Front Panel I/O Map*, describes inputs, outputs, and peripherals.
- *Rear Panel I/O Map*, describes input/output ports and peripherals.

Tutorial (How to?) procedures are available online, as part of the online help.

For information on configuring and installing your instrument, refer to Chapter 1, *Getting Started*.

Documentation Map

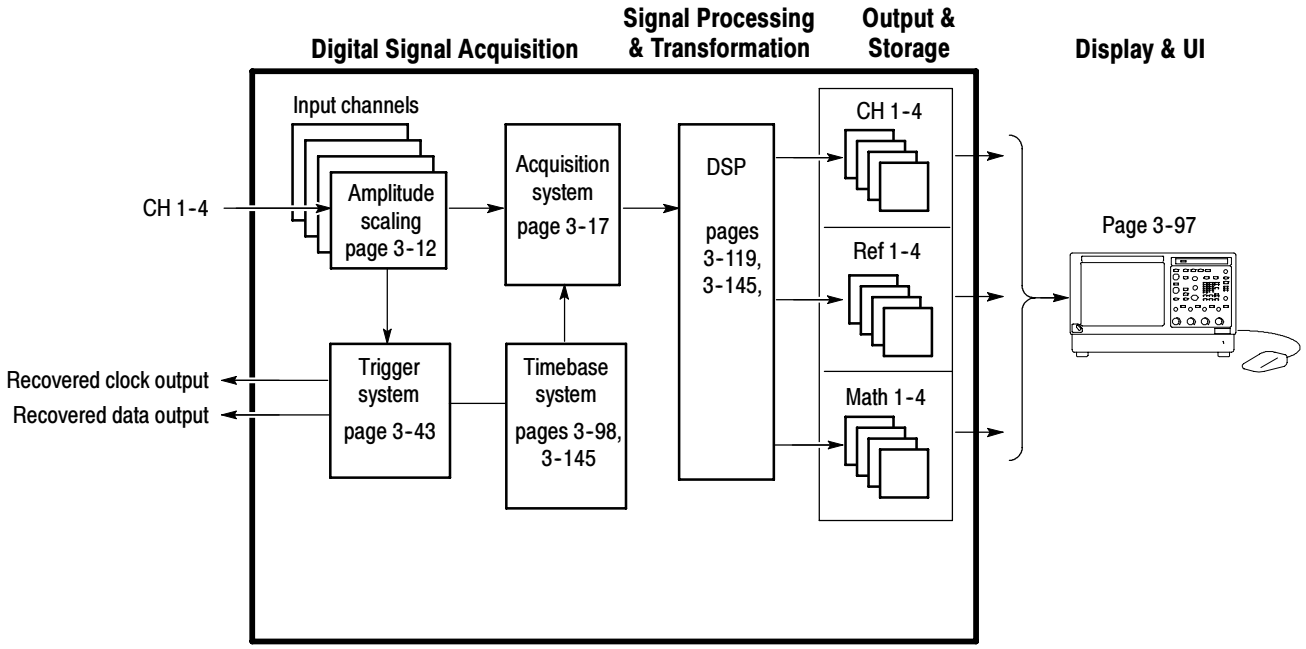
This instrument ships with documents individually tailored to address different aspects or parts of the product features and interface. The table below cross references each document to the instrument features and interfaces it supports.

To read about…	Refer to these documents:	Description
Installation, Specifications, & Operation (overviews) 	***User Manual*** ***Quick Start User Manual*** ***Product Software CD*** 	Read the *Quick Start User Manual* for a quick overview of instrument features and their usage. Read the *User Manual* for general information about your instrument—procedures on how to put it into service, maps of its user interface controls, overviews and background on its features. Product Software CD includes Specifications of performance. For more usage information, see *Online Help System* below.
In Depth Operation and UI Help 	***Online Help System*** 	Access online help from the instrument for context-sensitive information on virtually all controls and elements on screen. Online help includes procedures for using instrument functions. Online help includes a list of Options and accessories.
GPIB Commands 	***Online Programmers Guide*** 	Quickly find the syntax of a command, and copy the command if desired. Read about communication, error handling, and other information on GPIB usage. This guide is on the product software CD.
Analysis and Connectivity Tools	***Oscilloscope Analysis and Connectivity Made Easy*** ***TekVISA Programming Manual*** ***VXIplug&play Driver Help*** ***TekVISA Excel Toolbar Help*** 	These documents consists of various connectivity and analysis tools that you can install and configure for your instrument. For more information, see the *Analysis and Connectivity Support* topic in the instrument online help.

System Overview Maps

The instrument is a highly capable waveform acquisition, test, and measurement system. The following model provides background information on its operation, which, in turn, may provide you insight on how the instrument can be used.

Functional Model Map



The model comprises four high-level subsystems or processes (embodying a variety of hardware and software functions) and the data that connects them:

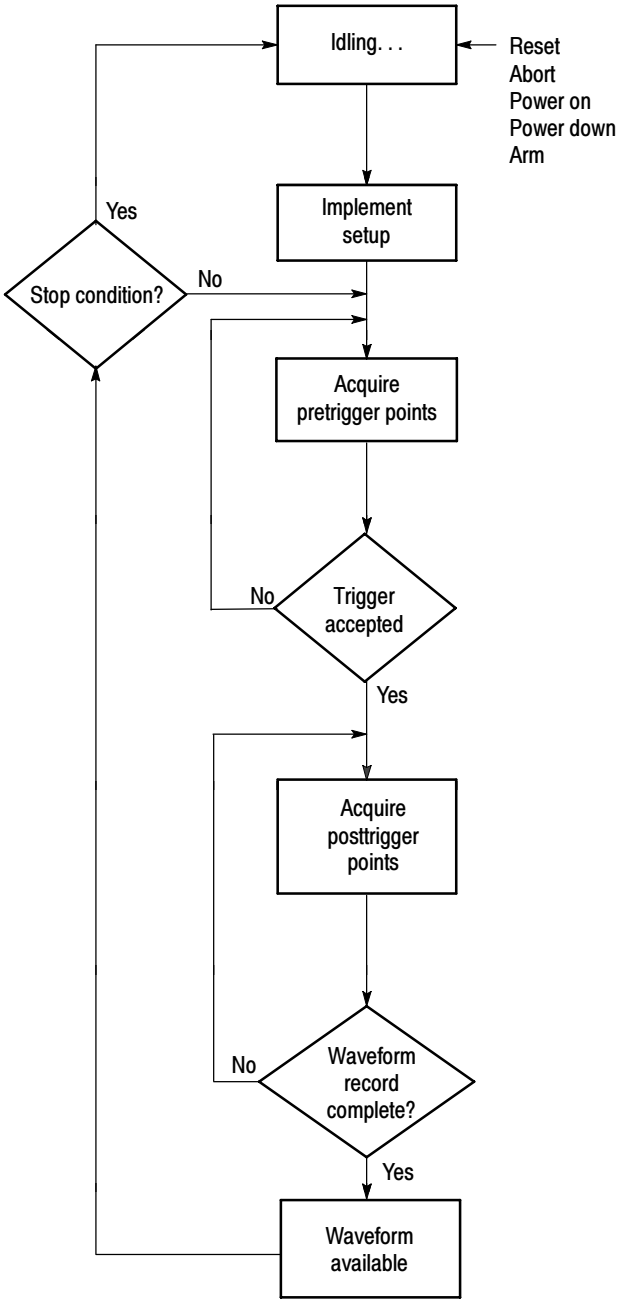
- **Digital Signal Acquisition System.** Acquires a waveform record from each signal that you input to each channel using the following subsystems:
  - **Input Channels.** Conditions the input signal, primarily through the use of analog hardware, before the signal is converted to digital form.
  - **Trigger System.** Recognizes a specific event of interest on the input trigger signal and informs the Timebase of the occurrence of the event. Recovered clock and data signals are optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series Digital Storage Oscilloscope.

- **Timebase System.** Tells the Acquisition system to start an acquisition cycle (that is, to convert from analog to digital). In more general terms, synchronizes the capturing of digital samples in the Acquisition system to the trigger events generated from the Trigger system.
- **Acquisition System.** Performs the actual A/D conversion and storing of digital samples.

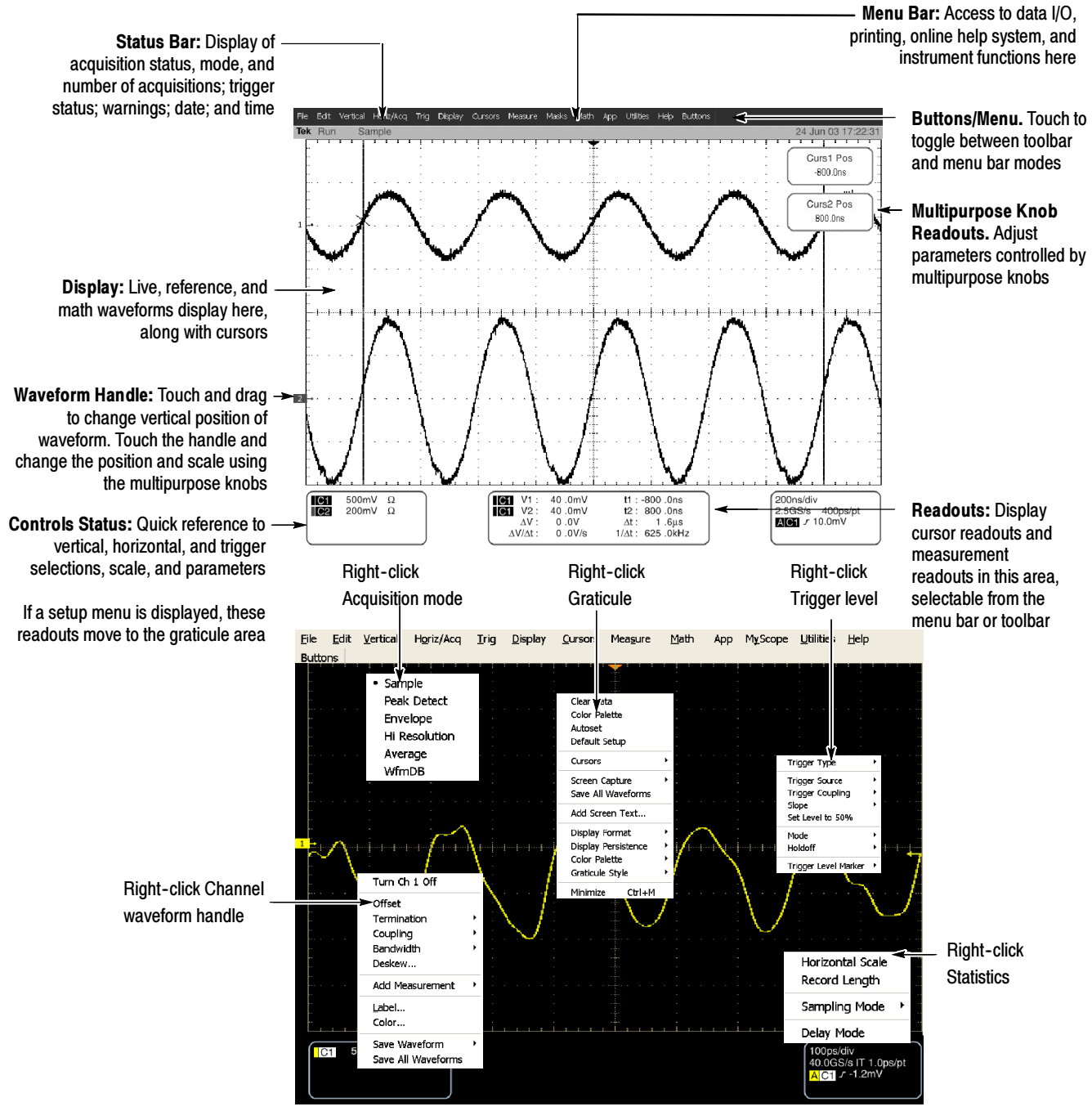
- **DSP Transformation System.** Performs a variety of transformations or operations, beginning with the most fundamental data element(s) in the system, the Channel Waveform(s). Waveform math operations, automatic measurements, spectral waveforms, and histogram generation are examples.
- **Input/Output Systems.** Provides output (and sometimes input) of instrument-data elements in a form suitable to the user and also provides user input control.

The process overview that follows describes each step in the top-level cycle of instrument operation.

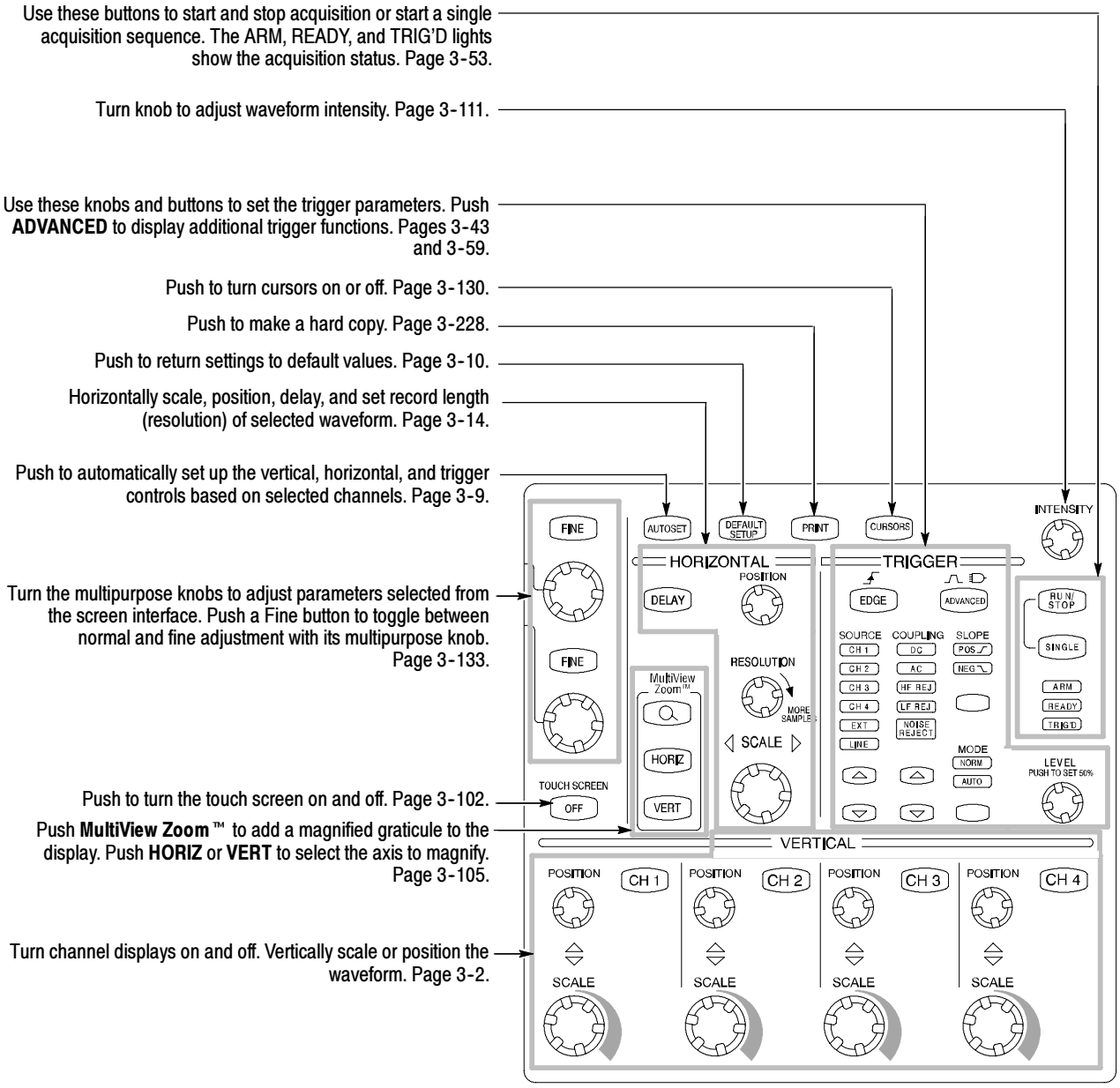
Process Overview Map

Process Overview	Process Block Description
	**1.** The instrument starts in the idle state; it enters this state upon power up, upon receiving most control setting changes, or upon finishing acquisition tasks. **2.** Control settings are implemented as they are requested. When you toggle the RUN/STOP control to RUN, the instrument starts the hardware. **3.** The instrument acquires samples until the pretrigger portion of the waveform record (channel) being acquired is filled. **4.** The instrument then begins waiting for a trigger. Acquiring continues to take place, keeping the pretrigger points current, until triggering criteria are met or a trigger is forced (Auto trigger mode only) and the instrument accepts a trigger. **5.** The instrument acquires samples until the posttrigger portion of the waveform record (channel) being acquired is filled. **6.** If averaging, enveloping, or waveform database is on, the record becomes part of the multi-acquisition record that these modes produce. The process loops back to step 3 above to acquire additional records until the number of acquisitions required for the acquisition mode currently set are processed, and then processing continues to step 7 below. **7.** At this point the acquisition record is in waveform memory and is available to the instrument for measurement of its parameters, display, and so on. The instrument then checks for a user-specified stop condition and either returns to its idle state or continues at step 3, according to what it finds.

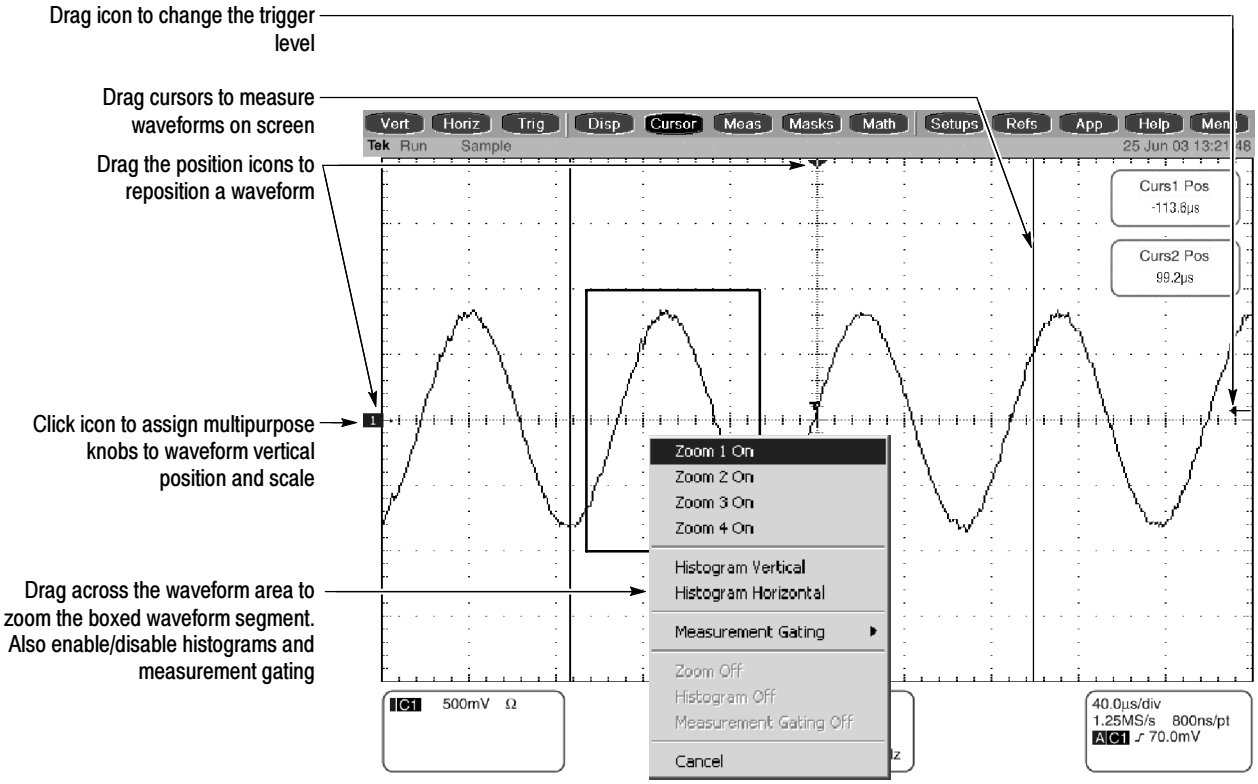
User Interface Map – Complete Control and Display



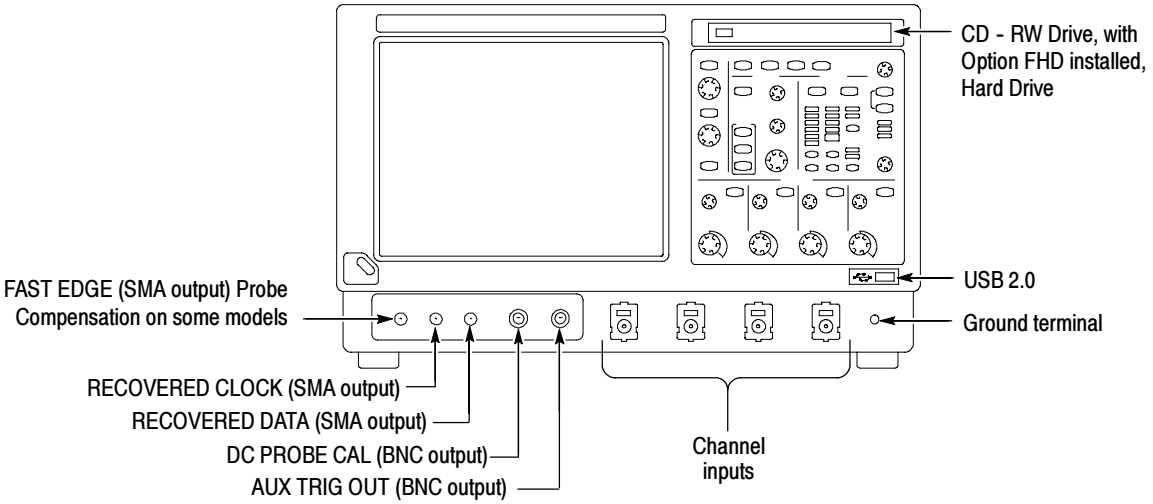
Front-Panel Map - Quick Access to Most Often Used Features



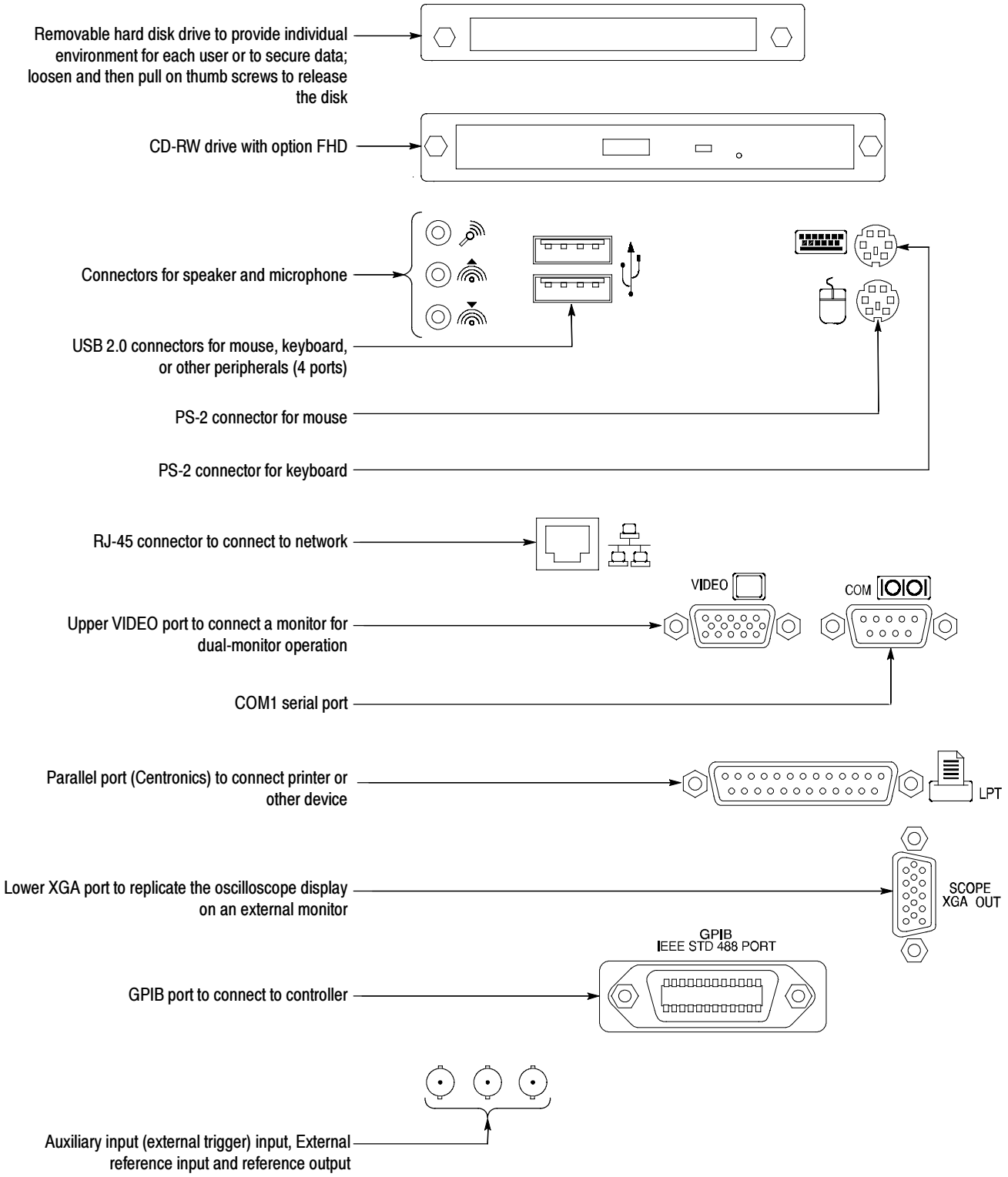
Display Map – Single Graticule



Front Panel I/O Map



Rear Panel I/O Map

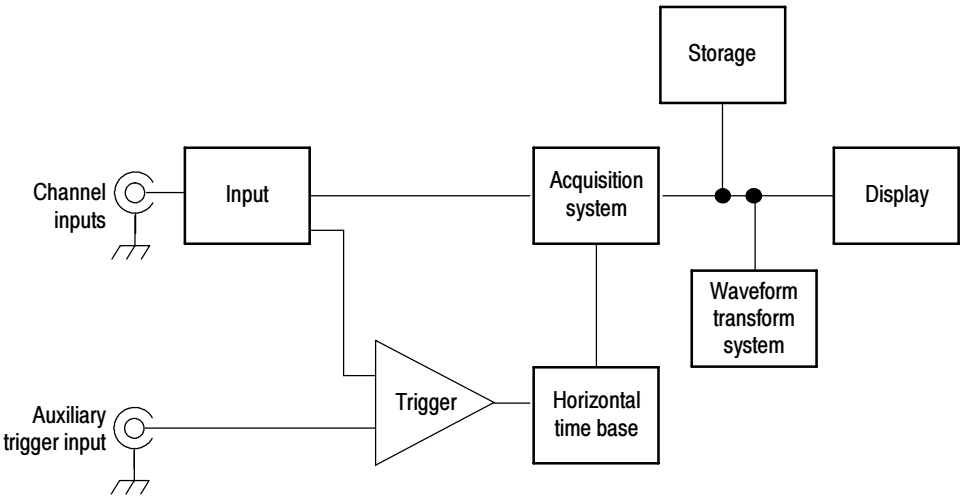


Reference

Acquiring Waveforms

Before you can do anything (display, print, measure, analyze, or otherwise process) to a waveform, you must acquire the signal. This instrument comes equipped with the features that you need for capturing your waveforms before further processing them according to your requirements. The following topics cover capturing signals and digitizing them into waveform records:

- *Signal Connection and Conditioning:* How to connect waveforms to the instrument channels; how to scale and position the channels and timebase for acquiring waveforms.
- *Setting Acquisition Controls:* How to choose the appropriate acquisition mode for acquiring your waveforms; how to start and stop acquisition.
- *Acquisition Control Background:* Background information on the data sampling and acquisition process.
- *Using FastFrame:* Using FastFrame to capture many records in a larger record, and then view and measure each record individually.



NOTE. *This section describes how the vertical and horizontal controls define the acquisition of live waveforms. These controls also define how all waveforms are displayed, both live and derived waveforms (math waveforms, reference waveforms, and so on). The sections that follow cover display-related usage:*

- Displaying Waveforms *on page 3–97.*
- Creating and Using Math Waveforms *on page 3–145.*

Signal Connection and Conditioning

This section presents overviews of the instrument features related to setting up the input signal for digitizing and acquisition. It addresses the following topics:

- How to turn on channels and adjust vertical scale, position, and offset
- How to set horizontal scale, position, and access record-length and trigger-position controls
- How to get a basic trigger on your waveform

NOTE. *Terminology: This manual uses the terms* vertical acquisition window *and* horizontal acquisition window *throughout this section and elsewhere. These terms refer to the vertical and horizontal range of the segment of the input signal that the acquisition system acquires. The terms do not refer to any windows or display windows on screen.*

Figure 3–1 shows the model for each input channel.

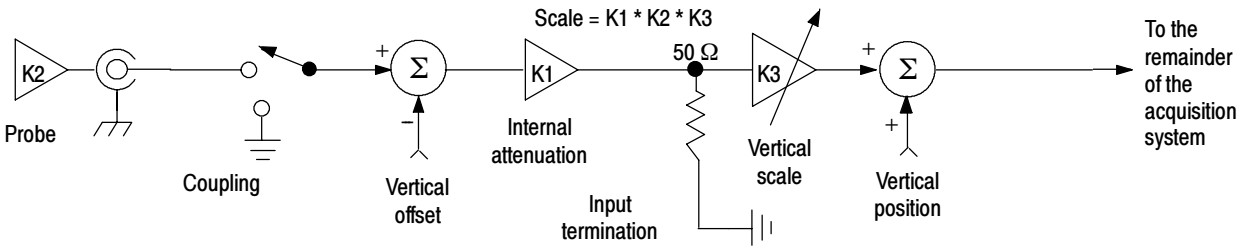


Figure 3-1: Input and Acquisition Systems and Controls

Use input conditioning to ensure the instrument acquires the data that you want to display, measure, or otherwise process. To ensure the best possible data for displaying and further processing, do the following:

- Set the vertical scale to control the size of the vertical acquisition window for each channel to capture part or all of the vertical amplitude of the input signal. When vertical scaling is set to capture only a fraction of the input signal range (for increased detail), the vertical offset control may be used to determine which portion of the input signal is captured by the vertical acquisition window.
- Set horizontal scale to control the size of the horizontal acquisition window to capture as much as you want of the input signal(s). Set the horizontal position to delay the window relative to a trigger and to control where in the input signal (data stream) that the horizontal acquisition window acquires.

For more background on acquisition window concepts, see *Input Conditioning Background* on page 3–11.

The instrument can automatically obtain and display a stable waveform of usable size. Pushing the Autoset button automatically sets up the instrument controls based on the characteristics of the input signal. Autoset is much faster and easier than a manual control-by-control setup.

The instrument can also be reset to its factory default settings.

Usage of some input conditioning controls or features may be limited when other control settings are in effect. Voltage offset is incompatible with reference waveforms because offset is an acquisition control.

Connecting and Conditioning Your Signals

Read the following topics related to waveform acquisition; they provide details that can make it easier to set up and acquire your waveforms.

Probes and Signal Connection. Select the probe or cable that brings the signal into the instrument. Choose the probe or cable that best fits your acquisition task, whether it is connecting an active probe to test a digital circuit, or connecting to a test fixture through SMA cables to characterize a device. The connection to the instrument depends on your application.

Tektronix provides a variety of probes and cables for this product. Check your Tektronix catalog for connection accessories that may support your application. More information about your probes can be found in the user manual for your probes.

Four acquisition channels are available. Each channel can be displayed as a waveform or can contribute waveform data to other waveforms (math and reference waveforms for example).

Coupling. All instruments and probes specify a maximum signal level.

CAUTION. *Exceeding the maximum limit, even momentarily, may damage the input channel. Use external attenuators, if necessary, to prevent exceeding the limits.*

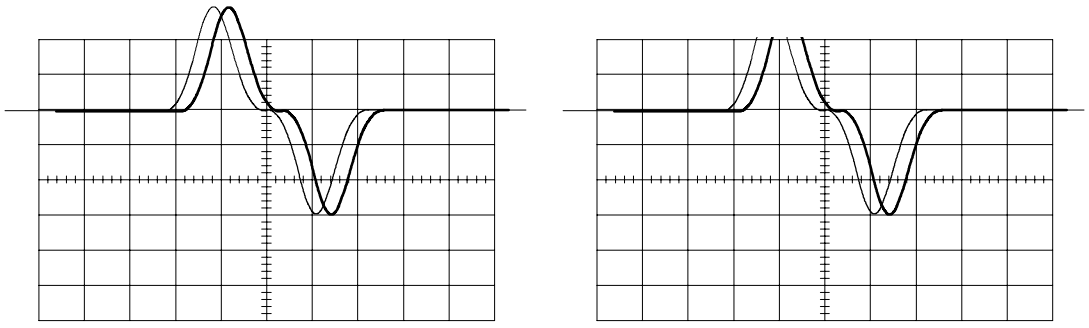
Coupling determines whether an input signal is directly connected to the input channel or not connected at all. These choices are referred to as DC coupling, and GND coupling.

The input resistance of each input channel is 50 Ω. To properly terminate signals in other impedance environments, use an adapter.

All probes expect a specific coupling and input termination. Both coupling and input termination resistance are displayed on screen.

Scaling and Positioning. These key controls determine the portion of the input signal presented to the acquisition system:

- Set vertical scaling, positioning, and DC offsets to display the features of interest on your waveform and avoid clipping. (See *Note* that follows.) *Vertical Acquisition Window Considerations* on page 3–12 describes the vertical acquisition window.



Acquired waveform

Displayed waveform

- Set horizontal scale, position, and resolution (record length) so that the acquired waveform record includes the waveform attributes of interest with good sampling density on the waveform. The settings that you make define the horizontal acquisition window (see *Horizontal Acquisition Window Considerations* on page 3–14).

***NOTE**. Waveform data outside the vertical acquisition window is clipped; that is, the data is limited to the minimum or maximum boundaries of the vertical acquisition window. This limiting causes inaccuracies in amplitude-related measurements. Note that the acquisition window also includes 1 division above and below the displayed graticule area. See* Vertical Acquisition Window Considerations *on page 3–12.*

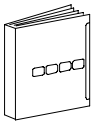
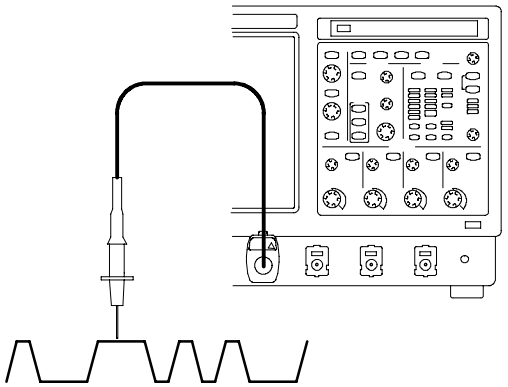
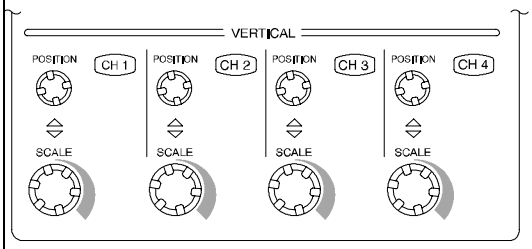
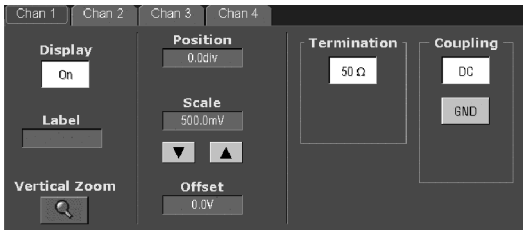
Enhanced Bandwidth. When setting up the vertical controls, you may want to set Enhanced Bandwidth on or off. When on, DSP filtering can provide a shorter risetime, and flattens the bandpass, but makes the phase response linear and may extend bandwidth depending on model. Enhanced Bandwidth provides a matched response across enabled channels, so you will leave it on for most applications, except for those for which you would rather use the true analog bandwidth of your instrument. Display the Online help on the Vertical Setup Control Window for more information.

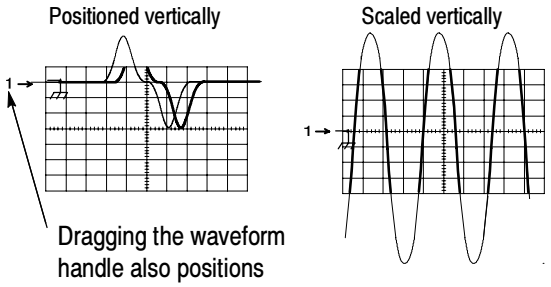
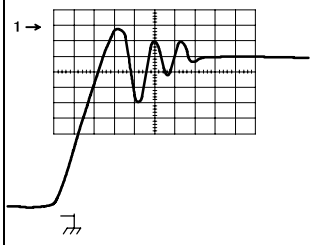
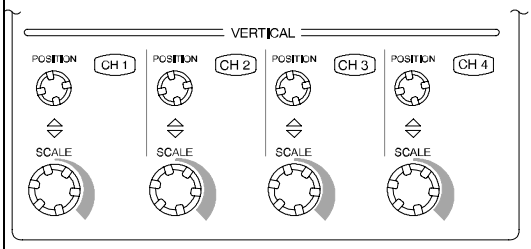
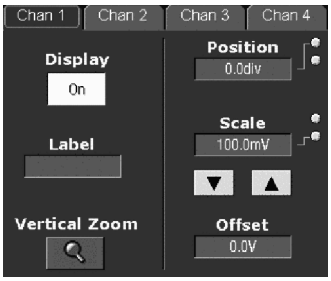
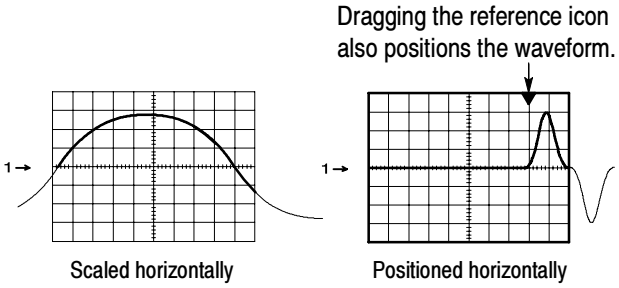
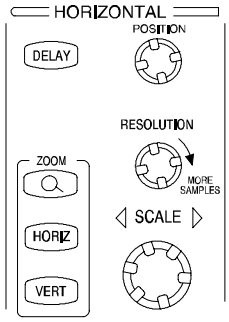
Trigger and Display. Set basic trigger controls to gate waveform acquisition, and use the display to interactively scale, position, and offset waveforms. See the sections *Triggering* on page 3–43 and *Displaying Waveforms* on page 3–97.

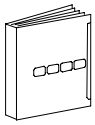
Flexible Control Access. This manual focuses on basic setup through the front panel, and then through use of the User Interface (UI) Application displayed on screen. The online help system also documents the UI.

To Set Up Signal Input

Use the procedure that follows when setting up the instrument to scale and position input signals for acquisition. For more information, display online help while performing the procedure.

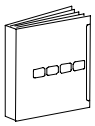
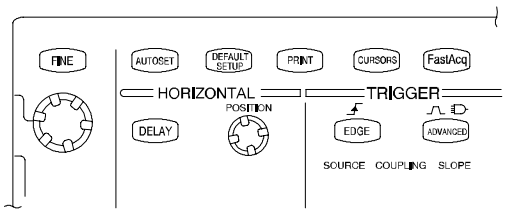
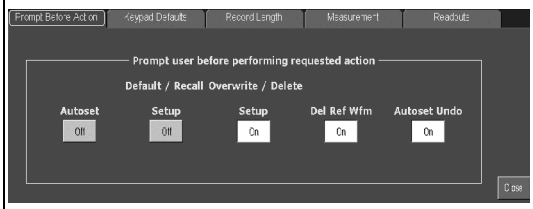
Overview	To set up signal input	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The acquisition system should be set to run continuously.	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Connect input signal	**2.** Connect to the signal to be acquired using proper probing and connecting techniques. ***Note.*** *For more details on control over input setup, push the Vert button to display the Vertical control window, and then touch the HELP button.*	
Select the input signal channel	**3.** Push a channel button (CH 1-CH 4) to select the signal channel. A channel button lights when its channel is on.	
Select input coupling	**4.** Touch Vert to display the Vertical control window. To change the input coupling, select the channel tab and then select from: ■ *DC* to couple both the AC and DC components of an input signal ■ *GND* to disconnect the input signal from the acquisition Touch Close to close the window.	

Overview	To set up signal input (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set vertical acquisition window	**5.** Use the vertical knobs to scale and position the waveform on screen.  **6.** Touch Vert to display the Vertical control window. To change the offset, touch the Offset control and turn the multipurpose knob to adjust the offset. 	 
Set horizontal acquisition window	**7.** Use horizontal knobs to scale and position the waveform on screen and to set record length.  The Resolution knob sets the record length. (See discussion on page 3-15.) If required to stabilize the display, push LEVEL to set the trigger level to 50%.	

Overview	To set up signal input (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
For help	**8.** For more information on the controls described in this procedure, push the Vert or Horiz button. Touch the HELP button in the toolbar.	
Continue with acquisition setup	**9.** To finish acquisition setup, you must set the acquisition mode and start the acquisition.	 See *To Set Acquisition Modes* on page 3-24.

To Autoset the Instrument

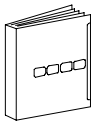
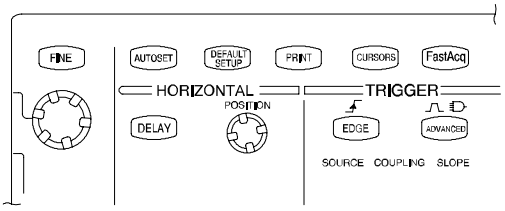
Autoset automatically sets up the instrument controls (*acquisition, display, horizontal, trigger, and vertical)* based on the characteristics of the input signal. Autoset is much faster and easier than a manual control-by-control setup. When the input signal is connected, do an autoset to automatically set up the instrument:

Overview	To autoset the instrument	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Signals must be connected to channels. A triggering source must be provided.	 See page 3-43 in this manual for trigger setup information.
Execute	**2.** Push the Autoset button to execute an Autoset. If you use Autoset when one or more channels are displayed, the instrument selects the lowest numbered channel for horizontal scaling and triggering. All channels in use are individually vertically scaled. If you use Autoset when no channels are displayed, the instrument turns on channel one (CH 1) and scales it.	
Execute Autoset Undo	**3.** The Autoset Undo control window opens automatically after an Autoset operation. Touch Undo if you want to undo the last Autoset. Only the parameters that were set by the last Autoset are undone. Parameters that you changed that are not controlled by Autoset retain their settings. If you don't want this window to appear, set the Utilities/User Preferences/Autoset Undo button to Off. You can still do an Autoset Undo using the Horiz/Acq menu.	
Prompt **Done**	**4.** Select User Preferences in the Utilities menu to display the Prompt Before Action window. Touch Autoset to toggle between ON and OFF: ■ *OFF* to set up for performing an autoset when the AUTOSET button is pushed ■ *ON* to set up for displaying a prompt before performing an autoset when the AUTOSET button is pushed Touch Close to save your prompt selection.	

***NOTE**. Autoset may change the vertical position to position the waveform appropriately. It sets vertical offset to 0 V unless an offsetable probe is attached. If you are not using an offsetable probe and your signal contains offset (such as the fast edge signal), you may need to adjust the Vertical Offset and SCALE to display the signal.*

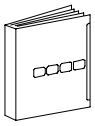
To Reset the Instrument

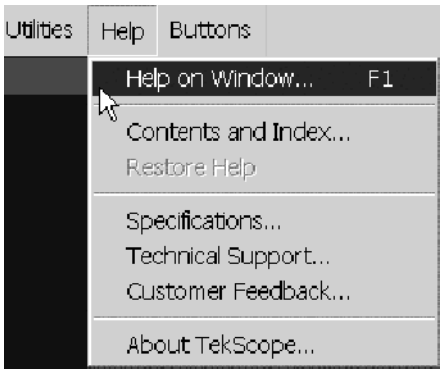
You may want to revert to the factory default setup; if so, reset the instrument:

Overview	To reset the instrument	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument is powered up and running.	 See *Powering On the Instrument* on page 1-8.
Execute	**2.** Push the DEFAULT SETUP button.	

To Get More Help

You can get help on the vertical and acquisition controls by accessing online help:

Overview	To get more help	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Instrument powered up and running.	 See *Powering On the Instrument* on page 1-8.

Overview	To get more help (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Access vertical set up help	**2.** Touch the Help button in toolbar mode or select Help on Window from the Help menu in menu bar mode. **3.** You can also select topics related to the vertical controls from the online help Contents/Index/Find window: select Contents and Index in the Help menu, as shown at right.	

Input Conditioning Background

This section contains background information that can help you more effectively set up the acquisition window of each channel.

Input. This instrument samples in real-time or random equivalent-time; both sampling methods provide pretrigger information by using the trigger to stop an already running acquisition. Both sampling methods also sample the input after it is scaled, providing improved input protection and dynamic range.

CAUTION. *To prevent damage to the acquisition system, do not overdrive the inputs and observe static-safe procedures.*

Autoset Considerations. Autoset acquires samples from the input signal and attempts to take the following actions based on the input data:

- Evaluate the amplitude range of the input signals and set the size and vertical offset of the vertical acquisition window to acquire the signal with good resolution, but without clipping.
- Set the trigger to the approximate midlevel of the signal being autoset and switches to edge trigger mode.
- Evaluate the signal transitions and set the horizontal scale to produce a waveform display of 2 or 3 cycles of the input signal.

Sometimes Autoset cannot produce a correct display due to the nature of the input signal; if so, you may have to adjust the scale, trigger, and acquisition controls manually. Some conditions that can cause Autoset to fail are:

- No signal present
- Signals with extreme or variable duty cycles

- Signals with multiple or unstable signal periods
- Signals with too low amplitude
- No recognizable trigger signal
- Signals with a frequency <50 Hz
- Autoset can fail on signals greater than delayed triggering bandwidth
- Signals with a frequency above the bandwidth of the instrument
- Signals with high offset and low peak-to-peak variations

Vertical Acquisition Window Considerations. You can set the vertical size, position, and offset of each channel independently of other channels. Vertical scale and offset specify the vertical acquisition window for each channel. Parts of the signal amplitude that fall within the vertical window are acquired; parts outside (if any) are not.

The offset control subtracts a constant DC level from the input signal before the vertical scale factor is applied, and the vertical position control adds a constant number of divisions of signal after the scale factor is applied to the resulting difference.

The vertical scale and position controls have the following effects on the vertical acquisition window and the displayed waveform:

- The vertical volts per division that you set determines the vertical size of the acquisition window, allowing you to scale it to contain all of a waveform amplitude or only part. Figure 3–2 on page 3–13 shows two vertical acquisition windows that contain the entire waveform, but only one window contains the entire waveform in the graticule on screen.

NOTE. *Amplitude-related automatic measurements (for example, peak-to-peak and RMS) will be accurate for vertical windows like those shown in Figure 3–2a and b because neither waveform is clipped (that is, both waveforms are acquired). But if signal amplitude were to extend outside the vertical acquisition window, the data acquired is clipped. Clipped data causes inaccurate results if used in amplitude-related automatic measurements. Clipping also causes inaccurate amplitude values in waveforms that are stored or exported for use in other programs.If the digitizers are over driven, measurements may not be accurate. Readings of ?????? indicates the signal is clipped and the measurements are not accurate. To prevent shock, verify voltage levels before touching the circuit.*

If the scale of a math waveform is changed so that the math waveform is clipped, it will not affect amplitude measurements on that math waveform.

- The vertical position adjusts the acquisition, and therefore the display, of the acquired waveform relative to the vertical acquisition window. Figure 3–2b shows how vertical position moves the acquired waveform vertically in the acquisition window to place the acquired waveform in the graticule display.
- As you vary the vertical position, the vertical acquisition window moves up and down (± 5 divisions) on the waveform. With input signals that are smaller than the window, it appears the waveform moves in the window. Actually, the position moves the vertical acquisition window up and down on the input signal.

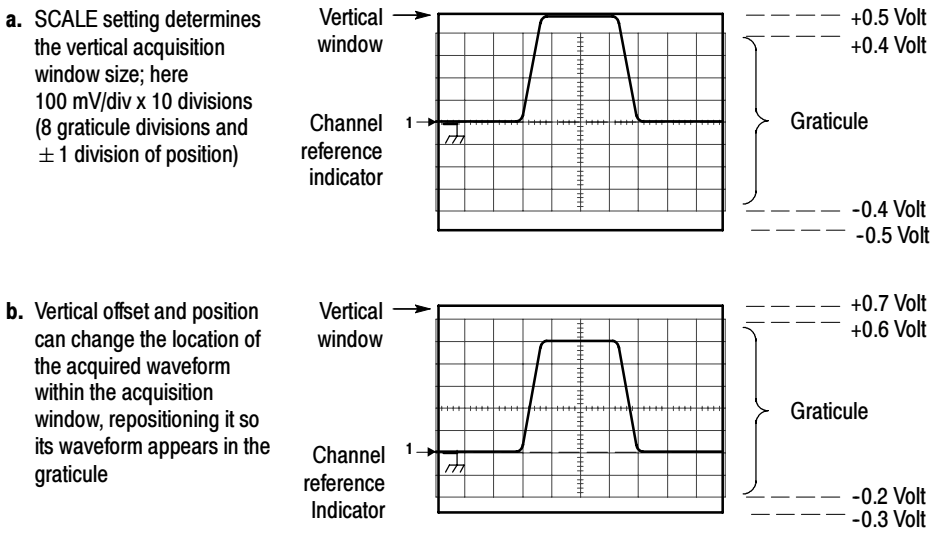


Figure 3-2: Setting vertical range and position of input channels

The vertical offset control affects the vertical acquisition window and the displayed waveform as follows:

- The vertical range (window) is always centered around the offset value. It is the voltage level at the middle of the vertical acquisition window. With no (zero) offset, as shown in Figure 3–2 a and b, that voltage level is zero (ground).
- As you vary vertical offset, the middle voltage level moves relative to zero. This moves the vertical acquisition window up and down on the waveform. With input signals that are smaller than the window, it appears the waveform moves in the window. Actually, a larger signal shows what really happens: the offset moves the middle of the vertical acquisition window up and down on the input signal. Figure 3–3 shows how offset moves the acquisition window to control the portion of the waveform amplitude the window captures.

- Applying a negative offset moves the vertical range down relative to the DC level of the input signal. Likewise, applying a positive offset moves the vertical range up. See Figure 3–3.

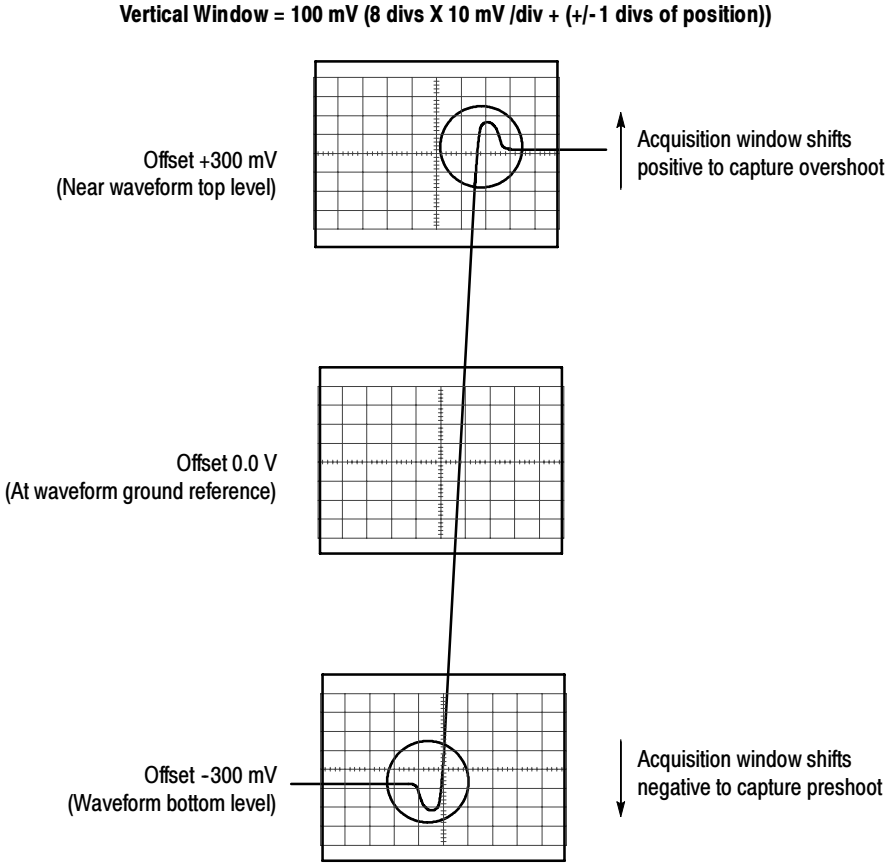


Figure 3- 3: Varying offset moves the vertical acquisition window on the waveform

Horizontal Acquisition Window Considerations. The instrument lets you define the horizontal acquisition window, that is, set several parameters that determine the segment of an incoming signal that becomes the waveform record when acquired. (For background, read *Waveform Record* on page 3–30.) These common parameters specify a horizontal acquisition window that is applied to all channels in parallel. (See *Independent vs. Shared Window* on page 3–17.) These parameters are:

- The trigger condition that you set up determines the point on the waveform that triggers the instrument.
- Horizontal position also determines the number of pretrigger and posttrigger samples; samples before the reference point are pretrigger samples and those after the reference are posttrigger samples.

- The Horizontal Delay that you set determines the time from the trigger point to the Horizontal Reference.
- The horizontal scale and waveform record length (number of samples) that you set determines the horizontal size of the window relative to any waveform, allowing you to scale it to contain a waveform edge, a cycle, or several cycles.

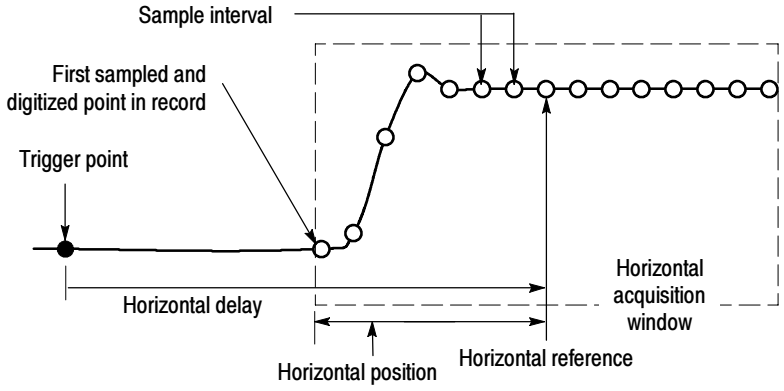


Figure 3- 4: Horizontal Acquisition window definition

Horizontal Scale Versus Record Length Versus Sample Interval Versus Resolution. These parameters all relate to each other and specify the horizontal acquisition window. Because the horizontal acquisition window must fit in the 10 horizontal division display, for most cases, you just set the duration of the horizontal acquisition window (10 divs x the scale setting) as described in (1) below. By also setting a record length in samples, you indirectly set the resolution/sample interval/sample rate for the horizontal acquisition window (waveform record). The relationships between these horizontal elements for 10 division waveforms follow:

1. *Time Duration (seconds) = 10 divs (window size) x Horizontal scale (sec/div)*

2. *Time Duration (seconds) = Sample Interval (seconds/sample) x Record Length (samples)*,
   where:
   Time Duration is the horizontal acquisition window time duration

   and:
   Sample Interval (sec/sample) = Resolution (sec/sample) = 1/Sample Rate (samples/sec)

In (2) above, note that it is Sample Interval that varies to accommodate the window time duration (and its scale setting) and the Record Length setting as these latter two elements can be set by you. These elements behave as follows:

- If Record Length or Time Duration vary, Sample Interval varies to accommodate, up to highest sample rate/lowest sample interval/highest resolution.
- If Sample Interval reaches its lower limit (fastest rate), Record Length must decrease if Time Duration decreases (you set faster scale settings), or Time Duration must increase (forcing slower scale settings) if Record Length increases (you set longer record lengths). The equation becomes:

  Maximum Record Length = Time Duration ÷ Min Sample Interval

  For example, at 50 ps/div and 10 divisions, the record length must be 500 points:

  Max Rec Length = (10 divs x 50ps/div) ÷ 500 fs/sample‘

  Max Rec Length = 500 samples

***NOTE**. As implied from the operation just described, resolution and the equivalent elements, sample interval and sample rate (see equation 2 above), cannot be set directly, but are derived. You can, however, check the resolution at anytime in the resolution readout. Also note, that the Resolution control actually adjusts the record length to increase sample density.*

The above discussion also assumes that horizontal scale is held constant. You can, however, choose to hold the sample rate constant instead, by selecting Hold Sample Rate Constant *in the Utilities, User Preferences menu.*

Independent vs. Shared Window. The instrument applies the same horizontal acquisition window to all channels from which it acquires data. Unlike the vertical acquisition window that you size and offset independently for each channel, the same time/div, resolution (record length), and horizontal position (from the same trigger point) apply to all channels simultaneously. One trigger, from a single trigger source, will locate a common horizontal acquisition window for all active channels, which you can shift in parallel by setting the horizontal position control.

The horizontal acquisition window determines the waveform records extracted from all signals present at all active channels. You can think of the horizontal acquisition window as cutting across any input signals present in the input channels to extract the same slice of time into waveform records. See Figure 3–5.

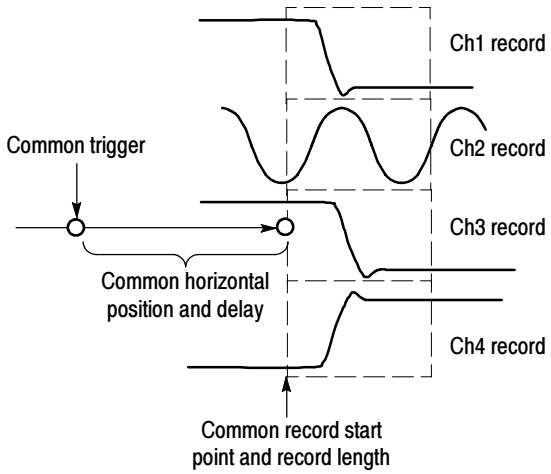


Figure 3- 5: Common trigger, record length, and acquisition rate for all channels

Setting Acquisition Controls

This section presents overviews of the instrument acquisition features—those that start and stop acquisitions and those that control how the instrument processes the data as it is acquired (just sampled, or averaged or enveloped). Special features, keys to using, and operation controls are covered.

Roll mode gives a strip chart recorder-like display for low frequency signals. Roll mode lets you see acquired data points without waiting for the acquisition of a complete waveform record. For example, in normal acquisition mode, when the Horizontal Scale is 1 second per division, 10 seconds are required to fill the waveform record. Without roll mode you must wait 10 seconds to see any waveform display. With roll mode you can start seeing results almost immediately.

The following table indicates which acquisition features and modes are incompatible with other features or modes:

Control/Feature	Incompatible with	Explanation
Average	Single acquisition	Acquisitions continue until the specified number of waveforms have been acquired and averaged
Envelope	Single acquisition	Acquisitions continue until the specified number of waveforms have been acquired for the enveloped waveform
Roll	Measurements	Measurements are not available until you stop acquisitions

Using the Acquisition Controls

Consider the mode that you want to use to acquire data:

- Sample. The instrument does no postprocessing of acquired samples. The instrument saves the first sample (of perhaps many) during each acquisition interval (an acquisition interval is the time covered by the waveform record divided by the record length.) Sample mode is the default mode.
- Peak Detect. The instrument stores both the lowest and highest samples over a two-acquisition-interval period. This mode only works with real-time, noninterpolated sampling.
- Hi Res. The instrument creates a record point by averaging all samples taken during an acquisition interval. Hi Res results in a higher-resolution, lower-bandwidth waveform. This mode only works with real-time, noninterpolated sampling.

  A key advantage of Hi Res is its potential for increasing vertical resolution regardless of the input signal. Table 3–1 indicates that you can obtain up to 13 significant bits with Hi res mode. The instrument uses 16-bit memory. This is allocated as 15 bits + 1 sign bit. Round-off errors and internal noise limit the effective bits for Hi Res mode and signal averaging to about 13 bits. You can calculate the theoretical number of bits of enhancement using the following formula, where Nd is the number of samples taken during an acquisition interval:

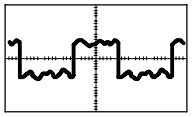
  $$Bits\ of\ enhancement = 0.5 \log_2 * Nd$$

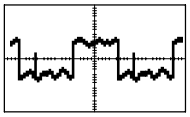
Table 3-1: Additional resolution bits

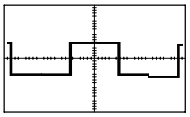
Sample Rate (S/s)	Nd (extra samples)	Theoretical enhancement (bits)	Resulting resolution (in bits)
5.00E+00	2.50E+08	13.95	13.00
1.00E+01	1.25E+08	13.45	13.00
2.50E+01	5.00E+07	12.79	13.00
5.00E+01	2.50E+07	12.29	13.00
1.00E+02	1.25E+07	11.79	13.00
2.50E+02	5.00E+06	11.13	13.00
5.00E+02	2.50E+06	10.63	13.00
1.00E+03	1.25E+06	10.13	13.00
2.50E+03	5.00E+05	9.47	13.00
5.00E+03	2.50E+05	8.97	13.00
1.00E+04	1.25E+05	8.47	13.00
2.50E+04	5.00E+04	7.80	13.00
5.00E+04	2.50E+04	7.30	13.00
1.00E+05	1.25E+04	6.80	12.80
2.50E+05	5.00E+03	6.14	12.14
5.00E+05	2.50E+03	5.64	11.64
1.00E+06	1.25E+03	5.14	11.14
2.50E+06	5.00E+02	4.48	10.48
5.00E+06	2.50E+02	3.98	9.98
1.00E+07	1.25E+02	3.48	9.48
2.50E+07	5.00E+01	2.82	8.82
5.00E+07	2.50E+01	2.32	8.32
1.00E+08	1.25E+01	1.82	7.82
2.50E+08	5.00E+00	1.16	7.16
5.00E+08	2.50E+00	0.66	6.66
1.25E+09	1.00E+00	0.00	6.00

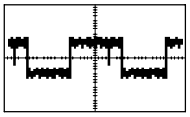
- Envelope. Continuously, as subsequent waveforms are acquired, the instrument retains the running minimum (Min) and maximum (Max) values in adjacent sample intervals, creating an envelope of the number of waveforms that you specify. Once the specified number of waveforms is reached, the data is cleared and the process starts over. This is similar to the Peak Detect mode, but Envelope mode, unlike Peak Detect, gathers peaks over many trigger events. Works in only real time non-interpulated sampling.
- Average. The instrument processes the number of waveforms that you specify into the acquired waveform, creating a running average of the input signal. This mode reduces random noise.

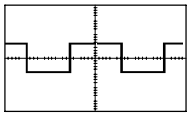
Acquiring and displaying a noisy square wave signal illustrates the difference among the modes. Note how Average reduces the noise while Envelope captures its extremes. Also notice Hi Res accuractely displays even rapidly changing waveforms while removing noise similar to averaging:


Sample


Peak Detect


Hi Res


Envelope


Average

- Waveform Database. Using waveform database technology, the instrument processes a much larger sample of data. The waveform database is a three-dimensional accumulation of source waveform data over several acquisitions. In addition to amplitude and timing information, the database includes a count of the number of times a specific waveform point (time and amplitude) has been acquired. The database is 200 lines by 500 columns with a 64 bit counter for each pixel location. You can use color-graded displays based on counts to highlight waveform activity. Parametric measurements derived from the database use statistical techniques to produce more stable, accurate results.

  If you select Infinite Persistence, the counts accumulate continuously.

Samples sets the minimum number of samples required to complete a single acquisition sequence and the minimum number of samples required to complete a mask test. If not using display persistence, samples sets the minimum number of samples that is required to release the waveform to the display. Similar to FastFrame, selecting RunStop, will cause the waveform to be displayed with what has been acquired so far.

The actual number of samples acquired is determined by the Samples setting, the selected Record Length, and if in equivalent time acquisitions, the actual number of samples acquired in an acquisition. For example, in real-time acquisition mode with the entire trace displayed, if the Record Length is set to 5000 points and Samples is set to 5001 points, then two acquisitions are required and 10000 points are acquired. If Samples is set to 5000 points, one acquisition is required and 5000 points are acquired. If Samples is set to 4999 points, one acquisition is required and 5000 points are acquired.

For Single Sequence and Mask Pass/Fail Testing, a sample is only counted if the sample would be displayed in the graticule area. In Single Sequence, all eligible samples in an acquisition are counted. In Mask Test, with infinite persistence on, all acquisitions acquired in a batch are counted. In nondisplay persistence, the minimum number of samples for the waveform may include multiple batches of acquisitions.

In ET mode, fewer samples are acquired per acquisition, but more acquisitions may be acquired in a batch. Samples divided by the Record Length roughly indicates the number of waveforms in a batch of acquisitions.

Batch processing minimizes the overhead of displaying and processing other features, such as measurements and histograms. The higher the number of samples, the greater the acquisition throughput and the potential for less frequent display updates.

Also, consider how you want to control acquisition; you have two main options, settable from the Run/Stop control window (select Run/Stop from the Horiz/Acq menu):

- Run/Stop Button Only. Sets the instrument to start and stop the acquisition only when you push the Run/Stop button, available on the front panel, or in the Run/Stop control window. If toggled to Run, acquisition will start if a valid trigger occurs. If toggled to Stop, acquisition stops immediately.

- Single Sequence. In addition to the Run/Stop Button, which can always stop an acquisition, the SINGLE button (or Single Sequence control) will automatically stop acquisition when one complete acquisition sequence is completed. See step 4, *Set the stop mode,* on page 3–24, or access the online help from the Run/Stop control window for more information.

Untriggered Roll. Untriggered roll mode displays newly acquired data points at the right edge of the waveform record while moving older waveform data points to the left. To stop acquiring data push **RUN/STOP** (see Figure 3–6).

Use untriggered roll to continuously observe a slow process, knowing that you can always see the most recent view of that process. Math and measurements work after you push STOP.

Untriggered Roll with Single Sequence. Untriggered roll mode with single sequence displays newly acquired data points at the right edge of the waveform record while moving older waveform data points to the left. Acquisitions automatically stop after a complete waveform record is acquired (see Figure 3–6). Use untriggered roll with single sequence to observe data for later viewing.

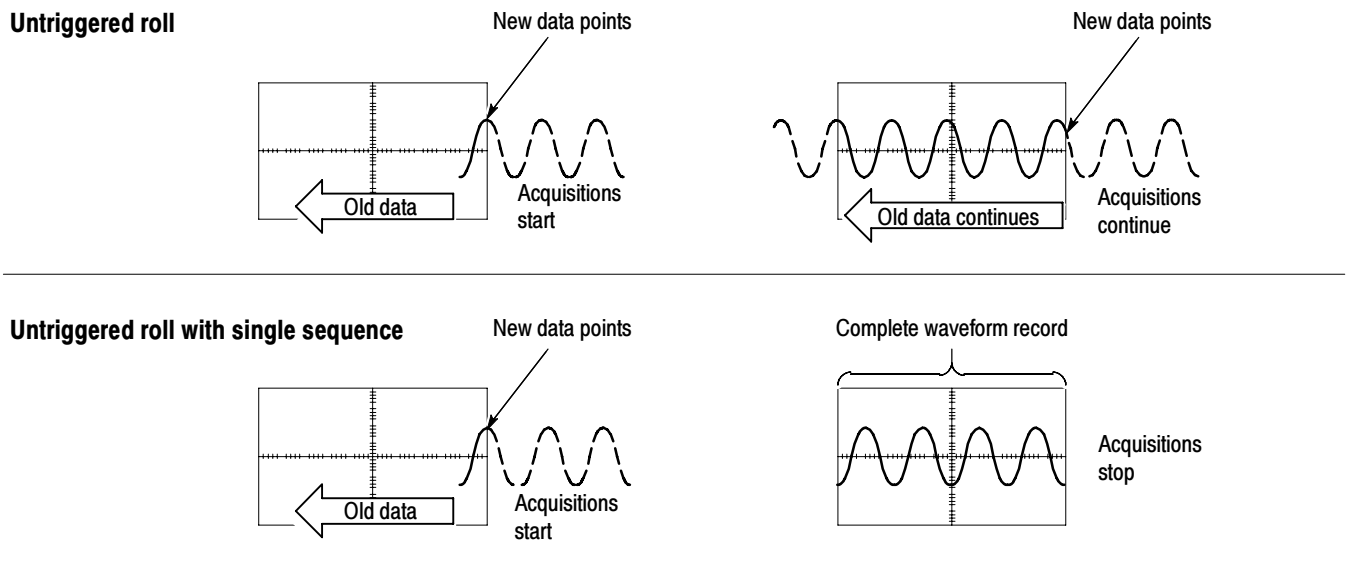


Figure 3-6: Roll mode

Global Controls. Like the horizontal controls, the acquisition controls apply to all active channels; for example, channel 1 cannot acquire in Sample mode while channel 2 acquires in Envelope mode. You cannot stop channel 4 from acquiring (if turned on) while other channels continue to acquire.

Preventing Aliasing. Under certain conditions, a waveform may be aliased on screen. Read the following description about aliasing and the suggestions for preventing it.

When a waveform aliases, it appears on screen with a frequency lower than the actual waveform being input or it appears unstable even though the TRIG'D light is lighted. Aliasing occurs because the instrument is not sampling the signal fast enough to construct an accurate waveform record. (See Figure 3–7.)

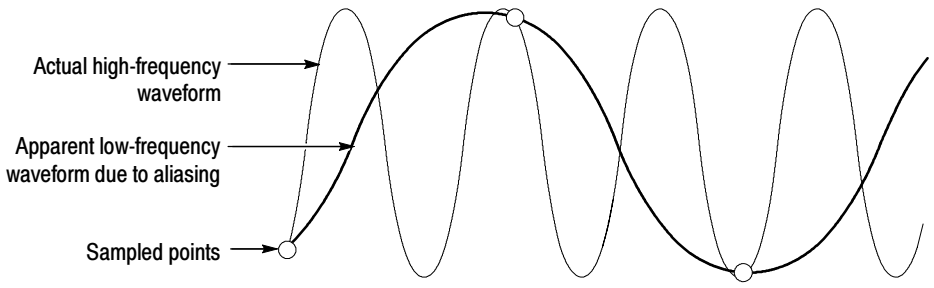


Figure 3-7: Aliasing

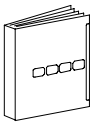
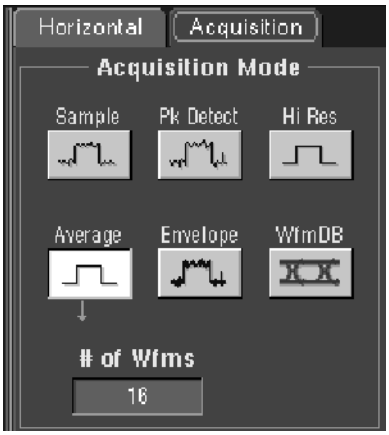
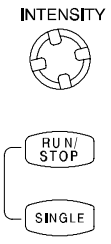
Methods to Check and Eliminate Aliasing. To quickly check for aliasing, slowly decrease the horizontal scale (time per division setting). If the shape of the displayed waveform changes drastically or becomes stable at a faster time base setting, your waveform was probably aliased.

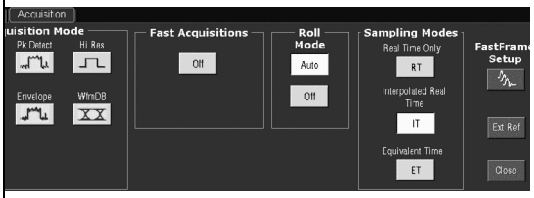
To avoid aliasing, be sure to sample the input signal at a rate more than twice as fast as the highest frequency component of the input signal. For example, a signal with frequency component of 500 MHz would need to be sampled at a rate faster than 1 Gigasamples/second to represent it accurately and to avoid aliasing. The following tips may help you eliminate aliasing on a signal:

- Turn on Waveform Database mode to capture more data.
- Try adjusting the horizontal scale for proper waveform display.
- Try pushing the AUTOSET button.
- Try switching the acquisition to Envelope mode. Envelope searches for samples with the highest and lowest values over multiple acquisitions and can detect faster signal components over time.
- Turn on PeakDetect acquisition mode. If the waveform becomes an envelope, aliasing was occurring.

To Set Acquisition Modes

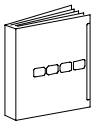
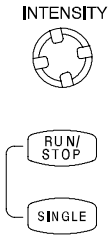
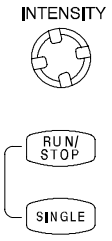
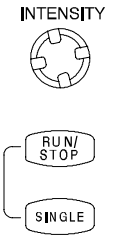
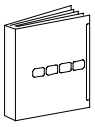
Use the procedure that follows to set the data acquisition mode and specify acquisition start/stop methods. For more information, display online help when performing the procedure.

Overview	To set acquisition modes	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Instrument must be powered up, with horizontal and vertical controls set up. Triggering should also be set up.	 See page 3-43 for trigger setup.
To select an acquisition mode	**2.** Touch the Horiz button. Select the Acquisition tab from the Horiz/Acq setup window.	
Select the acquisition mode **Set waveform count (average and envelope only)**	**3.** Touch an Acquisition Mode button to set the acquisition mode; choose from the following modes: ■ Sample ■ Peak Detect ■ Hi Res ■ Envelope ■ Average ■ Waveform Database For Average and Envelope modes only, select the number of acquisitions to average or envelope. For Waveform Database mode, select the number of samples desired.	
Set the stop mode	**4.** Push the RUN/STOP button (or touch Run/Stop in the Run/Stop control window) to toggle between starting (Running) and stopping acquisitions. **5.** Push the SINGLE button (or touch Single Sequence in the Run/Stop control window) to acquire enough waveforms to satisfy the acquisition mode and then stop.	

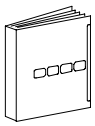
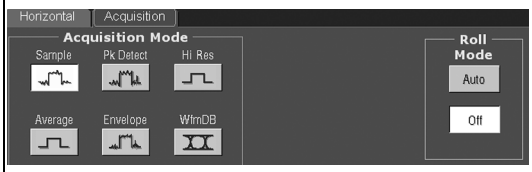
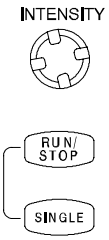
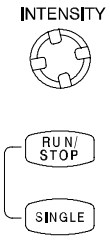
Overview	To set acquisition modes (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To select real-time or equivalent-time sampling	To select real-time sampling, interpolated real-time sampling, or equivalent-time sampling: **6.** Touch the Horiz button. Select the Acquisition tab from the Horiz/Acq control window, Or select Horizontal/Acquisition Setup from the Horiz/Acq menu to display the Acquisition Mode control window. Select the Acquisition tab. **7.** Select the sampling mode: ■ Equivalent Time uses both the real-time and equivalent-time sampling as appropriate. ■ Real Time Only limits the instrument to real-time sampling. Real Time Only prevents the very fast horizontal scale settings from being selected. ■ Interpolated Real Time limits the instrument to real-time sampling. If the instrument cannot accurately get enough samples for a complete waveform, it will interpolate. ***Note.*** *The instrument will use the interpolation method selected in the display menu to fill in the missing record points — either linear or sin(x)/x interpolation. The default method is sin(x)/x. See* Interpolation *on page 3-32 for a discussion of interpolation.*	Horiz 

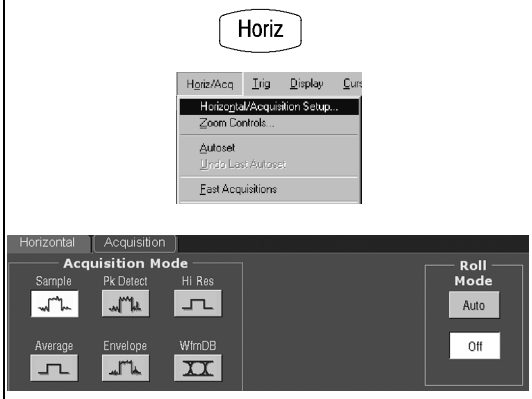
To Start and Stop Acquisition

Use the procedure that follows to start and stop acquisition.

Overview	To start and stop acquisition	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The horizontal and vertical controls must be set up. Triggering should also be set up.	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
To start acquiring	**2.** Make sure all the channels to be acquired are turned on (use channel buttons; see *To Set Up Signal Input* on page 3-6 if needed). Then push the RUN button to begin acquiring.	
To stop acquiring	**3.** Push the RUN/STOP button to stop acquisition. Acquisition will also stop if triggering ceases while in Normal trigger mode.	
To take a single acquisition	**4.** Push the SINGLE button to start acquiring and acquire enough waveforms to satisfy the acquisition mode and then stop.	
For more help	**5.** See references listed at right.	 See *To Set Acquisition Modes* on page 3-24 and *To Get More Help* on page 3-10.

To Set Roll Mode Use the procedure that follows to set up roll mode acquisitions.

Overview	To set Roll Mode	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The horizontal and vertical controls must be set up. Triggering should also be set up.	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
To enable roll mode	**2.** Touch the Horiz button. Select the Acquisition tab from the Horiz/Acq control window, or select Horizontal/Acquisition Setup from the Horiz/Acq menu to display the Acquisition Mode control window. Select the Acquisition tab. **3.** Select Roll Mode AUTO to enable roll mode. When the horizontal scale is 40 ms per division at a record length of ≦200K points and the acquisition mode is Sample or Pk Detect, roll mode turns on. As the record length becomes larger, the time per division required to enter roll mode becomes slower. ***Note.*** *Envelope, Average, and Waveform Database acquisition modes inhibit roll mode.*	 
To single sequence roll mode	**4.** Push the SINGLE button to start acquiring and acquire enough waveforms to satisfy the acquisition mode and then stop.	
To turn off roll mode acquisitions	**5.** Do the following step to stop acquisitions in roll mode: ■ If you are not in Single Sequence, push RUN/ STOP to stop roll mode. ■ If you are in Single Sequence, roll mode acquisitions stop automatically when a complete record is acquired.	

Overview	To set Roll Mode (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To disable roll mode	**6.** Touch the Horiz button. Select Acquisition tab from the Horiz/Acq control window, Or select Horizontal/Acquisition Setup from the Horiz/Acq menu to display the Acquisition Mode control window. Select the Acquisition tab. **7.** Select Roll Mode OFF to disable roll mode. Or, whenever you set the Horizontal SCALE to 20 ms per division or faster, roll mode turns off. At record lengths greater than 200K points, the time per division required to turn off roll mode becomes slower. ***Note.*** *Envelope, Average, and Waveform Database acquisition modes inhibit roll mode.*	

Acquisition Control Background

This section contains background information on the data sampling and acquisition process that can help you more effectively set up the acquisition window of each channel. This section describes the following:

- The acquisition hardware
- The sampling process, sampling modes, and the waveform record
- Normal acquisition cycles

Acquisition Hardware

Before a signal can be acquired, it must pass through the input channel where it is scaled and digitized. Each channel has a dedicated input amplifier and digitizer as shown in Figure 3–8; each channel can produce a stream of digital data from which waveform records can be extracted. See *Signal Connection and Conditioning* on page 3–2 for further description of scaling, positioning, and DC offsetting of channels.

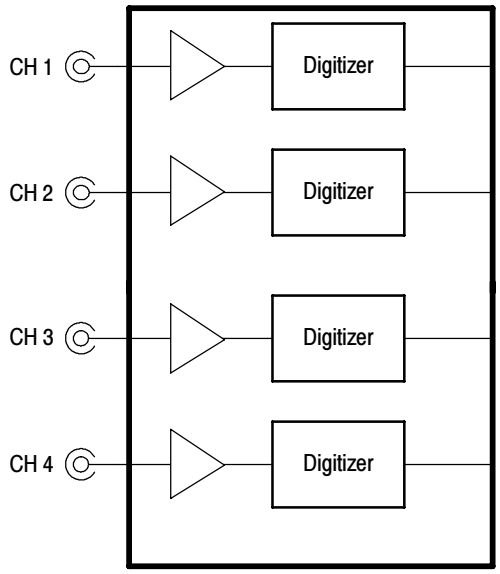


Figure 3-8: Digitizer configuration

Sampling Process

Acquisition is the process of sampling the analog input signal of an input channel, converting it into digital data, and assembling it into a waveform record, which is then stored in acquisition memory. Sampling, then, is the process that provides a waveform record per trigger event (see Figure 3-10 on page 3-30). The signal parts within the vertical range of the amplifier are digitized. See Figure 3-9.

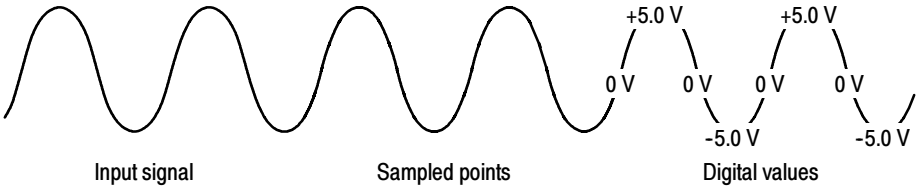


Figure 3-9: Digital acquisition — sampling and digitizing

Acquisition Modes

The instrument acquisition system can process the data as it is acquired, averaging or enveloping the waveform data to produce enhanced waveform records. Once the waveform record exists (enhanced or not), you can use the postprocessing capabilities of the instrument to further process that record: perform measurements, waveform math, and so on. Refer to *Using the Acquisition Controls* on page 3-18 for a description of the acquisition modes.

Waveform Record

While sampling on the input signal provides the data that makes up the waveform record for any given channel, the instrument builds the waveform record through use of some common parameters (common means that they affect the waveforms in all channels).

Figure 3–10 shows how these common parameters define the waveform record; as shown in the figure, they define where in the data stream and how much data is taken. Locate the following parameters in the figure:

- Sample Interval. The time between sample points taken during acquisition.
- Record Length. The number of samples required to fill a waveform record.
- Trigger Point. The trigger point marks the time zero in a waveform record. All waveform samples are located in time with respect to the trigger point.
- Horizontal Position. If horizontal delay is off, the time lapse from the first sample taken (first point in the waveform record) to the trigger point (in percent of samples before the trigger). When horizontal delay is off, the trigger point and the horizontal reference are at the same point in the waveform record.

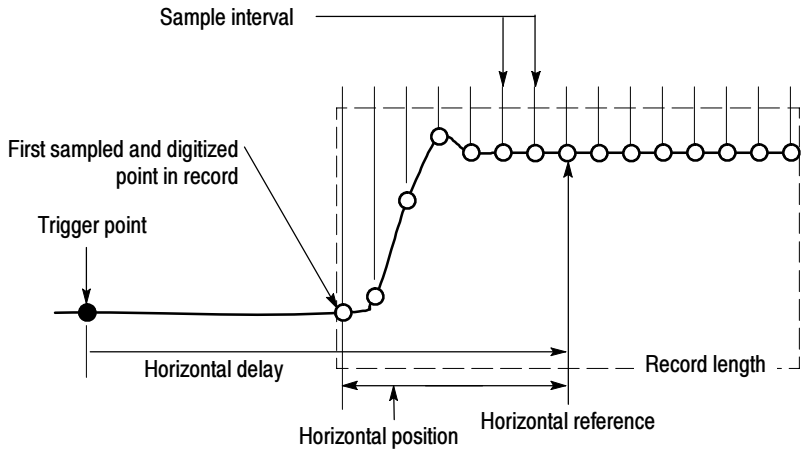


Figure 3-10: The waveform record and its defining parameters

As Figure 3–10 shows, the instrument acquires points in order from left to right.

When all the points in the waveform record have been sampled and digitized, the waveform record is in acquisition memory and becomes available for display (or use in math waveforms, storage, and so on).

For a control-oriented discussion of the waveform record, see *Horizontal Acquisition Window Considerations* on page 3–14 and *Horizontal Scale vs. Record Length vs. Sample Interval vs. Resolution* on page 3–15.

Real-Time Sampling

The two general methods of sampling are real-time and equivalent-time. This instrument uses both real- and equivalent-time sampling.

In real-time sampling, the instrument digitizes all the points it acquires after one trigger event (see Figure 3–11). Always use real-time sampling to capture single-shot or transient events.

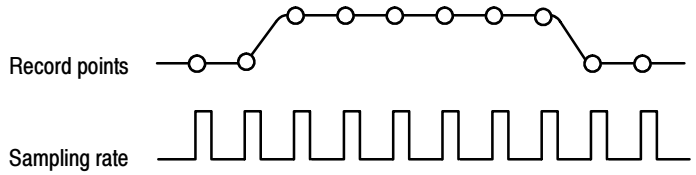


Figure 3- 11: Real-time sampling

Equivalent-Time Sampling

The instrument uses equivalent time sampling to extend its sample rate beyond its real-time maximum sampling rate, but only under two conditions:

- You must have selected Equivalent Time in the Acquisition Setup control window.
- You must have set the instrument that requires a faster sampleing rate than it can support in real-time sampling mode.

If both conditions are met, the instrument takes a few samples with each trigger event and eventually obtains enough samples to construct a waveform record. The instrument makes multiple acquisitions of a repetitive waveform to obtain the sample density required for a waveform record. (See Figure 3–12.) Equivalent-time sampling should only be used on repetitive signals.

The sampling speeds affect the mode the instrument uses to sample waveforms:

- The instrument always real-time samples at slower time base settings; faster time settings force the instrument to switch from real-time sampling to equivalent-time sampling or interpolation, depending on whether Equivalent Time or Interpolated Real Time is selected.

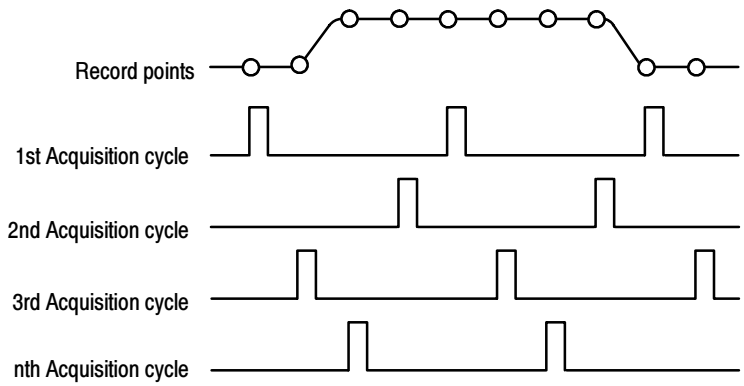


Figure 3- 12: Equivalent-time sampling

The type of equivalent-time sampling the instrument uses is called random equivalent-time sampling. Although it takes the samples sequentially in time, it takes them randomly with respect to the trigger. Random sampling occurs because the instrument sample clock runs asynchronously with respect to the input signal and the signal trigger. The instrument takes samples independently of the trigger position and displays them based on the time difference between the sample and the trigger.

IT IT (Interpolated Time) mode is the default setting for these scopes. IT is a real time sampling mode that interpolates points between sampled points to fill in the record length selected. It uses sin(x)/x interpolation as default method. IT mode offers the same 500fs/point resolution that ET can achieve, but it does it with a single trigger event instead of requiring multiple triggers.

Interpolation Your instrument can interpolate between the samples it acquires. In equivalent-time sampling, it interpolates only when it does not have all the *real* samples it needs to fill its displayed waveform. When setting ZOOM to progressively larger amounts of expansion, the instrument then interpolates to create the intervening points in the displayed waveform. If the time per division is set fast enough to require equivalent time but equivalent time is disabled, the instrument interpolates points. There are two options for interpolation: Sin(x)/x or linear. (The instrument can also equivalent-time sample to acquire more samples; see *Equivalent-Time Sampling* on page 3–31.)

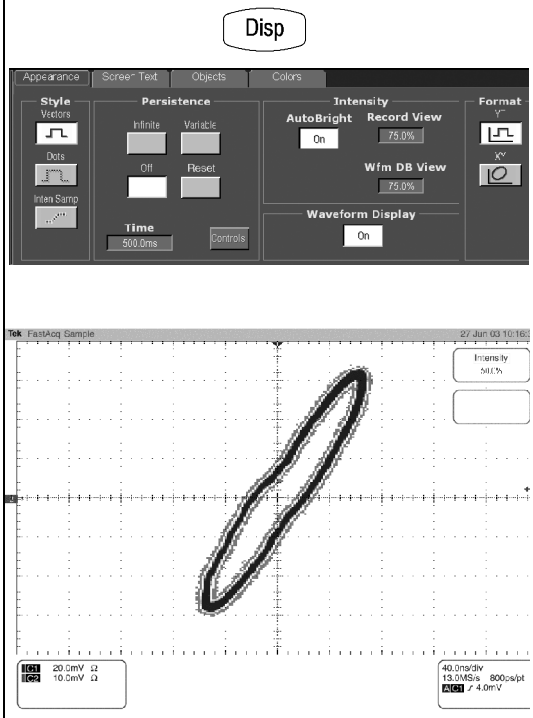
Sin(x)/x interpolation. Sin(x)/x interpolation computes record points using a curve fit between the actual values acquired. It assumes all the interpolated points fall along that curve. Sin(x)/x is particularly useful when acquiring more rounded waveforms such as sine waves. Actually, it is appropriate for general use, although it may introduce some overshoot or undershoot in signals with fast rise times, especially if you use zoom and the waveform edges are undersampled.

Linear interpolation. Linear interpolation computes record points between actual acquired samples by using a straight line fit. It assumes all the interpolated points fall in their appropriate point in time on that straight line. Linear interpolation is useful for many waveforms such as pulse trains.

NOTE*. When using either type of interpolation, can set the display style so that the real samples are displayed intensified and interpolated samples are dimmed. The instructions under* Select the Display Style *on page 3–114 explain how to turn on intensified samples.*

To Set Display Format

The instrument displays waveforms in one of two formats: YT or XY. Use the procedure that follows to set the display format.

Overview	To set display format	Control elements and resources
To select the format	**1.** To set the display axis format, touch the DISP button and select the Appearance tab. **2.** Select between YT and XY display formats: YT. This format is the conventional instrument display format. It shows a signal voltage (the vertical axis) as it varies over time (the horizontal axis). XY. This format displays a the data of one channel versus another. on the two axes of the display XY, the data is triggerable and the individual X and Y waveform records are available. This mode is particularly useful for studying phase relationships. When you set the VERTICAL POSITION and Vertical Offset to center the display in YT mode, the XY display is at center screen, and each division of display in YT mode produces a division of display in XY mode. When you choose the XY format, channels are assigned to the axis and displayed as part of an XY pair. If only one source in an XY pair is displayed, the instrument automatically turns on the other source to complete the XY pair. Moreover, once XY is on, selecting either source in a pair turns the pair on; turning either waveform of a pair off removes both sources from the display. XY format is a dot-only display, although it can have persistence. Vector style is not available for XY format. In display XY, histograms, measurements, math, cursors, zoom, and waveform database are not allowed. The HORIZONTAL controls still control the timebase, sample rate, and so forth, but the changes are not reflected in the horizontal axis as in YT display format because the Y-axis is displaying the amplitude data of one channel instead of time data..	 **Figure 3-13: Acquisition XY display**

Using FastFrame

FastFrame is an acquisition mode that lets you capture.

Multiple acquisitions in the acquisition memory of a single channel. Figure 3–14 shows how FastFrame combines the desired captured frames into one larger waveform. For example, FastFrame would let you store 4000 frames (depending on the record length option installed) of 500 samples each into one waveform.

FastFrame mode lets you jump to and view the frame that you select. Time Stamps can display the absolute trigger time for a specific frame and the relative time between triggers of two specified frames. FastFrame lets you compare multiple waveforms.

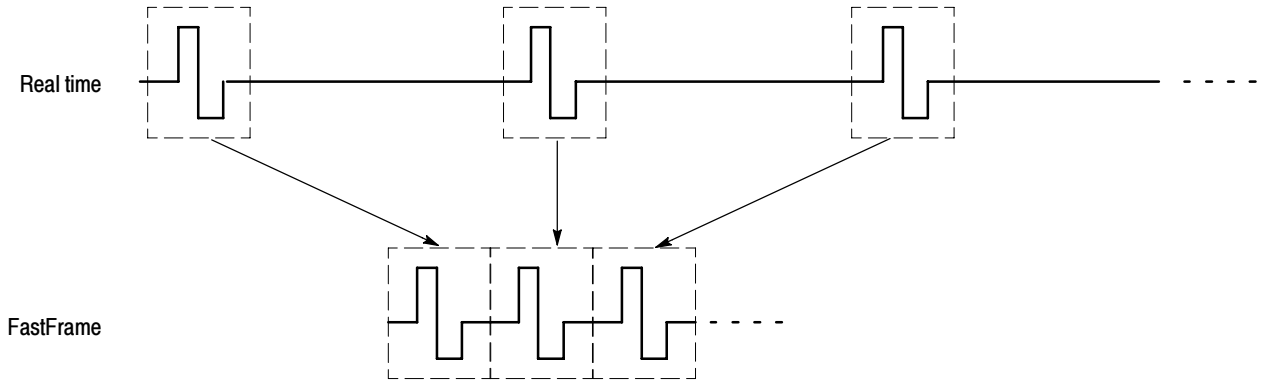


Figure 3-14: FastFrame

FastFrame is not compatible with these features or modes:

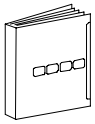
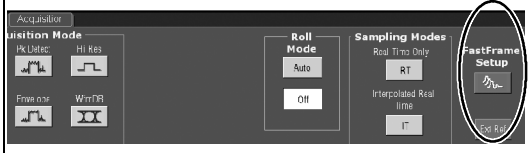
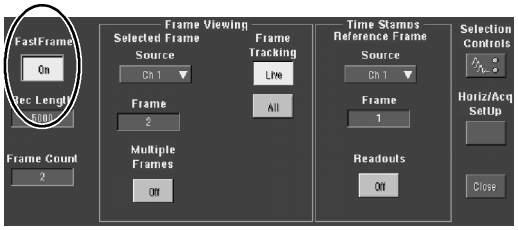
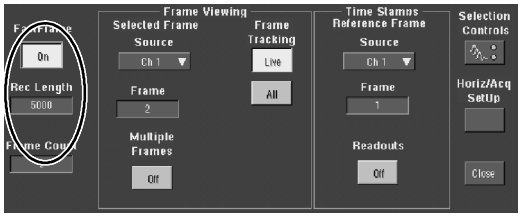
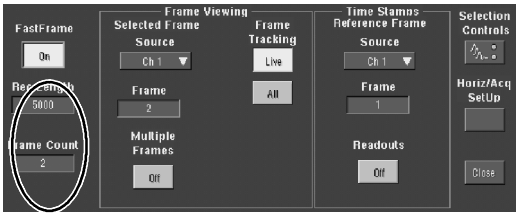
- Equivalent Time
- Histograms
- Average
- Envelope
- Waveform Database

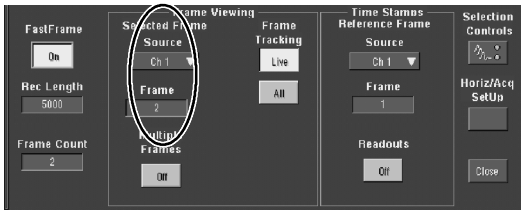
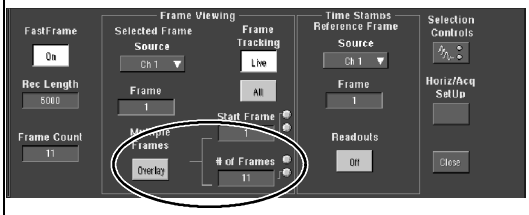
Using FastFrame Acquisitions

Consider the following operating characteristics when using FastFrame:

- You can push **RUN/STOP** to terminate a FastFrame sequence. If any frames were acquired, they are displayed. If no frames were acquired, the previous FastFrame waveform is displayed.
- Because FastFrame introduces additional processing time into the operation cycle of acquire, process, and display, it is best to use Single Sequence Acquisition (see Acquire menu, Stop After menu). With Single Sequence selected, you will see the current acquisition sequence; otherwise, the display lags the current sequence by one sequence. You can also see the current sequence by pushing the RUN/STOP button to stop the acquisition.
- FastFrame reduces the time required before the trigger is rearmed, while preserving the individual subrecords.

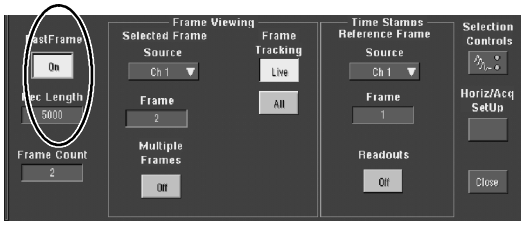
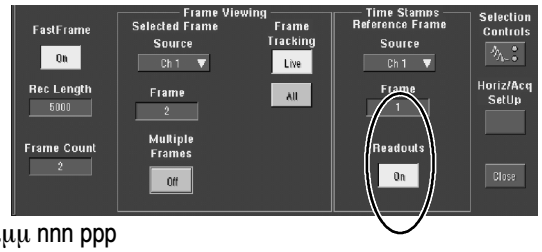
To Set FastFrame Mode Use the procedure that follows to set up FastFrame mode acquisitions.

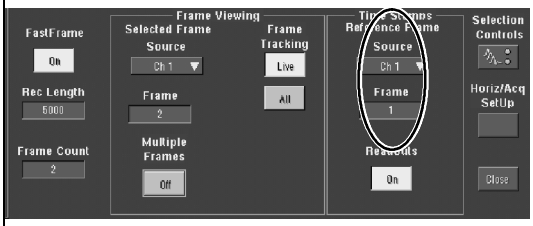
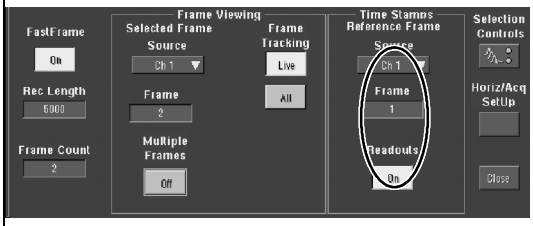
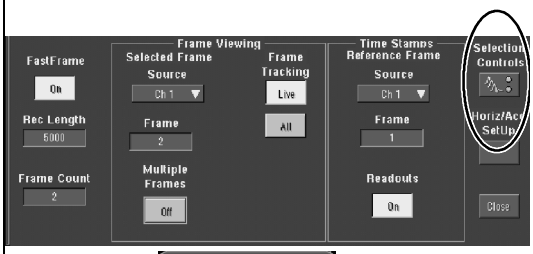
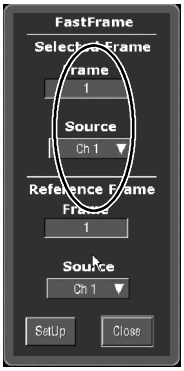
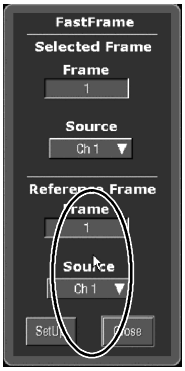
Overview	To set FastFrame mode	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The horizontal and vertical controls must be set up. Triggering should also be set up.	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
To set FastFrame mode	**2.** Touch the Horiz button. Select the Acquisition tab from the Horiz/Acq control window. Touch FastFrame Setup to display the FastFrame Setup control window. **3.** Touch FastFrame to toggle FastFrame to On.	  
Set frame length	**4.** Touch Rec Length, and set the number of samples per frame. Record length is the number of samples in each acquisition.	
Set frame count	**5.** Touch Frame Count, and enter the number of frames to acquire per waveform record. Frame count is the number of acquisitions to store in the acquisition memory of the channel. If the product of the record length and the frame count exceeds the available memory, the instrument will reduce the record length or frame count in size such that the product will fit the amount of memory available.	

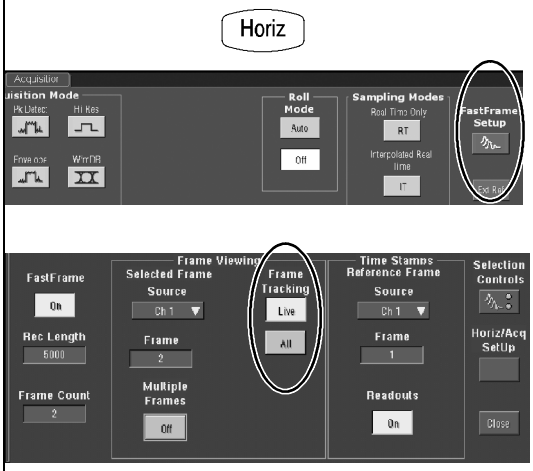
Overview	To set FastFrame mode (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Select the frame to view	**6.** In the Frame Viewing controls, touch Source and select the source of the frame you want to view. **7.** In the Frame Viewing control, touch Frame and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to enter the number of the specific frame you want to view. The frame that you select appears on the display.	
To view multiple frames	**8.** In the Frame Viewing controls, touch Multiple Frames to toggle it to On. **9.** In the Frame Viewing control, touch Start Frame and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to enter the number of the starting frame you want to view. Touch # of Frames and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to enter the number of frames you want to view. The number of frames that you select to view will appear overlaid on the display. **10.** The frames within the selected range are displayed superimposed over each other in the color of the Source channel. The Selected Frame is also superimposed on the display of frames, but in a dark blue color. The blue line is drawn in normal or monochrome color selections, no persistence, and when no Refs are displayed. You may find it difficult to distinguish the dark blue Selected Frame if the selected color palette is Spectral or Temp.	

Time Stamping Frames

Use Time Stamps to display the absolute trigger time for a specific frame and the relative time between triggers of two specified frames. To start FastFrame Time Stamps, do the following steps:

Overview	Time stamping frames	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** FastFrame mode should be set up as described in the previous example. **2.** Turn on FastFrame as described on page 3-37.	
Turn readouts on or off	**3.** In the Time Stamps controls, touch Readouts to toggle time stamp readouts on or off: ■ On displays time stamp readouts (see Figure 3-15 on page 3-41). Time stamps are always acquired. ■ Off turns off the display of time stamp readouts The displayed time uses the following format: Sel Ch# F xxx DD MMM YYYY HH:MM:SS.mmm μμμ nnn ppp Ref Ch# F xxx DD MMM YYYY HH:MM:SS.mmm μμμ nnn ppp Δ DD MMM YYYY HH:MM:SS.mmm μμμ nnn ppp Where: Sel and Ref Ch# F xxx are the selected or reference frame number DD MMM YYYY is the date (day, month, and year) HH:MM:SS.mmm, is the clock time (hours, minutes, seconds, and milliseconds) μμμ,nnn,ppp is a fraction of a second (to picoseconds)	

Overview	Time stamping frames (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Select the reference frame	**4.** In the Time Stamps controls, touch Source and select the source of the reference frame.	
	5. In the Time Stamps controls, touch Frame and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to enter the number of the reference frame. This value sets the starting frame when measuring the relative time between two frames.	
Select the FastFrame and time stamps selection controls	You may set the Selected Frame and Reference Frame as previously shown or you can set them from the Selection Controls window. **6.** Touch Selection Controls from the Time Stamps control window to display the FastFrame controls.	
	7. In the FastFrame controls window, touch Selected Frame Source and select the source of the frame you want to view. **8.** Touch Selected Frame Frame and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to enter the number of the specific frame you want to view and take time stamps on. The frame you select appears on the display. ***Note.*** *The Δ is the selected time stamp minus the reference time stamp.* **9.** Touch the Reference Frame Source and select the source of the reference frame. Touch Frame and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to enter the number of the reference frame.	 

Overview	Time stamping frames (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To lock the reference position frames	**10.** Touch the Horiz button. Select the Acquisition tab from the Horiz/Acq control window. Touch FastFrame Setup to display the FastFrame Setup control window. ***Note.*** *You can also get the FastFrame Setup control window by touching the Set Up button on the Selection Controls window.* **11.** Touch either Frame Tracking Live or All to lock the reference and position frames together. When the frames are locked, they maintain the same relative distance from each other when either frame is adjusted: ■ Live locks together the channel and math waveforms. All reference waveforms are locked together, but they are separate from the channel and math waveforms. ■ All locks together all channel, math, and reference waveforms; adjusting one waveform adjusts all waveforms.	

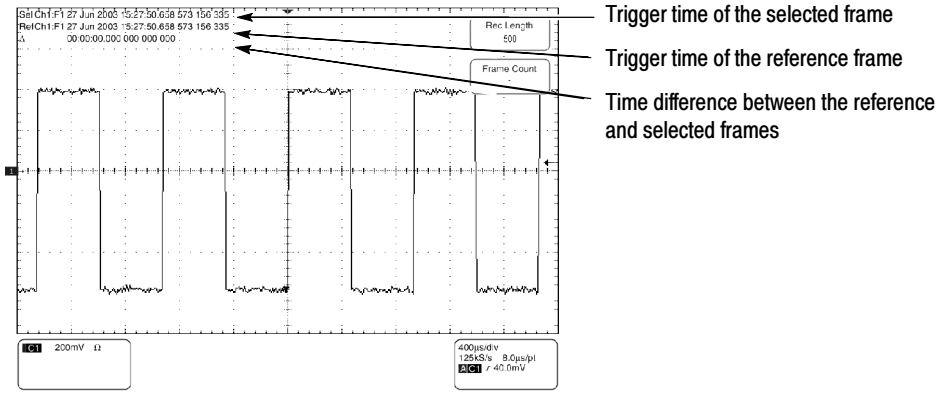


Figure 3- 15: FastFrame time stamp

Triggering

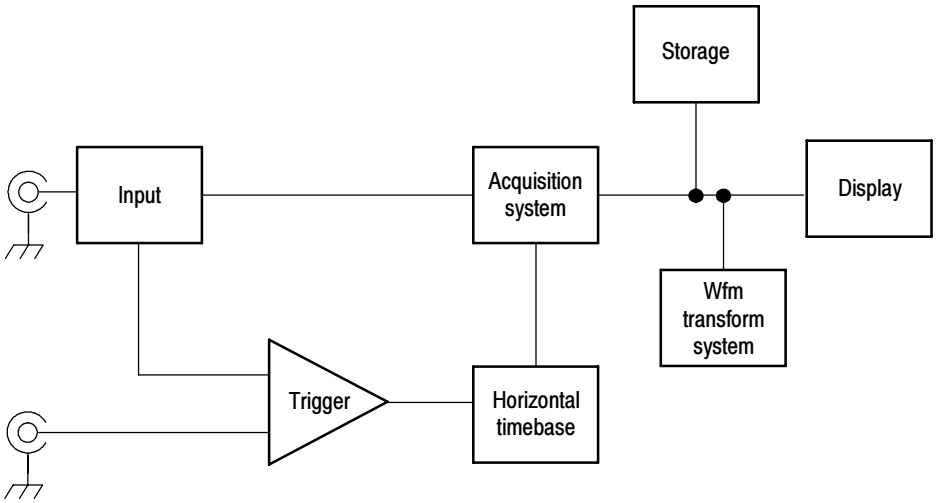
To properly acquire data, that is, to use the instrument to sample a signal and digitize it into a waveform record that you want to measure or otherwise process, you need to set up the trigger conditions. This section provides background on, and the procedures for using, the basic elements of triggering: source, holdoff, mode, and so on. This section covers the following topics:

- *The Pinpoint Triggering System,* which provides a brief description of the instrument triggering system.
- *Triggering Concepts,* which describes some basic principles of triggering and the following trigger elements: *type*, *source*, *coupling*, *holdoff*, *mode*, and so on
- *Triggering from the Front Panel,* which describes how to use the front-panel triggering controls each of which is common to most of the trigger types the instrument provides
- *Additional Trigger Parameters,* which describes how to access common trigger functions in the Trigger control window
- *Advanced Triggering,* which describes trigger types that you can use to isolate specific signal phenomena
- *Sequential Triggering,* which describes how to combine the A (Main) and B (Delayed) trigger systems to capture unique, complex events
- *Comm Triggering,* which describes triggering on communications signals
- *Serial Pattern Triggering,* which describes triggering on serial data patterns

The Pinpoint Trigger System

This instrument can trigger on events of interest in high-speed debug and validation applications. Its Pinpoint trigger system provides trigger sensitivity up to 4 divisions at 9 GHz allowing capture of glitches approximately 100 ps wide and trigger jitter to less than 1.1 ps rms.

The Pinpoint trigger system also comes with a robust suite of advanced trigger types that is usable on both A and B triggers, allows logic qualification of either the A or B trigger event by other channels, and it adds Reset capability to, at, reset the trigger circuit after a specific number of events or a specific time. Together, these features support capture of events based on the most complex trigger event or sequence of trigger events.



Triggering Concepts

Triggers determine when the instrument stops acquiring and displays a waveform. They help create meaningful waveforms from unstable jumbles or blank screens. (See Figure 3–16.) The instrument has simple edge triggers as well as a variety of advanced triggers you can use.

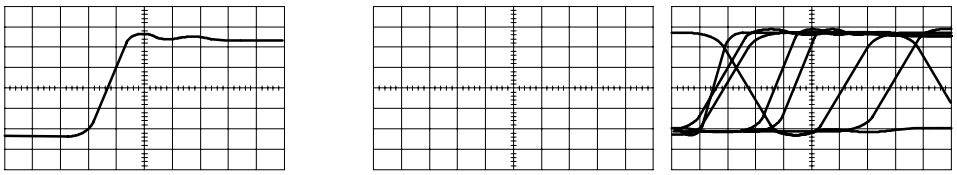


Figure 3- 16: Triggered versus untriggered displays

The Trigger Event

The trigger event establishes the time-zero point in the waveform record. All points in the record are located in time with respect to that point. The instrument continuously acquires and retains enough sample points to fill the pretrigger portion of the waveform record (that part of the waveform that is displayed before, or to the left of, the triggering event on screen). When a trigger event occurs, the instrument starts acquiring samples to build the posttrigger portion of the waveform record (displayed after, or to the right of, the trigger event). Once a trigger is recognized, the instrument will not accept another trigger until the acquisition is complete and the holdoff time has expired.

Trigger Sources

The trigger source provides the signal that triggers acquisition. Use a trigger source that is synchronized with the signal you are acquiring and displaying. You can derive your trigger from the following sources:

- Input channels are the most commonly used trigger sources. You can select any one of the four input channels. The channel that you select as a trigger source will function whether it is displayed or not.
- AC Line Voltage is a convenient trigger source when you are looking at signals related to the power line frequency. Examples include devices such as lighting equipment and power supplies. Because the instrument generates the trigger from the power line, you do not have to use a channel input.
- Auxiliary Trigger (AUX IN) provides a fifth source that you can use as a trigger input when you need to use the four input channels for other signals. For example, you might want to trigger on a clock while displaying four other logic signals. To use the auxiliary trigger, connect the signal to the Auxiliary Trigger input connector. The Auxiliary Trigger input is not compatible with most probes, nor can you display the auxiliary trigger signal.

Trigger Types

The instrument provides the following trigger types:

- *Edge* is the simplest and most commonly used trigger type. You can use it with analog or digital signals. An edge trigger event occurs when the trigger source (the signal the trigger circuit is monitoring) passes through a specified voltage level in the specified direction (the trigger slope). Edge type is available on both A (Main) and B (Delayed) triggers.
- *Advanced* triggers are actually a collection of trigger types that are primarily used with digital signals to detect specific conditions:
  - *Glitch*, *runt*, *width*, *transition*, and *timeout* types trigger on unique properties of pulses that you can specify.
  - *Pattern* and *state* types trigger on logic combinations of several signals.
  - *Setup/hold type* triggers on the relative timing between two signals.

  The advanced trigger types are available on both A (Main) and B (Delayed) triggers.

- *Comm* is a special trigger type used on communication signals. You can use Comm triggers to test communications signals, and Mask testing automatically uses Comm triggers to set up signals for mask testing. Comm triggering is available with A triggers only, and only when the Serial Mask option (Option SM) is present.
- *Serial* is a special trigger type used on signals with serial data patterns. Serial triggering is available with A triggers only, and only when the Serial Pattern trigger option (Option ST) is present.

Trigger Modes

The trigger mode determines how the instrument behaves in the absence of a trigger event:

- Normal trigger mode enables the instrument to acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the instrument will not acquire a waveform, rather the last waveform record acquired remains "frozen" on the display. If no last waveform exists, none is displayed. See *Normal trigger mode* in Figure 3–17. (You can push FORCE TRIGGER, in the Trigger control window, to force the instrument to make a single acquisition.)
- Auto trigger mode (automatic mode) enables the instrument to acquire a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts after a trigger event occurs. If another trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the instrument forces a trigger. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.

  Be aware that auto mode, when forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, does not synchronize the waveform on the display. See *Automatic trigger mode* in Figure 3–17. Successive acquisitions will not be triggered at the same point on the waveform; therefore, the waveform will appear to roll across the screen. Of course, if valid triggers occur the display will become stable on screen.

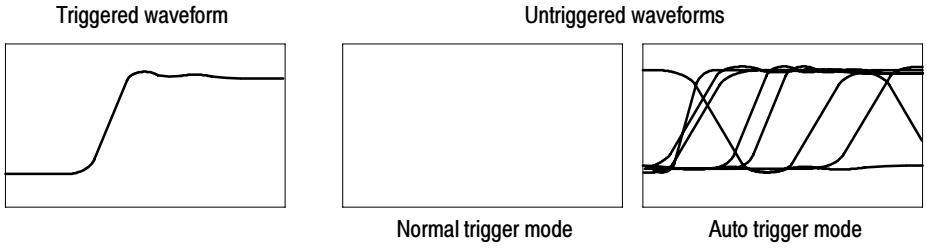


Figure 3- 17: Triggered versus untriggered displays

Trigger Holdoff

Trigger holdoff can help stabilize triggering. When the instrument recognizes a trigger event, it disables the trigger system until acquisition is complete. In addition, the trigger system remains disabled during the holdoff period that

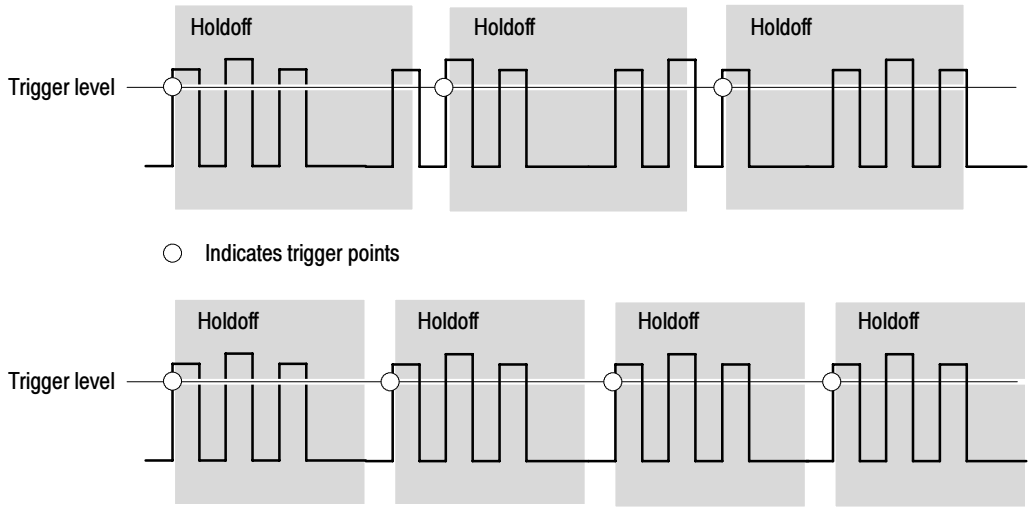
follows each acquisition. You adjust holdoff to obtain stable triggering when the instrument is triggering on undesired trigger events as shown in Figure 3–18.

A digital pulse train is a good example of a complex waveform. (See Figure 3–18.) Each pulse looks like any other, so many possible trigger points exist. Not all of these will result in the same display. The holdoff period allows the instrument to trigger on the correct edge, resulting in a stable display.

Holdoff is adjustable from 250 ns (minimum holdoff available) to 12 seconds (maximum holdoff available). To see how to set holdoff, see *To set holdoff* on page 3–55.

You can also set an auto holdoff. Auto holdoff varies with the horizontal scale and is equal to 5 divisions times the current time/division setting.

Random holdoff selects a new random holdoff time for each acquisition cycle. Rather than helping the instrument synchronize on a particular feature of a pulse train, random holdoff prevents synchronization, helping to reveal features of some pulse trains.



At the longer holdoff time for the top waveform, unstable triggering occurs. With a shorter holdoff set for the bottom waveform, triggers all occur on the first pulse in the burst to remedy the unstable trigger.

Figure 3-18: Holdoff adjustment can prevent false triggers

Trigger Coupling

Trigger coupling determines what part of the signal is passed to the trigger circuit. Edge triggering can use all available coupling types: AC, DC, Low Frequency Rejection, High Frequency Rejection, and Noise Rejection. All the advanced trigger types use only DC coupling. See *To set the trigger coupling* on page 3–52 for a description of each coupling type.

Horizontal Position

Horizontal position is adjustable and defines where on the waveform record the trigger occurs. It lets you choose how much the instrument acquires before and after the trigger event. The part of the record that occurs before the trigger is the pretrigger portion. The part that occurs after the trigger is the posttrigger portion.

When horizontal delay is off, the reference marker shows the trigger position in the waveform.

Displaying pretrigger information can be valuable when troubleshooting. For example, if you are trying to find the cause of an unwanted glitch in your test circuit, you can trigger on the glitch and make the pretrigger period large enough to capture data before the glitch. By analyzing what happened before the glitch, you may uncover clues about its source.

Slope and Level

The slope control determines whether the instrument finds the trigger point on the rising or the falling edge of a signal. (See Figure 3-19.)

These oscilloscopes have bi-slope triggering, they can trigger on positive, negative, or either. The front panel SLOPE button toggles among the three choices.

The level control determines where on that edge the trigger point occurs. (See Figure 3-19.) You can set the trigger level with the LEVEL knob on the front panel. Push the LEVEL knob to automatically set the trigger level to the 50% amplitude point of the signal.

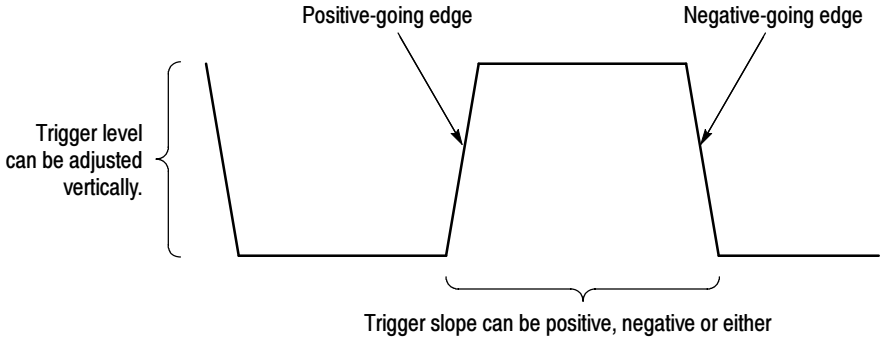


Figure 3-19: Slope and level controls help define the trigger

Delayed Trigger System

You can trigger with the A (Main) trigger system alone or you can combine the A (Main) trigger with the B (Delayed) trigger to trigger on sequential events. When using sequential triggering, the A trigger event arms the trigger system and then the B trigger event triggers the instrument when the B trigger conditions are met. A and B triggers can (and typically do) have separate sources. The B trigger condition can be based on a time delay or a specified number of counted events. See *Sequential Triggering* on page 3–85 to learn how to use the delayed trigger system.

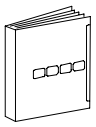
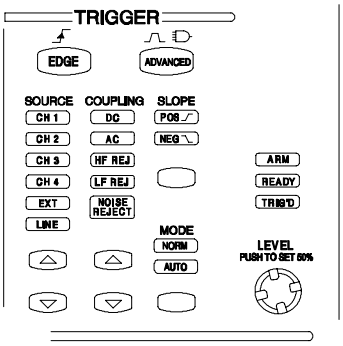
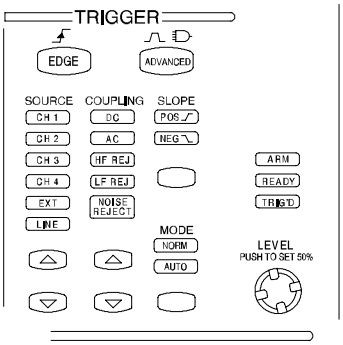
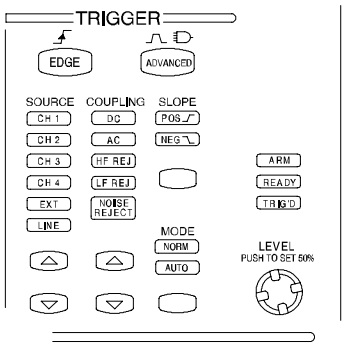
Triggering from the Front Panel

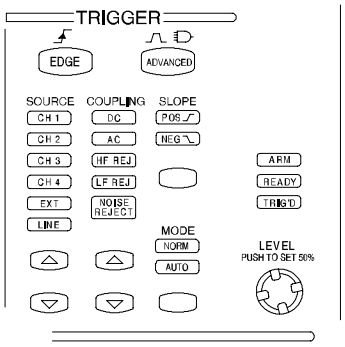
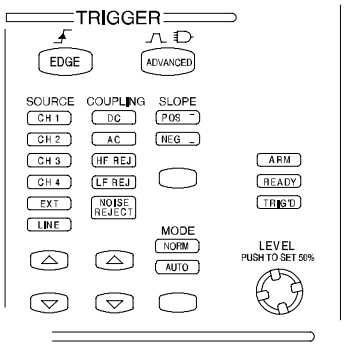
The front panel provides quick access to the most frequently used trigger controls. The trigger readout shows you the state of the trigger system.

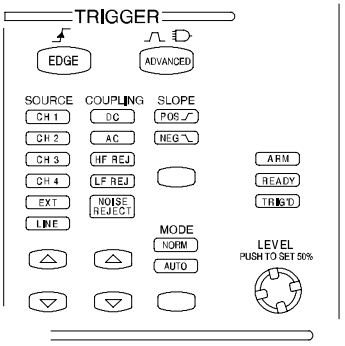
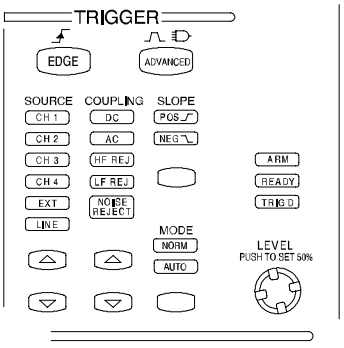
The slope, coupling, and source controls work for edge triggering. To access the advanced trigger controls, display the Trigger Control window by pushing the ADVANCED button (See *Advanced Triggering* on page 3–59 for more information).

Access Procedures

Use the procedure that follows when setting up the instrument to trigger using the front-panel controls.

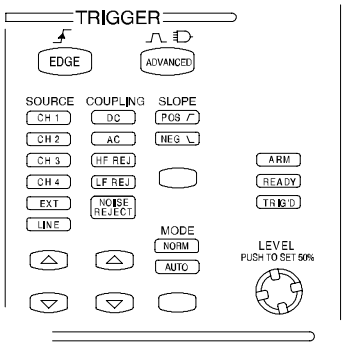
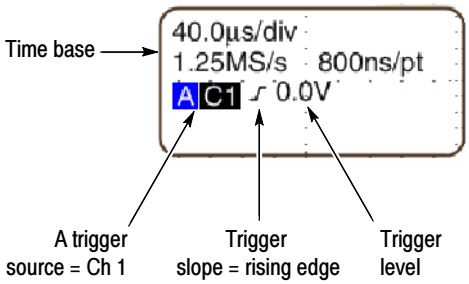
Overview	Triggering from the front panel	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be installed and operating. Acquisition system should be set to Run, and the vertical and horizontal controls should be set appropriately for the signal to be acquired.	 See page 3-17 for acquisition setup
To select the trigger type	**2.** Push the EDGE button to select edge type triggering. Push ADVANCED to bring up the Trigger control window where you can select and set up other trigger types.	
To select the trigger slope	**3.** Push the TRIGGER SLOPE button to toggle among POS and NEG, and EITHER (EITHER mode is indicated by both the POS and NEG indicators lighted): ■ POS triggers on a rising edge (positive going) signal ■ NEG triggers on a falling edge (negative going) signal ■ Either triggers on both the rising edge and falling edge of the signal (select Either in the setup window) You can also set the slope in the Trigger setup window.	
To set level	**4.** To manually change the trigger level when edge triggering (or certain threshold levels, when logic or pulse triggering), turn the trigger LEVEL knob. You can also set the level in the Trigger setup window.	

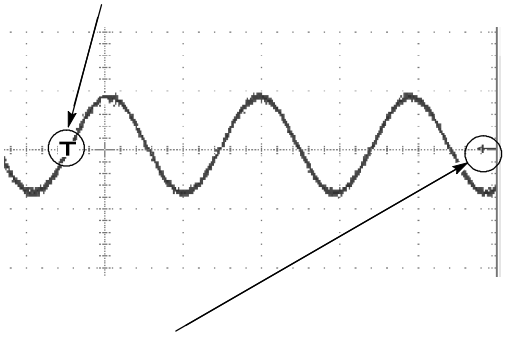
Overview	Triggering from the front panel (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To set to 50%	**5.** To quickly obtain an edge, glitch, timeout, serial, or width trigger, push the trigger LEVEL knob. The instrument sets the trigger level to the halfway point between the peaks of the trigger signal. This function has no effect for the other advanced trigger types. You can also set the level to 50% in the Trigger control window. When the phase locked loop is active (Comm and Serial Trigger only), pushing the trigger LEVEL knob recycles the clock-recovery trigger circuit. The instrument will attempt to acquire lock once. If the input data is disrupted, removed, or heavily distorted, the instrument may not acquire lock or may lose lock. If the recovered clock is not locked to the incoming data, the waveform display will not be stable. Once the input data is available, press the PUSH SET TO 50% knob to force the instrument to reacquire lock. When using Comm triggering, pushing the trigger PUSH SET TO 50% knob sets the levels for the selected code.	
To select the trigger source	**6.** Push the up and down arrow buttons to toggle through the possible trigger sources: ■ CH 1 - CH 4 are the input channels. The channel you select as a trigger source will function whether it is displayed or not. ■ LINE is the AC Line Voltage. Because the instrument generates the trigger, you do not have to input a signal to create the trigger. ■ AUX is a Sixth, nondisplayable trigger source. To use the auxiliary trigger, connect the external triggering signal to the Auxiliary Trigger input connector on the front panel.	

Overview	Triggering from the front panel (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To set the trigger coupling	**7.** Push the up and down arrow buttons to toggle through the possible trigger couplings: ■ DC passes all (both AC and DC components) of the input signal. ■ AC passes only the AC components of an input signal. ■ HF REJ attenuates signals above 20 kHz. ■ LF REJ attenuates signals below 200 kHz. ■ NOISE REJ provides lower sensitivity, reducing the chance of falsely triggering on noise.	
To select the trigger mode	**8.** Push the TRIGGER MODE button to toggle between NORMAL and AUTO trigger modes: ■ NORMAL trigger mode requires a trigger to acquire a waveform. ■ AUTO trigger mode acquires a waveform even if a trigger does not occur (after a time-out). Be aware that in AUTO mode, the acquired waveforms may not be triggered.	

To Check Trigger Status

To see the state and setup of the triggering circuit, use the trigger status lights, readout, and screen.

Overview	To check trigger status	Control elements and resources
Trigger status from trigger status lights	**1.** To quickly determine trigger status, check the three status lights TRIG'D, READY, and ARM in the Trigger control area. ■ TRIG'D on: the instrument has recognized a valid trigger and is filling the posttrigger portion of the waveform. ■ READY on: the instrument can accept, and is waiting for, a valid trigger to occur. ■ ARM on: the trigger circuitry is filling the pretrigger portion of the waveform record. ■ TRIG'D and READY on: valid A trigger recognized, waiting for a delayed trigger. When a delayed trigger is recognized, the posttrigger portion of the delayed waveform will fill. ■ ARM, TRIG'D, and READY off: the digitizer is stopped.	
Trigger status from acquisition readout	**2.** To quickly determine the settings of some key trigger parameters, check the Trigger readout at the bottom of the display. The readouts differ for edge and the advanced triggers.	

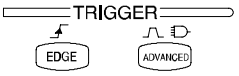
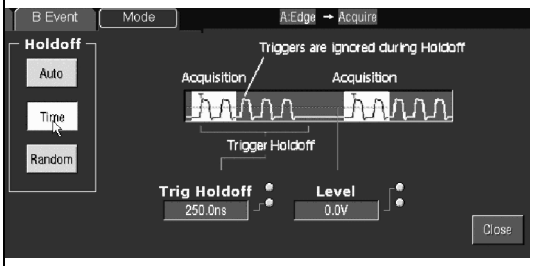
Overview	To check trigger status (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Trigger location and level from display	**3.** To see the trigger point and level on the waveform display, check the graphic indicators Trigger Point and Trigger Level Indicator. Both the trigger point indicator and level bar are displayed from the Display menu. See *Customizing the Display* on page 3-110 for more information. The trigger point indicator shows horizontal position. It can be positioned horizontally off screen to the left when horizontal delay is on. The trigger level indicator shows only the trigger level. It remains on screen, regardless of the horizontal position, as long as the channel providing the trigger source is displayed. You can choose between two types of trigger level indicators: a horizontal bar or an arrow at the right side of the graticule.	Trigger point indicator shows the trigger position on the waveform record.  Trigger level indicator shows the trigger level on the waveform record. You can drag the indicator to set the trigger level.

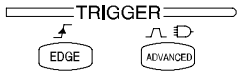
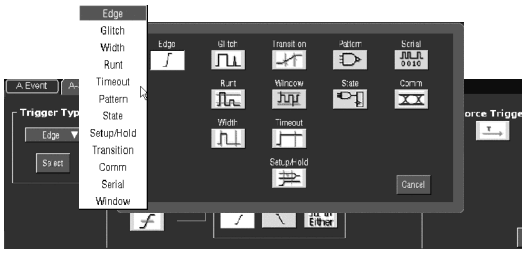
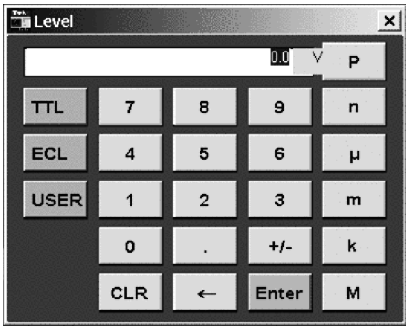
Additional Trigger Parameters

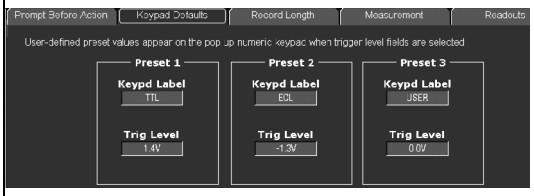
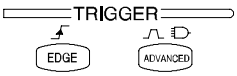
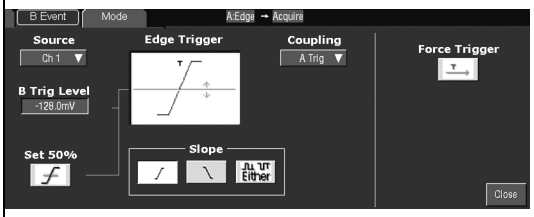
Some additional trigger parameters are accessible only through the Trigger control window:

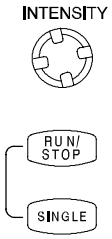
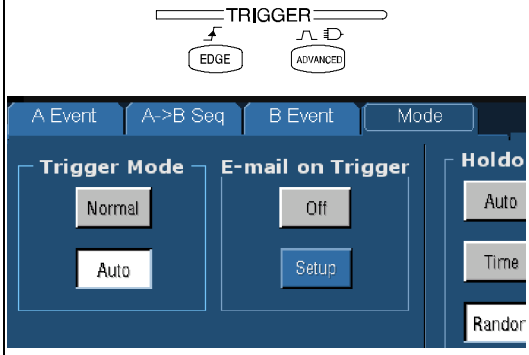
- Holdoff
- Trigger level presets
- Force trigger
- Single sequence
- E-mail on Trigger

Use the procedures that follow to set up these additional trigger parameters. For more information, display online help while performing the procedure.

Overview	Additional trigger parameters	Control elements and resources
To set holdoff	You can change the holdoff time to help stabilize triggering. See *Trigger Modes* and *Trigger Holdoff* beginning on page 3-46 for a description of trigger holdoff. To set holdoff, do the following steps: **1.** Push the ADVANCED button, and select the Mode tab. **2.** Select Auto, Time, or Random: ■ The Auto holdoff varies with the horizontal scale and is equal to 5 divisions times the current time/division setting. Auto maintains a good value for multipurpose triggering. ■ Time lets you enter a holdoff that may allow more stable triggering than the Auto holdoff. This time is used at all horizontal scale settings. ■ Random selects a new random holdoff time for each acquisition cycle. **3.** To change the holdoff time when Time is selected, select Trig Holdoff, and enter a value in time using the multipurpose knob or the keypad. You can set holdoff from 250 ns (minimum holdoff available) to 12 s (maximum available).	 

Overview	Additional trigger parameters (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To select a preset trigger level	**1.** Push the ADVANCED button, select the A Event tab, and touch either of the Trigger Type buttons.	
	2. Select a Trigger Type, such as Edge, that uses a level adjustment.	
	3. Select Level and touch the keyboard icon to display the keyboard. Select either TTL, ECL, or USER: ■ TTL fixes the trigger level at +1.4 V. ■ ECL fixes the trigger level at -1.3 V. ■ USER fixes the trigger level at the USER preset voltage. When you set the volts/div smaller than 200 mV, the instrument reduces the TTL or ECL trigger levels below standard TTL and ECL levels. This reduction occurs because the trigger level range is fixed at ±12 divisions from the center. At 100 mV (the next smaller setting after 200 mV) the trigger range is ±1.2 V, which is smaller than the typical TTL (+1.4 V) or ECL (-1.3 V) level.	

Overview	Additional trigger parameters (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To define new trigger level presets	**1.** If the Menu Bar is not displayed, touch the Menu button to display the Menu Bar. **2.** Touch Utilities, and select User Preferences to display the User Preferences control window.	
	3. Select the Keypad Defaults tab. Select a Trigger Level, and adjust the Trigger Level preset using the multipurpose knob or keypad. **4.** Select a Keypad Label, and change the label of the preset using the keypad.	
To force a trigger	**1.** Push the ADVANCED front-panel button to display the trigger control window. **2.** Select the A Event or B Event tab, and select the Edge trigger type. **3.** To force the instrument to immediately acquire one waveform record even without a trigger event, touch the Force Trigger button. Forcing a trigger is useful when in normal trigger mode and the input signal is not supplying a valid trigger. By touching Force Trigger, you can quickly confirm that there is a signal present for the instrument to acquire. Once that is established, you can determine how to trigger on it (push PUSH TO SET 50%, check trigger source setting, and so on). The instrument recognizes and acts on Force Trigger even when you touch it before the end of pretrigger holdoff. However, the button has no effect if the acquisition system is stopped.	 

Overview	Additional trigger parameters (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To single trigger	**1.** To trigger on the next valid trigger event and then stop, push the SINGLE front-panel button. Push the SINGLE button each time you want to initiate the single sequence of acquisitions. **2.** To leave Single Trigger mode, push the front-panel RUN/STOP button. The exact function of the SINGLE button depends on the acquisition mode. In Sample, Peak Detect, or Hi Res acquisition modes, acquisition stops after a single waveform is acquired. In Average or Envelope acquisition modes, acquisition stops after N waveforms are acquired, where N is the number of averages or envelopes specified. In equivalent time, it takes several triggers to partially fill a record. In Waveform Database mode, acquisition stops after N samples are acquired, where N is the number of samples specified. It may take a number of sequences of acquisitions to fill a waveform to the desired number of samples.	
To E-mail on trigger	**1.** Use the trigger controls to define the event on which you want to trigger. **2.** Push the ADVANCED button, and select the Mode tab. **3.** If you have already set up E-mail on Event, touch the E-mail on Trigger button to send e-mail on a trigger event based on your setup. (You use this button to toggle E-mail on Trigger off.) **4.** If you have not yet set up E-mail on Event, touch Setup under E-mail on Trigger to open the E-mail on Event Control Window.	

Overview	Additional trigger parameters (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To E-mail on trigger	**5.** Check Send E-mail on Trigger Event in the window and set the e-mail parameters as you want them. For assistance, touch Help on the toolbar to display help on the E-mail on Event Control Window. **6.** After configuring the e-mail, return to the Trigger Mode window, and set E-mail on Trigger button On whenever you want to send e-mail on a trigger event based on your E-mail on Event setup. **Note.** E-mail on Trigger will switch to Off automatically when the Message Limit number of messages that you have configured have been sent.	

Advanced Triggering

This subsection describes the advanced trigger types of this instrument, which support triggering on a variety of signals:

- Advance trigger types support pulse capture, with glitch- or runt-pulse triggering, and with triggering based on the width, slew rate, or timeout period of a pulse. You can logic-qualify, by up to two logic inputs, any of these trigger types. Applications include such tasks as unattended monitoring for, and capturing of, a power supply glitch or GO/NO GO slew rate testing of operational amplifiers.
- Advance trigger types support digital-signal capture, with triggering based on a logic or binary pattern, on the state of a logic pattern at the time clocked, and on data that violates setup and hold times relative to a clock. These trigger types cannot be logic qualified.

This instrument provides all of these trigger types for both A and B triggering, allowing you extensive latitude in defining both trigger events in the sequence, in order to capture complex signals. See *Sequential Triggering* on page 3–85 for more information.

***NOTE**. Runt, glitch, width, transition, timeout, and window pulses are recognized when the instrument sees the trailing edge of the pulse. The instrument then triggers or, if the trigger is logic qualified, checks the logic status of the other channels. If the logic qualifying signals are present, a trigger is generated. Due to this timing, there is a chance that the pulse and the logic qualifying signals were present at the same time, but not when the instrument checks for them.*

You can check the advanced trigger status in the readout. The readout indicates the trigger type and then shows sources, levels, or any other parameters that are important for the particular trigger type. Figure 3–20 shows an example readout for the state trigger type.

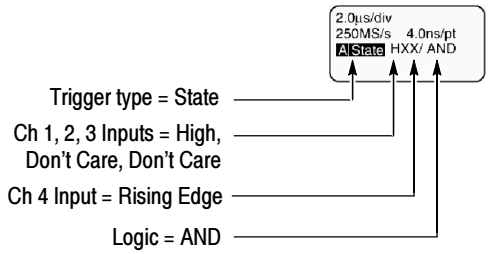


Figure 3- 20: Example advanced trigger readout

Read the following topics; they provide details that can help prevent false steps in setting up to trigger on your waveforms.

Glitch Trigger. A glitch trigger occurs when the trigger source detects a pulse narrower (or wider) than some specified time. It can trigger on glitches of either polarity. Or you can set the glitch trigger to reject glitches of either polarity.

Runt Trigger. A runt trigger occurs when the trigger source detects a short pulse that crosses one threshold but fails to cross a second threshold before recrossing the first. You can set the instrument to detect any positive or negative runt pulse, or only those wider than a specified minimum width.

Width Trigger. A width trigger occurs when the trigger source detects a pulse that is inside or, optionally, outside some specified time range (defined by the upper limit and lower limit). The instrument can trigger on positive or negative width pulses.

Transition Trigger. A transition (slew rate) trigger occurs when the trigger source detects a pulse edge that transitions (slews) between two amplitude levels at a rate faster or slower than you specify. The instrument can trigger on positive or negative transitions. You can also think of transition triggering as triggering based on the slope (change in voltage/change in time) of a pulse edge.

Window Trigger. A window trigger occurs when the trigger source passes into or out of a window defined by two thresholds. The trigger can be time or logic qualified.

Timeout Trigger. A timeout trigger occurs when the trigger source does *not* detect an expected pulse transition. If the pulse transition occurs prior to a specified timeout time (the expected case), then no trigger results.

Pattern Trigger. A pattern trigger occurs when the logic inputs to the logic function that you select cause the function to become TRUE (or at your option FALSE). When you use a pattern trigger, you define:

- The precondition for each logic input — logic high, low, or do not care (the logic inputs are channels 1, 2, 3, and 4)
- The Boolean logic function — select from AND, NAND, OR, and NOR
- The condition for triggering — whether the trigger occurs when the Boolean function becomes TRUE (logic high) or FALSE (logic low), and whether the TRUE condition is time qualified

The pattern (and state) logic choices are summarized in Table 3–2.

Table 3-2: Pattern and state logic

Pattern	State	Definition[1, 2]
AND	**Clocked AND**	If *all* the preconditions selected for the logic inputs[3] are TRUE, then the instrument triggers.
NAND	**Clocked NAND**	If *not all* of the preconditions selected for the logic inputs[3] are TRUE, then the instrument triggers.
OR	**Clocked OR**	If *any* of the preconditions selected for the logic inputs[3] are TRUE, then the instrument triggers.
NOR	**Clocked NOR**	If *none* of the preconditions selected for the logic inputs[3] are TRUE, then the instrument triggers.

1 For state triggers, the definition must be met at the time the clock input changes state.

2 The definitions given here are correct for the Goes TRUE setting in the Trigger When menu. If that menu is set to Goes False, swap the definition for AND with that for NAND and for OR with NOR for both pattern and state types.

3 The logic inputs are channels 1, 2, 3, and 4 when using Pattern triggers. For State triggers, channel 4 becomes the clock input, leaving the remaining channels as logic inputs.

State Trigger. A state trigger occurs when the logic inputs to the logic function cause the function to be TRUE (or at your option FALSE) at the time the clock input changes state. When you use a state trigger, you define:

- The precondition for each logic input, channels 1, 2, and 3
- The direction of the state change for the clock input, channel 4
- The Boolean logic function — select from clocked AND, NAND, OR, and NOR
- The condition for triggering — whether the trigger occurs when the Boolean function becomes TRUE (logic high) or FALSE (logic low)

The state (and pattern) logic choices are summarized in Table 3-2.

Setup/Hold Trigger. A setup/hold trigger occurs when a logic input changes state inside of the setup and hold times relative to the clock. When you use setup/hold triggering, you define:

- The channel containing the logic input (the data source) and the channel containing the clock (the clock source)

- The direction of the clock edge to use
- The clocking level and data level that the instrument uses to determine if a clock or data transition has occurred
- The setup and hold times that together define a time range relative to the clock

Data that changes state within the setup/hold violation zone triggers the instrument. Figure 3–21 shows how the setup and hold times that you choose positions this zone relative to the clock.

Setup/hold triggering uses the setup/hold violation zone to detect when data is unstable too near the time it is clocked. Each time trigger holdoff ends, the instrument monitors the data and clock sources. When a clock edge occurs, the instrument checks the data stream it is processing (from the data source) for transitions occurring within the setup/hold violation zone. If any occur, the instrument triggers with the trigger point located at the clock edge.

Positive settings for both setup and hold times (the most common application) locate the setup/hold violation zone so it spans the clocking edge. (See the top waveform in Figure 3–21.) The instrument detects and triggers on data that does not become stable long enough before the clock (setup time violation) or that does not stay stable long enough after the clock (hold time violation).

Negative settings for setup or hold times skew the setup/hold violation zone to locate it before or after the clocking edge. (See the bottom and center waveforms of Figure 3–21.) The instrument can then detect and trigger on violations of a time range that occurs before or one that occurs after the clock.

***NOTE**. Keep the hold-time setting to no more than 1.5 ns less than one-half the clock period (hold time ≤ (period/2) – 1.5 ns) or the instrument cannot trigger (this assumes a 50% duty cycle clock).*

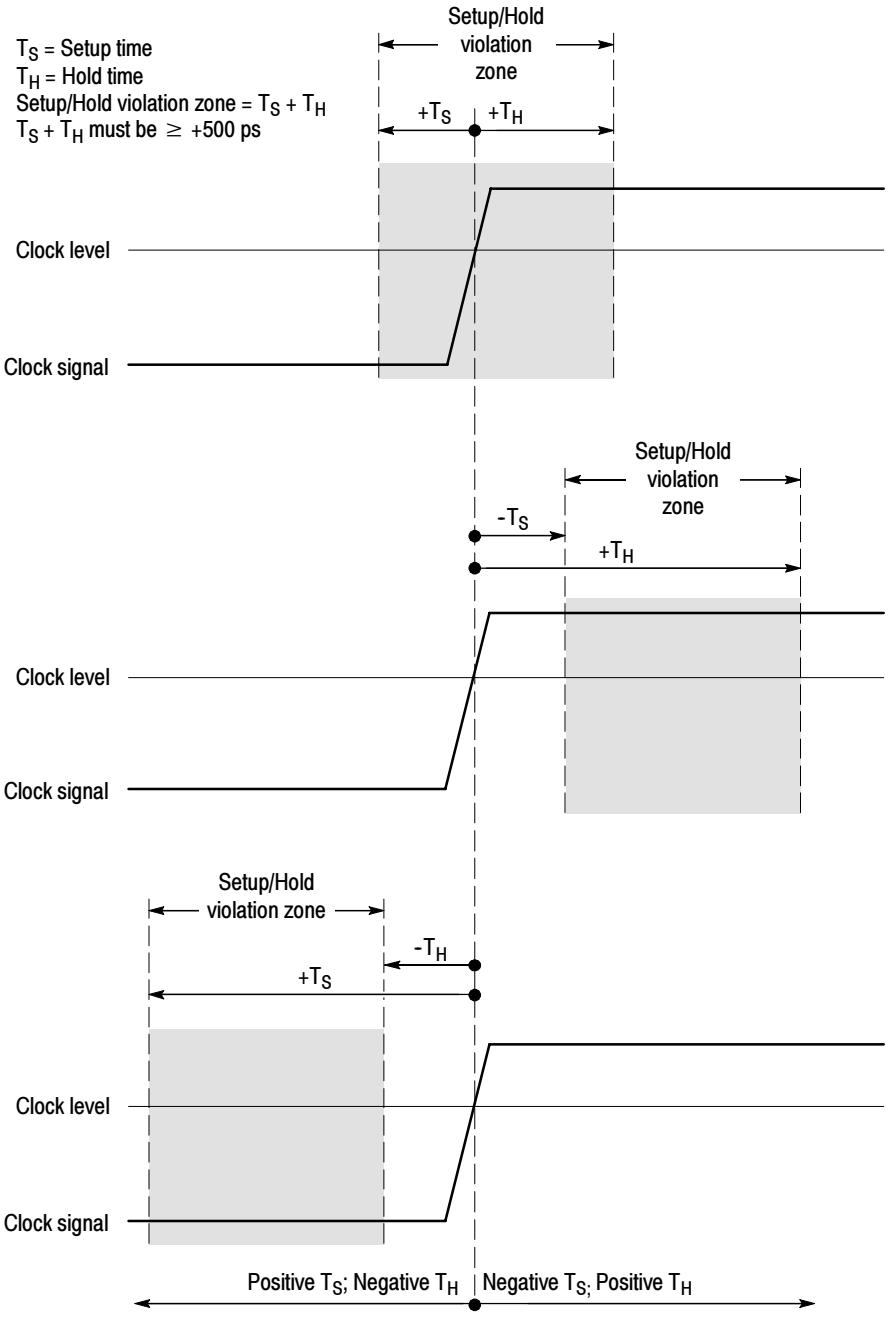
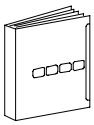
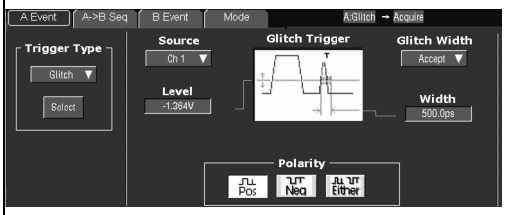
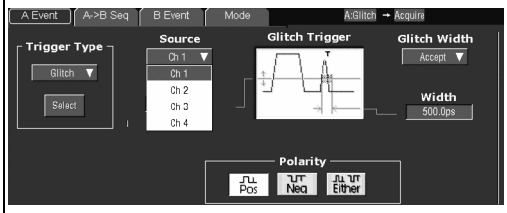
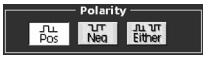
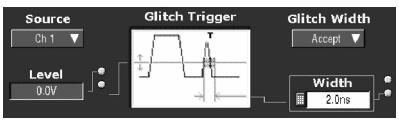
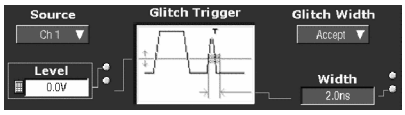
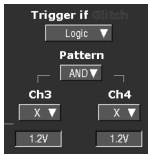
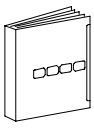


Figure 3- 21: Violation zones for Setup/Hold triggering

To Trigger on a Glitch

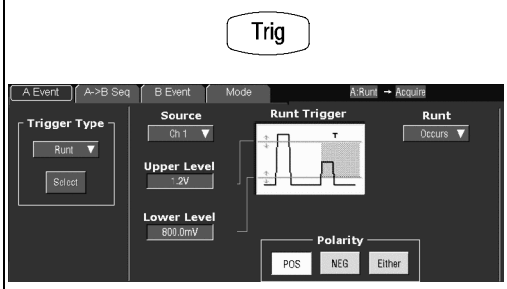
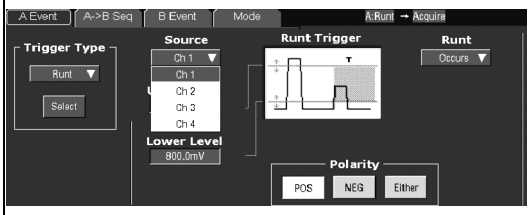
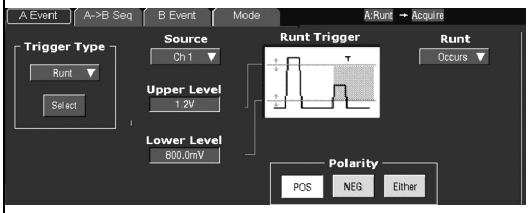
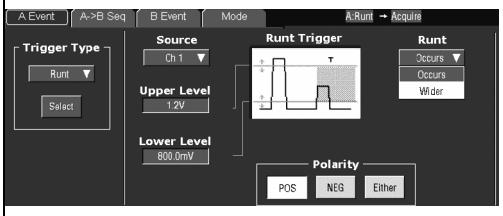
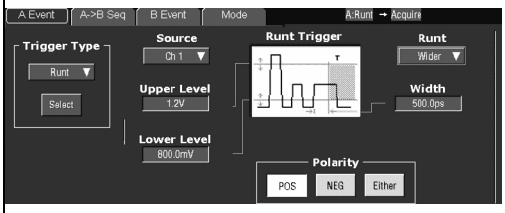
When you select the type Glitch, the instrument will trigger on a pulse narrower (or wider) in width than some specified time. To set up for glitch triggering, do the following procedures.

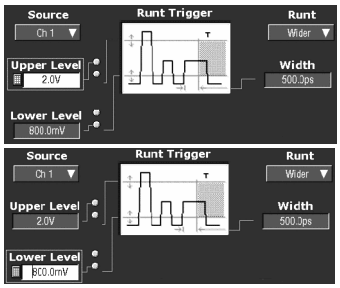
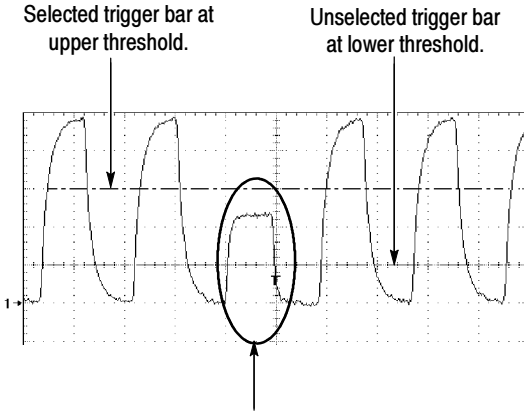
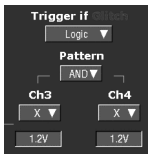
Overview	To trigger on a glitch	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be installed with a signal connected to an input channel. Acquisition system should be set to Run, and the vertical and horizontal controls should be set appropriately for the signal to be acquired.	 See page 3-17 for acquisition setup
Select glitch triggering	**2.** From the toolbar, touch Trig, select the A Event tab of the Trigger control window, and touch Select. **3.** Touch Glitch.	 
Select the source	**4.** To specify which channel becomes the trigger source, touch Source, and select the source from the list.	
Select the polarity and width	**5.** To specify the glitch polarity, touch Pos (positive), Neg (negative) or Either from the Polarity window: ■ Pos looks at positive-going pulses. ■ Neg looks at negative-going pulses. ■ Either looks at both positive and negative pulses. **6.** To specify the width of the glitch, touch Width, and set the glitch width using the multipurpose knob or keypad.	 

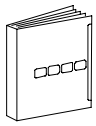
Overview	To trigger on a glitch (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Set to trigger if width	**7.** To specify whether to trigger on glitches narrower or greater than the width you specify, touch Glitch Width and select from the list: ■ Trig if Width Less Than will trigger only on pulses narrower than the width you specified. ■ Trig if Width Greater Than will trigger only on pulses wider than the specified width.	
Set the level	**8.** To set the Level that the glitch must cross to be recognized by the instrument, touch Glitch Trigger Level, and use the multipurpose knobs, keypad, or front-panel LEVEL knob to set the glitch trigger level. ***Note.*** *You can set the level to a value appropriate to either TTL or ECL logic families. To do so, touch Level, and select the keypad; touch either TTL or ECL.*	
Logic qualify the trigger	**9.** To logic qualify the trigger, see *Logic Qualify a Trigger* on page 3-84.	
To set mode and holdoff	**10.** Mode and holdoff can be set for all standard trigger types. To learn more about trigger mode and holdoff, see *Trigger Modes* on page 3-46 and *Trigger Holdoff* on page 3-46.	 See *To set holdoff* on page 3-55 and *To select the trigger mode* on page 3-52 for mode and holdoff setup. To learn more about trigger mode and holdoff, see *Trigger Modes* on page 3-46 and *Trigger Holdoff* on page 3-46.

To Trigger on a Runt Pulse

When you select the type Runt, the instrument will trigger on a short pulse that crosses one threshold but fails to cross a second threshold before recrossing the first. To set up for runt triggering, do the following procedures.

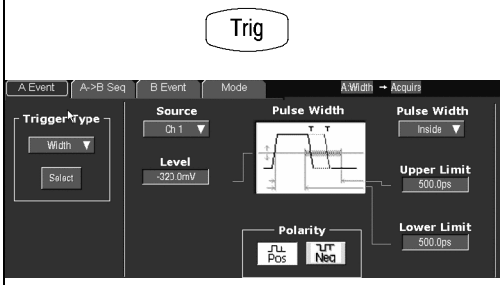
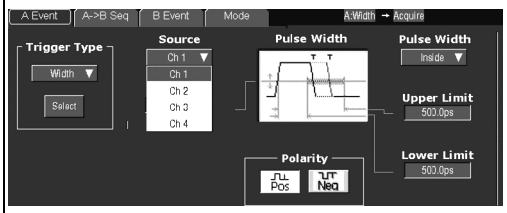
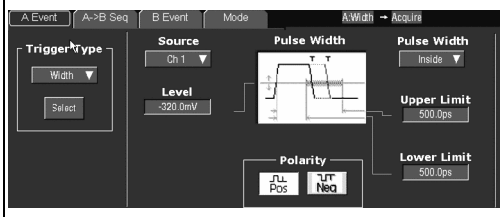
Overview	To trigger on a runt pulse	Control elements and resources
Select runt triggering	**1.** From the toolbar, touch Trig, select the A Event tab of the Trigger control window, and touch Select. **2.** Touch Runt.	
Select the source	**3.** To specify which channel becomes the pulse trigger source, touch Source, and select the source from the list.	
Select the polarity	**4.** To specify the direction of the runt pulse, touch Polarity, and select Pos (positive), Neg (negative) or Either from the window. ■ Pos looks at positive-going pulses. ■ Neg looks at negative-going pulses. ■ Either looks at both positive and negative pulses.	
Set to trigger when	To determine how wide a runt pulse the instrument will trigger on: **5.** Touch Runt and select from the list: ■ Occurs triggers on all runt pulses regardless of width. ■ Wider triggers only on runt pulses that exceed the width you set. Enter the width using the multipurpose knob or keypad. **6.** To specify the minimum width of the runt pulse, touch Width, and set the value using the multipurpose knob or keypad.	 

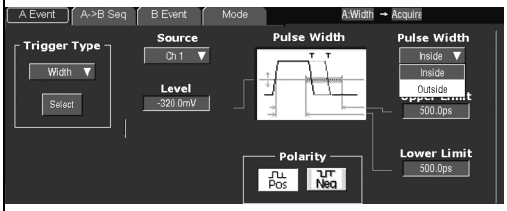
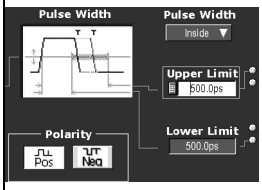
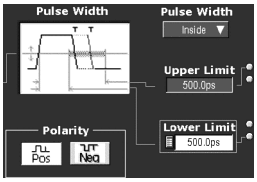
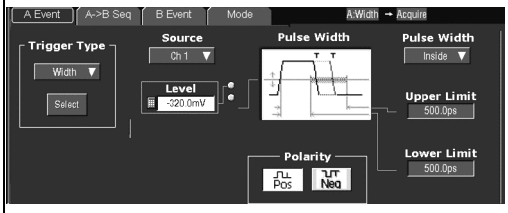
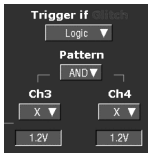
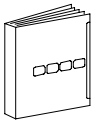
Overview	To trigger on a runt pulse (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Set the thresholds	**7.** To set the two threshold levels used in detecting a runt pulse, touch Upper Limit or Lower Limit, and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to set the values for the upper and lower thresholds. ***Note.*** *To use the trigger bar to set the threshold levels, touch the Disp button, select the Objects tab, and then touch Long to display the long trigger bar.* *Note the position of the trigger indicator. Triggering occurs at the point the pulse returns over the first (lower) threshold going negative without crossing the second threshold level (upper). The polarity selected in the Polarity window determines the order that the threshold must be crossed for a runt trigger to occur:* ■ Positive requires that the lower threshold must be first crossed going positive, then recrossed going negative without the upper threshold being crossed at all. ■ Negative requires that the upper threshold must be first crossed going negative, then recrossed going positive without the lower threshold being crossed at all. ■ Either requires only that either one of the thresholds must be first crossed going in either direction, then recrossed going in the opposite direction without the other threshold being crossed at all. For all three polarity settings, triggering occurs at the point the runt pulse recrosses its first threshold.	 
Logic qualify the trigger	**8.** To logic qualify the trigger, see *Logic Qualify a Trigger* on page 3-84.	

Overview	To trigger on a runt pulse (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To set mode and holdoff	**9.** Mode and holdoff can be set for all standard trigger types.	 See *To set holdoff* on page 3-55 and *To select the the trigger mode* on page 3-52 for mode and holdoff setup. To learn more about trigger mode and holdoff, see *Trigger Modes* on page 3-46 and *Trigger Holdoff* on page 3-46.

Trigger Based on Pulse Width

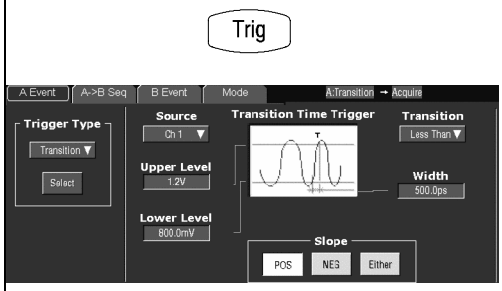
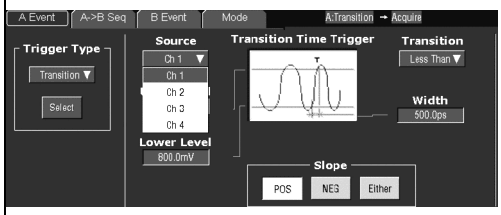
When you select the type Width, the instrument will trigger on a pulse narrower (or wider) than some specified range of time (defined by the upper limit and lower limit). To set up for width triggering, do the following procedures.

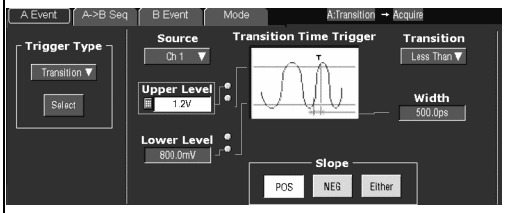
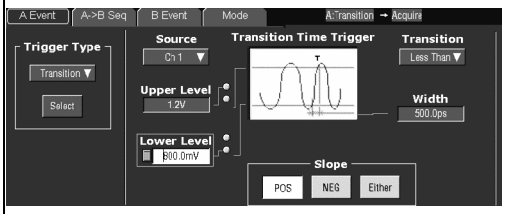
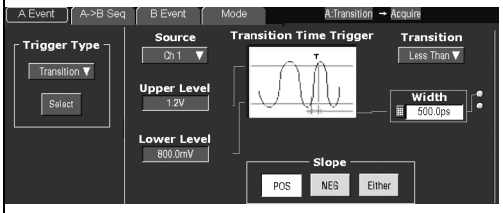
Overview	Trigger based on pulse width	Control elements and resources
Select width triggering	**1.** From the toolbar, touch Trig, select the A Event tab of the Trigger control window, and touch Select. **2.** Touch Width.	
Select the source	**3.** To specify which channel becomes the trigger source, touch Source, and select the source from the list.	
Select the polarity	**4.** To specify the polarity of the pulse, touch Pos (positive) or Neg (negative) from the window: ■ Pos looks at positive-going pulses. ■ Neg looks at negative-going pulses.	

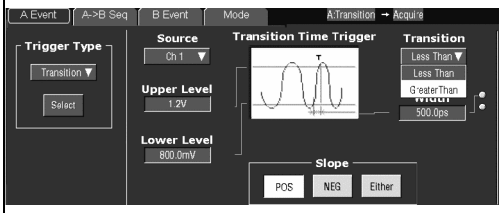
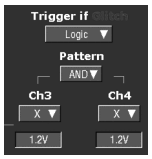
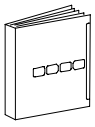
Overview	Trigger based on pulse width (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Set to trigger when	To set the range of widths (in units of time) the trigger source will search for and to specify whether to trigger on pulses that are outside this range or within this range, do the following steps: **5.** Touch Pulse Width, and select from the list: ■ Inside triggers on pulses that fall within the specified range. ■ Outside triggers on pulses that are outside the range. **6.** To set the range of pulse widths in units of time, touch Upper or Lower Limit, and enter the values with the multipurpose knob or keypad: ■ Upper Limit is the maximum valid pulse width the trigger source will look for. ■ Lower Limit is the minimum valid pulse width. The instrument will always force the Lower Limit to be less than or equal to the Upper Limit.	  
Set the level	**7.** Touch Level, and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to set the trigger level.	
Logic qualify the trigger	**8.** To logic qualify the trigger, see *Logic Qualify a Trigger* on page 3-84.	
To set mode and holdoff	**9.** Mode and holdoff can be set for all standard trigger types.	 See *To set holdoff* on page 3-55 and *To select the trigger mode* on page 3-52 for mode and holdoff setup. To learn more about trigger mode and holdoff, see *Trigger Modes* on page 3-46 and *Trigger Holdoff* on page 3-46.

To Trigger Based on Transition Time

When you select the type Transition Time (slew rate), the instrument will trigger on a pulse edge that traverses between an upper and lower threshold faster or slower than a transition time you specify. To set up for transition time triggering, do the following procedures.

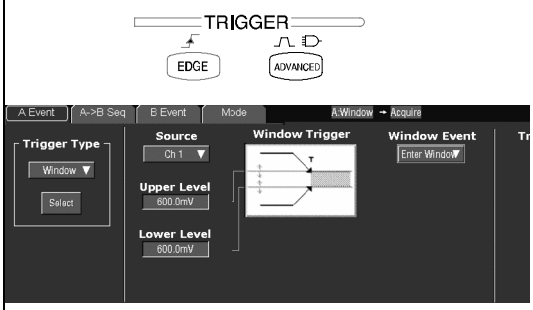
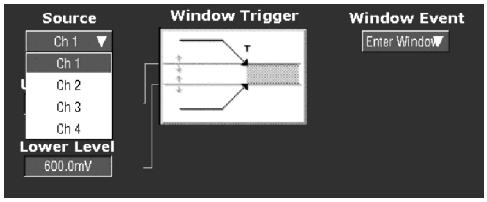
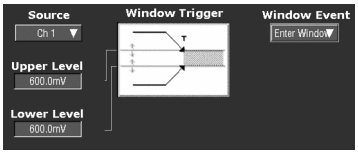
Overview	To trigger based on transition time	Control elements and resources
Select transition triggering	**1.** From the toolbar, touch Trig, and select the A Event tab of the Trigger control window. **2.** Touch Transition.	
Select the source	**3.** To specify which channel becomes the trigger source, touch Source, and select the source from the list.	
Select slope	**4.** To specify the direction of the pulse edge, touch Slope and select Pos (positive), Neg (negative) or Either from the window: ■ Pos monitors the transition time (slew rate) of the positive-going edges of pulses. The edge must first cross the lower threshold and then cross the upper threshold. ■ Neg monitors the transition time (slew rate) of the negative-going edges of pulses. The edge must first cross the upper threshold and then cross the lower threshold. ■ Either monitors positive- and negative-going edges of pulses. The edge may first cross either threshold and then cross the other.	

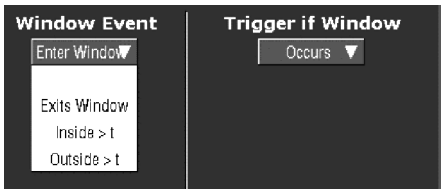
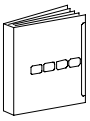
Overview	To trigger based on transition time (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Set the transition time	The threshold levels and the delta time setting determine the transition time (slew rate) setting. To set these parameters: **5.** Touch the Upper Level or Lower Level button and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to set the values for the upper and lower levels. ***Note**. You can set the level to a value appropriate to either TTL or ECL logic families. To do so touch Level and select the keypad; touch either TTL or ECL.* *To use the Trigger Bar to set the threshold levels, touch the Disp button, select the Objects tab, and then touch Long to display the long trigger bar.* The level settings determine the voltage component of slew rate (Volts/Second). To finish specifying the slew rate (transition time), set the time component by doing the following steps: **6.** Touch Width and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to set the delta time value.	  

Overview	To trigger based on transition time (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Set to trigger when	The instrument compares the pulse edge of the trigger source against the transition time (slew rate) set by the upper and lower threshold settings and the delta time set in the window. To select whether to trigger on edges with transitions times (slew rates) faster than or slower than that set by these controls, do the following step: **7.** Touch Transition Less Than or Transition Greater Than: ■ Less Than triggers when the transition time is less than the time you set. ■ Greater Than triggers when the transition time is greater than the time you set If you select Transition Greater Than and the instrument does not trigger, it may be because the pulse edge is too fast rather than too slow. To check the edge speed, switch to edge triggering. Then trigger on the pulse edge and determine the time the edge takes to travel between the levels set in the slew rate Thresholds menu. The instrument cannot transition trigger on pulse edges that traverse between threshold levels in 600 ps or less. Also, to reliably transition trigger, a pulse must have a width of 8.5 ns or more. A pulse of less width may trigger on the wrong slope or not trigger at all. Switch to edge triggering and check the pulse width if you can't transition trigger as expected.	
Logic qualify the trigger	**8.** To logic qualify the trigger, see *Logic Qualify a Trigger* on page 3-84.	
To set mode and holdoff	**9.** Mode and holdoff can be set for all standard trigger types.	 See *To set holdoff* on page 3-55 and *To select trigger mode* on page 3-52 for mode and holdoff setup. To learn more about trigger mode and holdoff, see *Trigger Modes* on page 3-46 and *Trigger Holdoff* on page 3-46.

Triggering on a Window

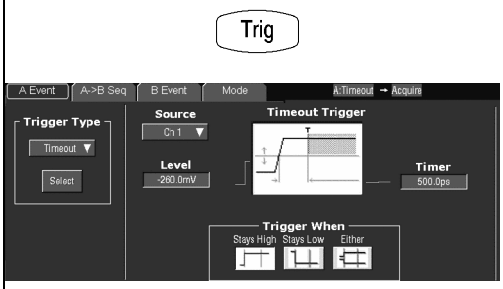
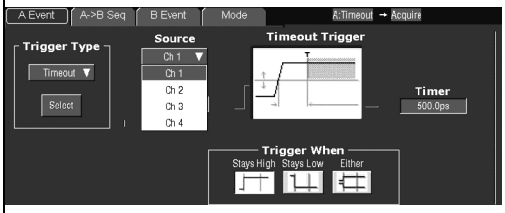
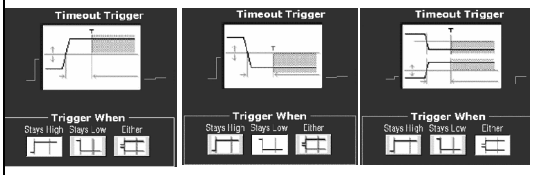
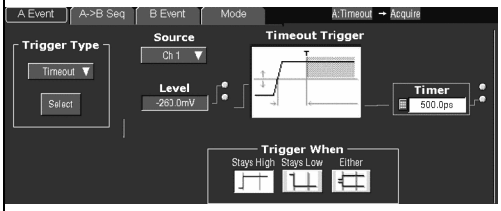
Use this procedure to trigger the instrument when the input signal enters or leaves a window set by an upper or lower threshold level.

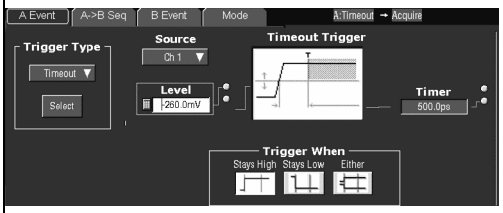
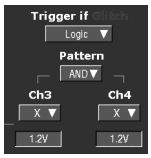
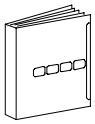
Overview	To trigger on a window threshold violation	Control elements and resources
Select window triggering	**1.** Push the front-panel ADVANCED button. **2.** On the Trigger Setup control window, select the A Event tab, and touch Select. **3.** Touch Window.	
Select the source	**4.** To specify which channel becomes the trigger source, touch Source and select the source from the list.	
Set the thresholds	**5.** The upper and lower threshold levels define the voltage limits of the window. To set the threshold levels, touch Upper Level or Lower Level, and use the multipurpose knobs or pop-up keypad to set the values.	

Overview	To trigger on a window threshold violation	Control elements and resources
Qualify window trigger	**6.** To qualify the window trigger, select from these Trigger drop-down list combinations. Note that the Trigger controls change as you select different combinations of options. ■ Enter Window and Occurs or Exits Window and Occurs: Trigger the instrument when the signal enters (or leaves) the window defined by the threshold levels. ■ Inside limits and greater than or Outside limits and greater than: Trigger the instrument when the signal enters (or leaves) the window defined by the threshold levels for the time specified by Time. ■ Window Event and Trigger if Window Logic: When the instrument detects a signal entering or leaving the window defined by the threshold levels, it checks the logic state of up to two other available channels and triggers only if their conditions are met. For more information on qualifying triggers, see *Logic Qualify a Trigger* on page 3-84.	
Set mode and holdoff	**7.** Mode and holdoff can be set for all standard trigger types. Refer to *To select the trigger mode* on page 3-52 and *To set holdoff* on page 3-55. To learn more about trigger mode and holdoff, see *Trigger Modes* on page 3-46 and *Trigger Holdoff* on page 3-46.	 For mode and holdoff setup, see *To select the trigger mode* on page 3-52 and *To set holdoff* on page 3-55.

Trigger Based on Pulse Timeout

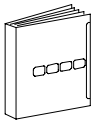
When you select the type Timeout, the instrument will trigger if a pulse transition does not occur within a specified time limit. That is, the trigger will occur when, depending on the polarity that you select, the signal stays higher or stays lower than the trigger level for the timeout value. To set up for timeout triggering, do the following procedures.

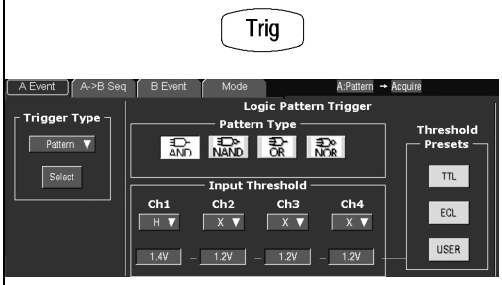
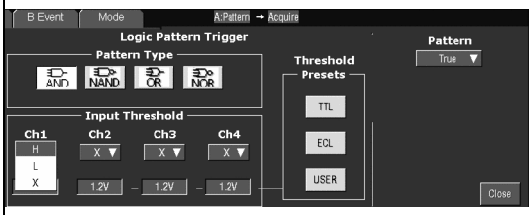
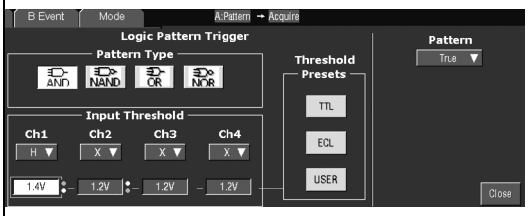
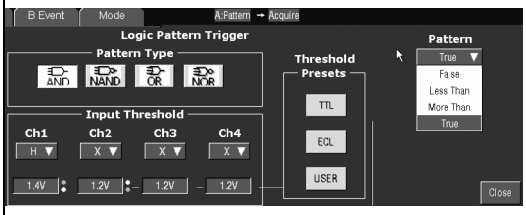
Overview	Trigger based on pulse timeout	Control elements and resources
Select timeout triggering	**1.** From the toolbar, touch Trig, select the A Event tab of the Trigger control window, and touch Select. **2.** Touch Timeout.	
Select the source	**3.** To specify which channel becomes the trigger source, touch Source, and select the source from the list.	
Set to trigger when	**4.** Touch Stays High, Stays Low, or Either from the Trigger When window: ■ Stays High causes a trigger if the signal stays higher than the trigger level for longer than the timeout value. ■ Stays Low causes a trigger if the signal stays lower than the trigger level for longer than the timeout value. ■ Either causes a trigger if the signal stays lower or stays higher than the trigger level for longer than the timeout value.	
Set the timer	**5.** To set the timeout timer, touch Timer and use the multipurpose knob or keyboard to set the time.	

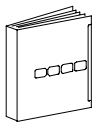
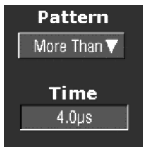
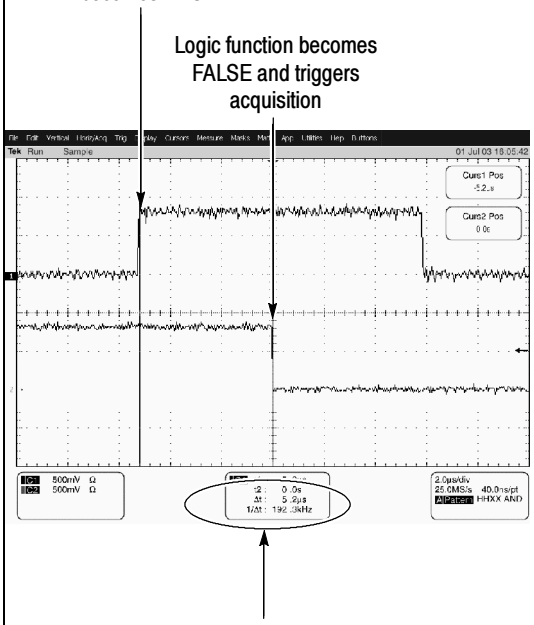
Overview	Trigger based on pulse timeout (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Set the level	**6.** To set the Level, touch Level and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the timeout trigger level. ***Note**. You can set the level to a value appropriate to either TTL or ECL logic families. To do so, touch Level, and select the keypad; touch either TTL or ECL.*	
Logic qualify the trigger	**7.** To logic qualify the trigger, see *Logic Qualify a Trigger* on page 3-84.	
To set mode and holdoff	**8.** Mode and holdoff can be set for all standard trigger types.	 See *To set holdoff* on page 3-55 and *To select the trigger mode* on page 3-52 for mode and holdoff setup. To learn more about trigger mode and holdoff, see *Trigger Modes* on page 3-46 and *Trigger Holdoff* on page 3-46.

Trigger on a Pattern

When you select the type Pattern, the instrument will trigger when the inputs to the logic function that you select cause the function to become TRUE (or at your option FALSE). To setup pattern trigger, do the following procedures.

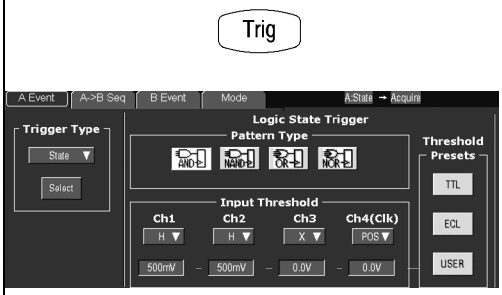
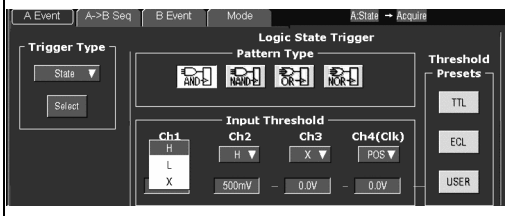
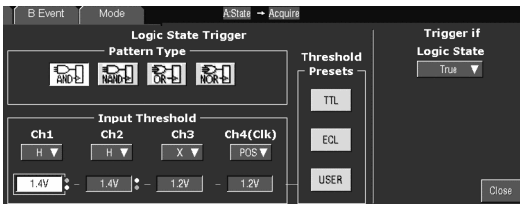
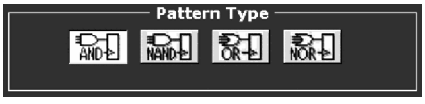
Overview	Trigger on a pattern	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be installed and operating. The acquisition system should be set to Run, and the vertical and horizontal controls should be set appropriately for the signal to be acquired.	 See page 3-17 for acquisition setup

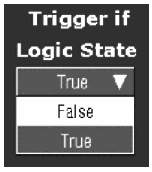
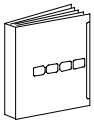
Overview	Trigger on a pattern (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To Trigger on a pattern	**2.** From the toolbar, touch Trig, select the A Event tab of the Trigger control window, and touch Select. **3.** Touch Pattern.	
To define pattern inputs	**4.** To set the logic state for each of the input channels (Ch1, Ch2, . . .), touch each Input Threshold, and select either High (H), Low (L), or don't care (X) from the menu.	
To set thresholds	**5.** To set the logic threshold for each channel, select the channel threshold, and use the multipurpose knobs, keypad, or threshold presets to set each threshold.	
To define the logic	**6.** To choose the logic pattern type, you want applied to the input channels, touch an available type from the Pattern Type window. (See Table 3-2 on page 3-62 for definitions of the logic functions for both pattern and state triggers.)	
To set trigger when	**7.** To choose to trigger when the logic condition is met (goes TRUE) or when the logic condition is not met (goes FALSE), touch Trigger When Pattern, and select False, Less Than, More Than, or True from the list. The list items More Than and Less Than are used to time qualify a pattern trigger. See the procedure *To define a time qualified pattern trigger* that follows for instructions.	

Overview	Trigger on a pattern (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To set mode and holdoff	**8.** Mode and holdoff can be set for all standard trigger types.	 See *To set holdoff* on page 3-55 and *To select the trigger mode* on page 3-52 for mode and holdoff setup. To learn more about trigger mode and holdoff, see *Trigger Modes* on page 3-46 and *Trigger Holdoff* on page 3-46.
To define a time qualified pattern trigger	You can time qualify a pattern logic trigger. That is, you specify a time that the boolean logic function (AND, NAND, OR, or NOR) must be TRUE. To specify the time limit as well as the type of time qualification (More Than or Less Than the time limit specified) for a pattern trigger, do the following step: **9.** Select Pattern More Than, and set the time using the multipurpose knob or keypad. When you select TRUE for Less Than and specify a time, the input conditions that you specify must drive the logic function high (TRUE) for less than the time you specify. Conversely, the TRUE for More Than item requires the boolean function to be TRUE for longer than the time that you specify. Note the position of the trigger indicator. Triggering occurs at the point that the instrument determines that the logic function that you specify is TRUE within the time that you specify. The instrument determines the trigger point in the following manner: ■ It waits for the logic condition to become TRUE. ■ It starts timing and waits for the logic function to become FALSE. ■ It compares the times and, if the time TRUE is longer (for TRUE for more than) or shorter (for TRUE for less than), then it triggers a waveform display at the point the logic condition became FALSE. This time can be, and usually is, different from the time set. In the figure, the delay between the vertical bar cursors is the time the logic function is TRUE. Since this time is more (5.2 μs) than that set in the TRUE for More Than item (2 μs), the instrument issues the trigger at that point, not at the point at which it has been TRUE for 2 μs.	  Time Logic Function Must be TRUE = 4.0 μs

To Trigger on a State

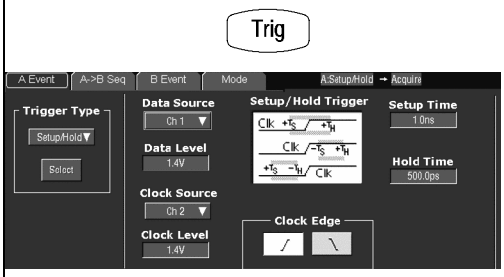
When you select the type State, the instrument uses channel 4 as a clock and triggers on a logic circuit made from the rest of the channels (page 3–62 describes how state triggers work). To use state triggering, do the following procedures.

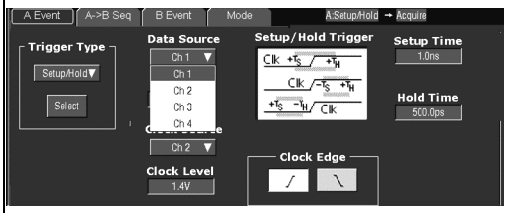
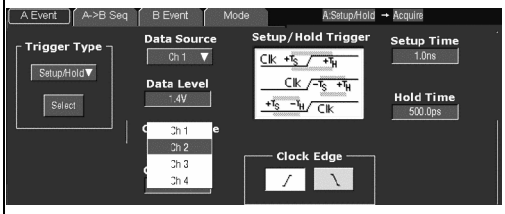
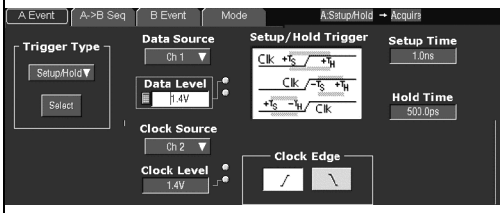
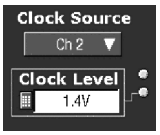
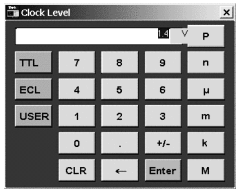
Overview	To trigger on a state	Control elements and resources
Select state triggering	**1.** From the toolbar, touch Trig, select the A Event tab of the Trigger control window, and touch Select. **2.** Touch State.	
Define inputs	**3.** To set the logic state for each of the input channels (Ch1, Ch2, Ch3, and Ch4), touch each Input Threshold and select either High (H), Low (L), or don't care (X) from the menu. The choices for Ch4 are rising (POS) edge and falling (NEG) edge.	
Set thresholds	**4.** To set the logic threshold for each channel, select the channel threshold, and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to set each threshold.	
Define logic	**5.** To choose the logic pattern type you want applied to channels 1 through 3, touch an available type from the Pattern Type window. (See Table 3-2 on page 3-62 for definitions of the logic functions for both pattern and state triggers.)	

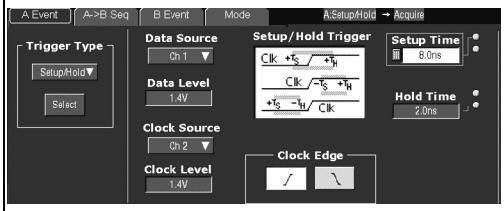
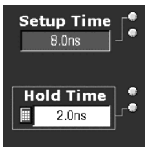
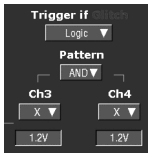
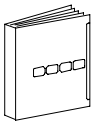
Overview	To trigger on a state (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Set trigger when	**6.** To choose to trigger when the logic condition is met (goes TRUE) or when the logic condition is not met (goes FALSE), touch Trigger When Pattern and select False or True from the list. For the simplest operation, leave this control set to TRUE. Setting the control to FALSE complements the output of the chosen pattern function, for example, from AND to NAND or NOR to OR.	
To set mode and holdoff	**7.** Mode and holdoff can be set for all standard trigger types.	 See *To set holdoff* on page 3-55 and *To select the trigger mode* on page 3-52 for mode and holdoff setup. To learn more about trigger mode and holdoff, see the descriptions *Trigger Modes* on page 3-46 and *Trigger Holdoff* on page 3-46.

To Trigger on Setup/ Hold Time Violations

When you select the type Setup/Hold, the instrument uses one channel as a data channel (the factory default setting is Ch1), another channel as a clock channel (default is Ch2), and triggers if the data transitions within the setup or hold time of the clock. (*Setup/Hold Trigger* on page 3-62 describes how setup/hold triggers work.) To use setup and hold triggering, do the following procedures.

Overview	To trigger on setup/hold time violations	Control elements and resources
Select setup/ hold triggering	**1.** From the toolbar, touch Trig, select the A Event tab of the Trigger control window, and touch Select. **2.** Touch Setup/Hold.	

Overview	To trigger on setup/hold time violations (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Define the data source	**3.** To select the channel that is to contain the data signal, touch Data Source, and select the source from the list. ***Note**. Do not select the same channel for both the data and clock sources.*	
Define the clock source and edge	**4.** To select the channel that is to contain the clock signal and the edge to use to clock, touch Clock Source, and select the source from the list. Do not select the same channel for both the data and clock sources. **5.** To select the edge to use to clock, select either Pos or Neg from the Clock Edge window.	
Set the data and clock levels	To set the transition levels that the clock and data must cross to be recognized by the instrument: **6.** Touch Data Level and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the data level. **7.** Touch Clock Level and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the clock level. ***Note**. You can set the levels to a value appropriate to either TTL or ECL logic families. To do so, touch either the Data Level or Clock Level, and select the keypad; touch either TTL or ECL.* The instrument uses the clock level that you set to determine when a clock edge occurs. The instrument uses the point the clock crosses the clock level as the reference point from which it measures setup and hold time settings.	  

Overview	To trigger on setup/hold time violations (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Set the setup and hold times	To set the setup time and the hold time relative to the clock: **8.** Touch Setup Time and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the setup time. **9.** Touch Hold Time, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the hold time. See Figure 3-22 on page 3-84. Positive setup time always leads the clock edge; positive hold time always follows the clocking edge. Setup time always leads the hold time by at least 2 ns ($T_S + T_H \geq 2$ ns). ***Note**. Attempting to set either time to reduce the 2 ns limit adjusts the other time to maintain the limit.* In most cases, you will enter positive values for both setup and hold time. Positive values set the instrument to trigger if the data source is still settling inside the setup time before the clock or if it switches inside the hold time after the clock. You can skew this "setup/hold violation zone" that the setup and hold times form by entering negative values. See Figure 3-21 on page 3-64.	 
Logic qualify the trigger	**10.** To logic qualify the trigger, see *Logic Qualify a Trigger* on page 3-84.	
To set mode and holdoff	**11.** Mode and holdoff can be set for all standard trigger types.	 See *To set holdoff* on page 3-55 and *To select the trigger mode* on page 3-52 for mode and holdoff setup. To learn more about trigger mode and holdoff, see *Trigger Modes* on page 3-46 and *Trigger Holdoff* on page 3-46.

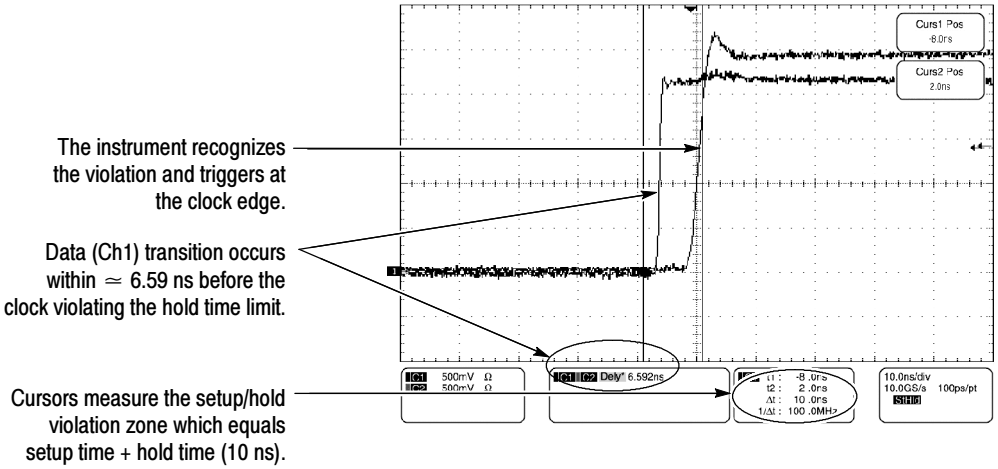
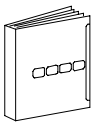
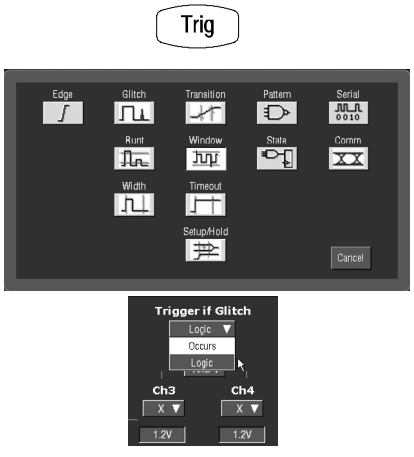
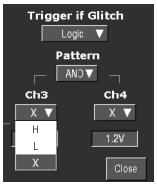
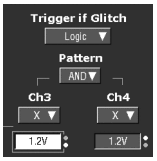
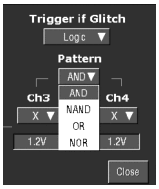
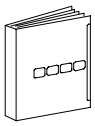


Figure 3-22: Triggering on a Setup/Hold time violation

Logic Qualify a Trigger

When you logic qualify a trigger type, the instrument will trigger when the inputs to the logic function that you select cause the function to become TRUE (or at your option FALSE). To logic qualify a trigger, do the following procedures.

Overview	Trigger on a pattern	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be installed and operating. The acquisition system should be set to Run, and the vertical and horizontal controls should be set appropriately for the signal to be acquired.	 See page 3-17 for acquisition setup
To Trigger on a pattern	**2.** From the toolbar, touch Trig, select the A Event tab of the Trigger control window, and touch Select. **3.** Touch Glitch, Width, Runt, Timeout, Setup and Hold, Transition, or the Window trigger type. **4.** From the Trigger if drop-down menu, select Logic.	

Overview	Trigger on a pattern (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To define pattern inputs	**5.** To set the logic state for each of the input channels (Ch1, Ch2, . . .), touch each Input Threshold, and select either High (H), Low (L), or don't care (X) from the menu. The instrument checks the logic state of up to two other available channels and triggers only if their conditions are met. Each channel can have a value of high (H), low (L), or "don't care" (X). A value is considered high if the channel input voltage is greater than the specified threshold voltage; a value is considered low if the channel input voltage is less than the specified threshold voltage. Use the "don't care" selection for any channels that will not be used as part of the pattern.	
To set thresholds	**6.** To set the logic threshold for each channel, select the channel threshold, and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to set each threshold.	
To define the logic	**7.** To choose the logic pattern type, you want applied to the input channels, touch an available type from the Pattern type window. (See Table 3-2 on page 3-62 for definitions of the logic functions.)	
For further assistance	**8.** Touch the Help button while in the Trigger setup window to access a context-sensitive overview of the Logic controls and their set up.	

Sequential Triggering

In applications that involve two or more signals, you may be able to use sequential triggering to capture more complex events. Sequential triggering uses the A (Main) trigger to arm the trigger system, and then uses the B (Delayed) trigger to trigger the instrument if a specific condition is met. You can choose one of two trigger conditions:

- Trig After Time: After the A trigger arms the trigger system, the instrument triggers on the next B-trigger event that occurs after the Trigger Delay Time. You can set the trigger delay time with the keypad or the multipurpose knobs.
- Trigger on n^{th} Event: After the A trigger arms the trigger system, the instrument triggers on the n^{th} B event. You can set the number of B events with the keypad or the multipurpose knobs.

***NOTE**. The traditional delayed trigger mode called "Runs After" is served by Horizontal Delay. You can use horizontal delay to delay acquisition from any trigger event, whether from the A (Main) trigger alone or from a sequential trigger that uses both the A (Main) and B (Delayed) triggers. See* Triggering with Horizontal Delay On *on page 3–88 for more information.*

Using Sequential Triggering

Read the following topics; they provide details that can help prevent false steps in setting up to trigger on your waveforms.

Trigger Sources. In most cases, it makes sense to set separate trigger sources for the A (Main) and B (Delayed) triggers.

Trigger Types. When using sequential triggering, both the A trigger and B trigger events can be set independently to be any one the following types: Edge, Glitch, Width, Timeout, Runt, Transition, Window, Setup/Hold, Pattern, or State. Except for Pattern and State, all of these types can be logic qualified for the A or B trigger event, or for both.

If Comm and/or Serial options are installed, A triggers can also be set to Comm and/or Serial types. Comm and Serial trigger cannot be logic qualified, nor are they available with B triggers.

Triggering with Horizontal Delay Off. Figure 3–23 compares the sequential trigger choices A-Only, Trig After Time, and Trig on n^{th} Event when horizontal delay is off. Each illustration shows where pretrigger and posttrigger data is acquired relative to the trigger event.

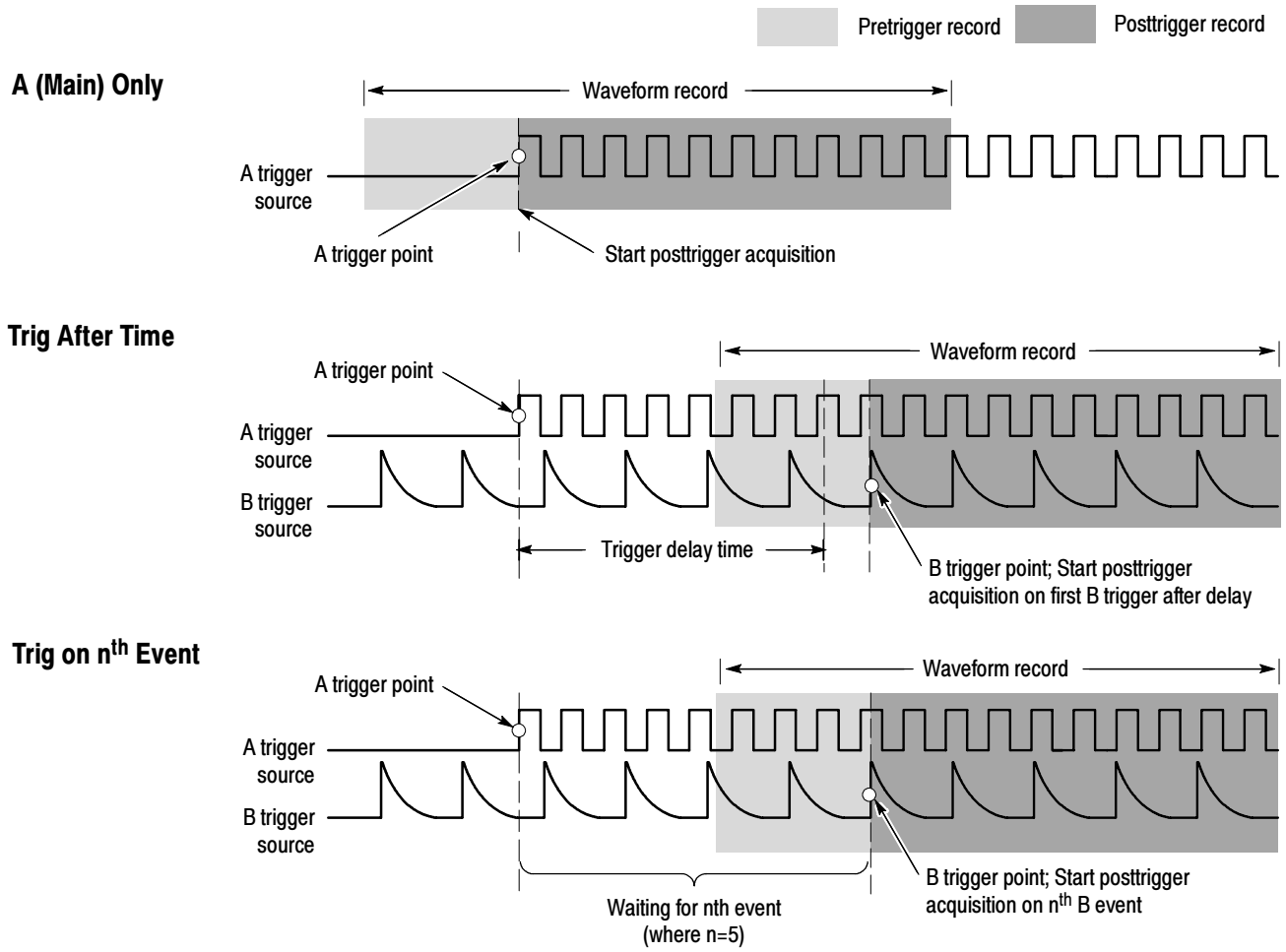


Figure 3- 23: Triggering with Horizontal Delay off

Triggering with Horizontal Delay On. You can use horizontal delay when you want to acquire a waveform record that is separated from the trigger event by a significant interval of time. The horizontal delay function can be used with any trigger setup. You can turn horizontal delay on and off from the front panel, the Horizontal/Acquisition control window, and many of the Trigger control windows. Figure 3–24 compares the sequential trigger choices A-Only, Trig After Time, and Trig on nth Event when horizontal delay is on. Each illustration shows where pretrigger and posttrigger data is acquired relative to the trigger event.

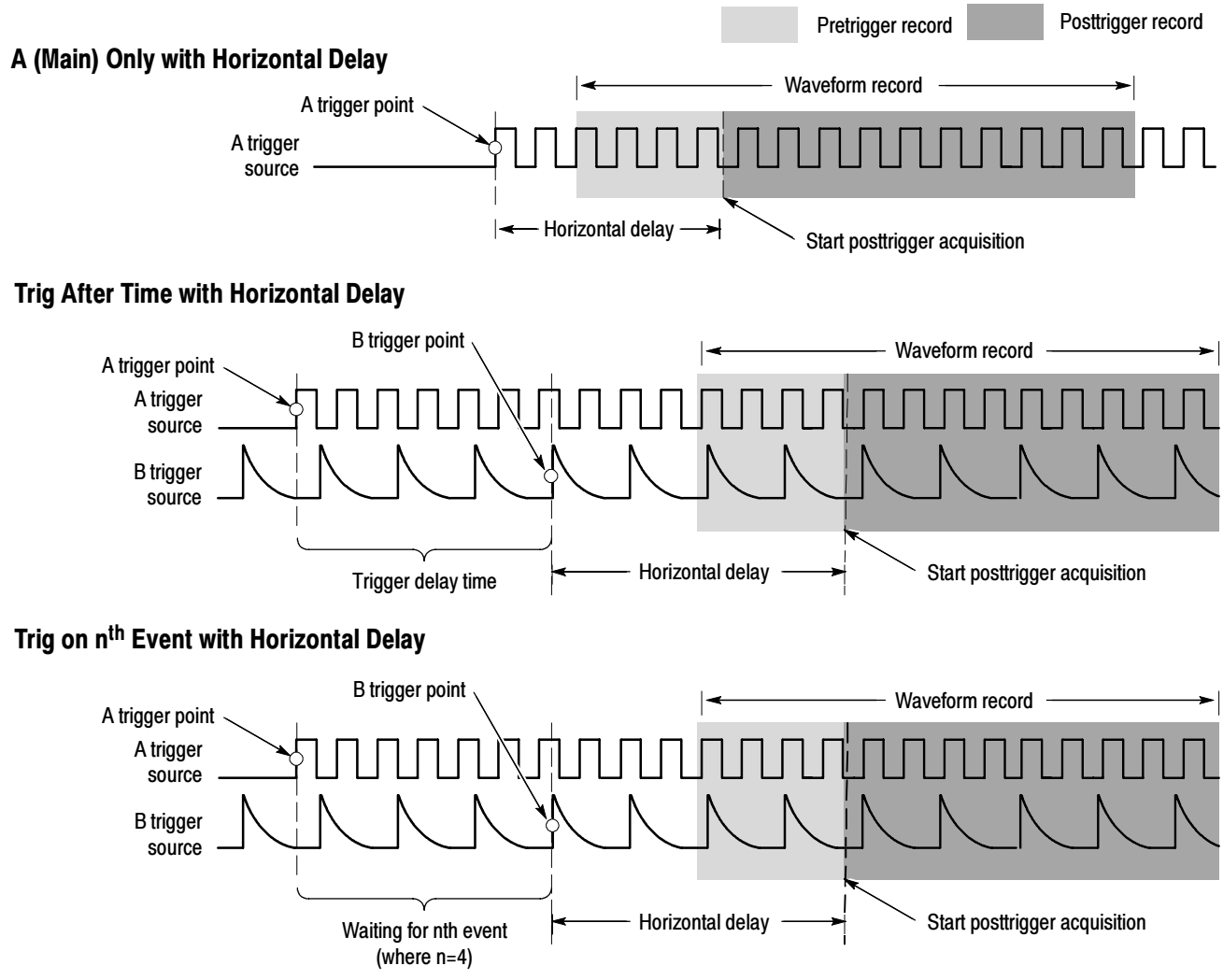


Figure 3-24: Triggering with Horizontal Delay on

Triggering with Reset. You can specify a condition that, if it occurs before the B trigger event, resets the trigger system. When the reset event occurs, the trigger system stops waiting for the B event, and returns to waiting for an A event. You can specify a reset when the B trigger event does not occur:

- before a timeout that you specify, ...
- before a input signal that you specify enters a state that you specify, or ...
- before a input signal that you specify transitions in a direction that you specify.

***NOTE**. A minimum of 100 ns must exist between B Event that triggers the oscilloscope and any B-Event occurring after Reset becomes TRUE. Since any number of intervening B-Events may occur, the 100 ns limit is usually not a problem, except when the B-Event that triggers the oscilloscope immediately precedes the Reset Event.*

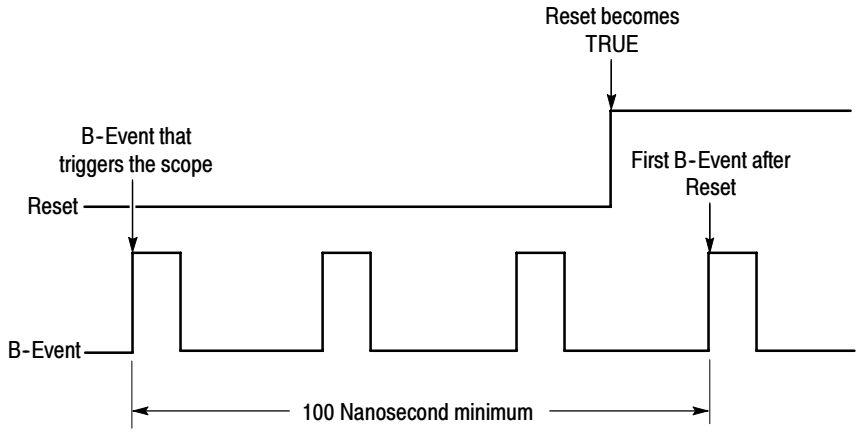
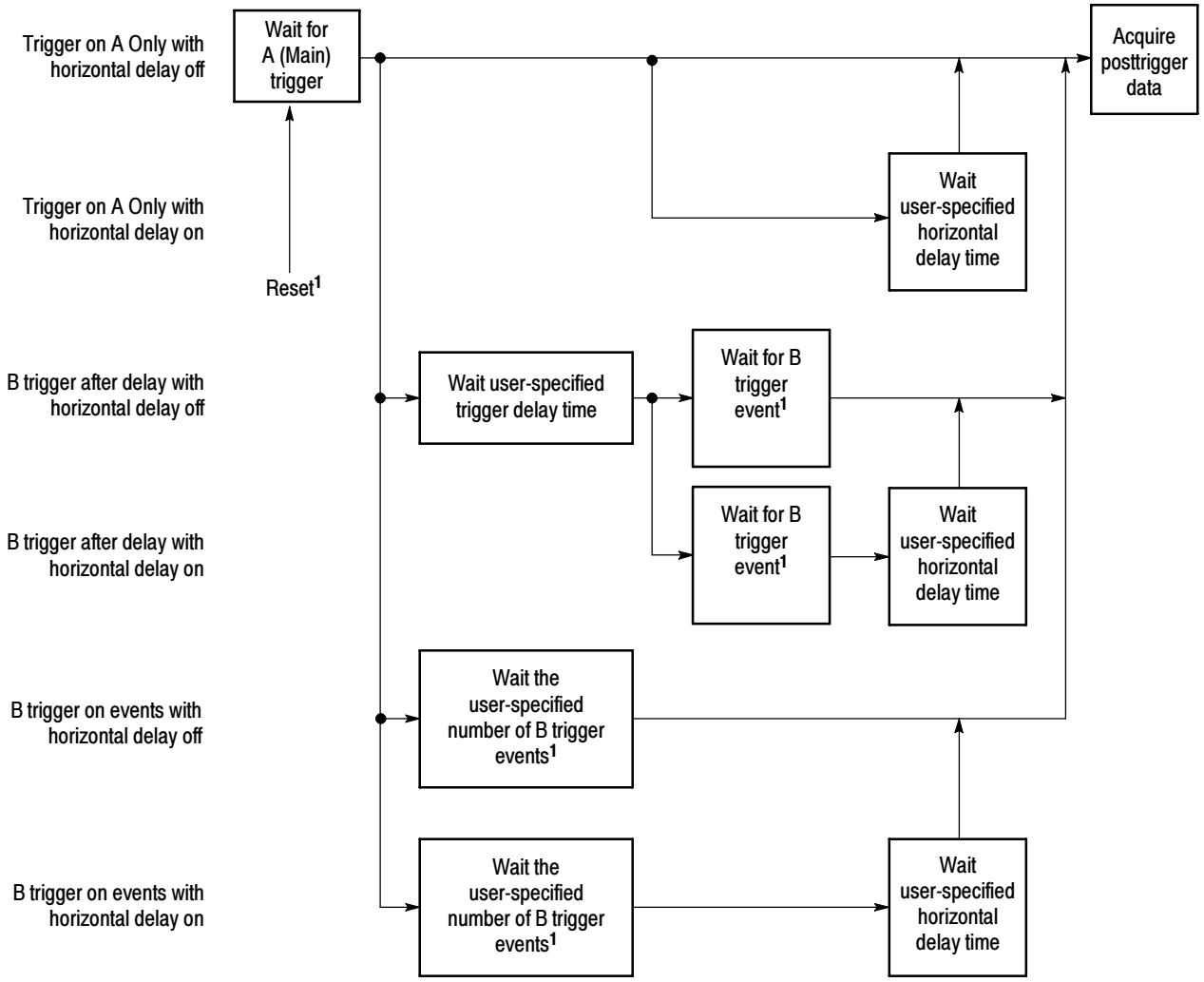


Figure 3-25: Reset trigger limitation

The flow diagram in Figure 3-26 summarizes all combinations of triggering and horizontal delay.

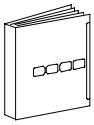
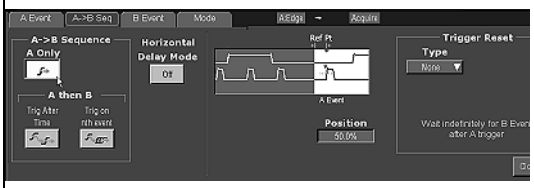
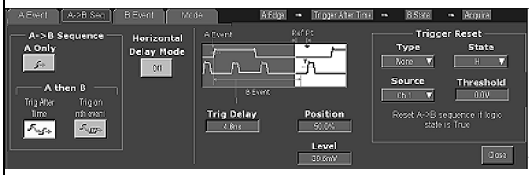
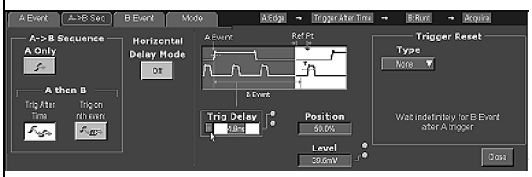
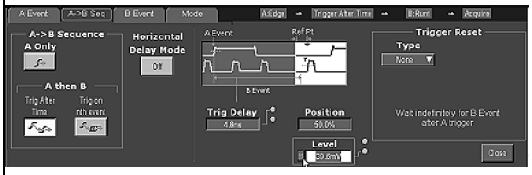


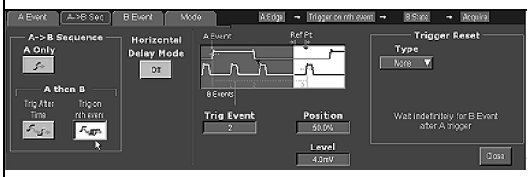
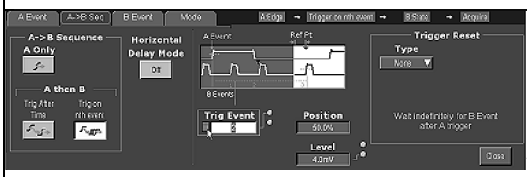
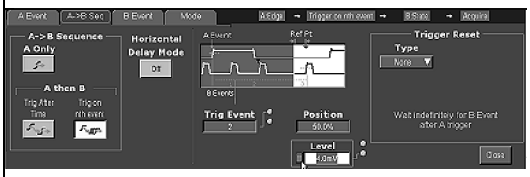
[1]If Reset is set, waiting on B event(s) only occurs until Reset condition you specify is satisfied. At that point, the Trigger system resets, and the sequence restarts, beginning with waiting for the A Event.

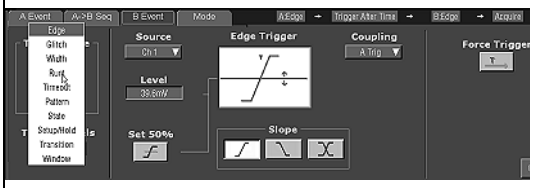
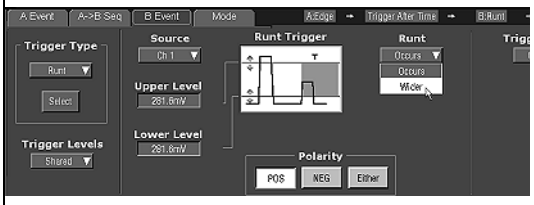
Figure 3-26: Trigger and Horizontal Delay summary

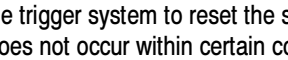
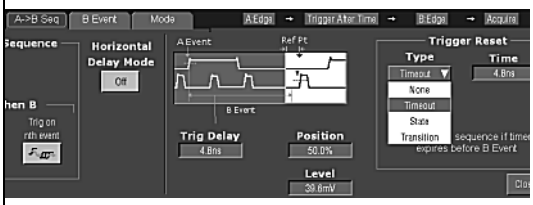
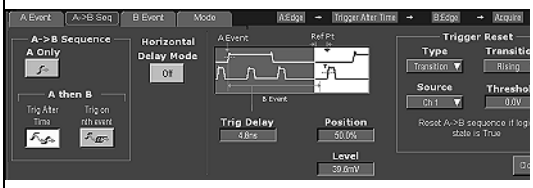
To Trigger on a Sequence

Use the procedure that follows when setting up the instrument to trigger on a sequence. For more information, display online help while performing the procedure.

Overview	To trigger on a sequence	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be installed with a signal connected to an input channel. Acquisition system should be set to Run, and the vertical and horizontal controls should be set appropriately for the signal to be acquired.	 See page 3-17 for acquisition setup
To trigger on a (main) only	**1.** From the toolbar, touch Trig and select the A->B Seq tab of the Trigger control window. **2.** Touch A Only to turn off sequential triggering.	 
To trigger on B after time	**1.** To set the time base to run after an A trigger, a trigger delay, and a B trigger, from the toolbar, touch Trig, and select the A->B Seq tab of the Trigger control window. **2.** Touch Trig After Time. **3.** To set the trigger delay, touch Trig Delay, and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to set the time. **4.** If using B Edge trigger type, set the B trigger level by touching B Trig Level, and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to set the level. **5.** If using any other trigger type, see *To set up B triggering* on page 3-93.	   

Overview	To trigger on a sequence (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To trigger on B events	**1.** To set the time base to trigger after an A trigger and a specified number of B trigger events, from the toolbar, touch Trig, and select the A->B Seq tab of the Trigger control window.	
	2. Touch A Then B Trig on nth Event.	
	3. To set the number of B trigger events, touch Trig Event, and use the multipurpose knob, keypad, or up and down arrows to set the number of events.	
	4. If using B Edge trigger type, set the B trigger level by touching B Trig Level, and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to set the level. **5.** If using any other trigger type, see *To set up B triggering* on page 3-93.	

Overview	To trigger on a sequence (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To set up B triggering	**1.** To set the B Event trigger, from the toolbar, touch Trig, and select the B Event tab of the Trigger control window.	
	2. To specify the trigger type, select it from the Trigger Type list. The Trigger control window will display controls for the trigger type that you select.	
	3. To set the trigger controls for the type you selected, make appropriate settings in the controls that displayed from step 2. For assistance, click Help from the toolbar to display help on the controls. For example, if you selected Runt as your B trigger event type (as shown at right), touching Help will display the topic *Runt Trigger Control Window*. You can also read about setting up the various trigger types in the procedures that follow. Just remember to select the B Event tab, not the A, when setting up B trigger types: ■ *To Trigger on a Glitch* on page 3-65 ■ *To Trigger on a Runt Pulse* on page 3-67 ■ *Trigger Based on Pulse Width* on page 3-69 ■ *To Trigger Based on Transition Time* on page 3-71 ■ *Triggering on a Window* on page 3-74 ■ *Trigger Based on Pulse Timeout* on page 3-76 ■ *Trigger on a Pattern* on page 3-77 ■ *To Trigger on a State* on page 3-80 ■ *To Trigger on Setup/ Hold Time Violation* on page 3-81	

Overview	To trigger on a sequence (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To Reset if no B Trigger	**1.** To set the trigger system to reset the sequence if a B trigger does not occur within certain constrains, from the toolbar, touch Trig, and select the A->B Seq tab of the Trigger control window. **2.** Set the Trigger Reset Type in the pulldown menu. The controls that are appropriate to your selection appear. ***Note**. Selections for Reset type vary with the B trigger type that you select. All B trigger types have the* Timeout *and* None *Reset types, with the* State *and* Transition *types added for those B trigger types for which it is appropriate.* **3.** Set the time, or specify the state or transition, that forces reset. To not reset, set to None.	  
For further assistance	**4.** Touch the Help button in the Trigger control window to access the online assistance specific to triggering commands.	

Comm Triggering

The instrument can trigger on communication signals (optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series). For detailed information on using comm triggering to trigger on your communications signals, see Appendix C in the User Manual.

Serial Pattern Triggering

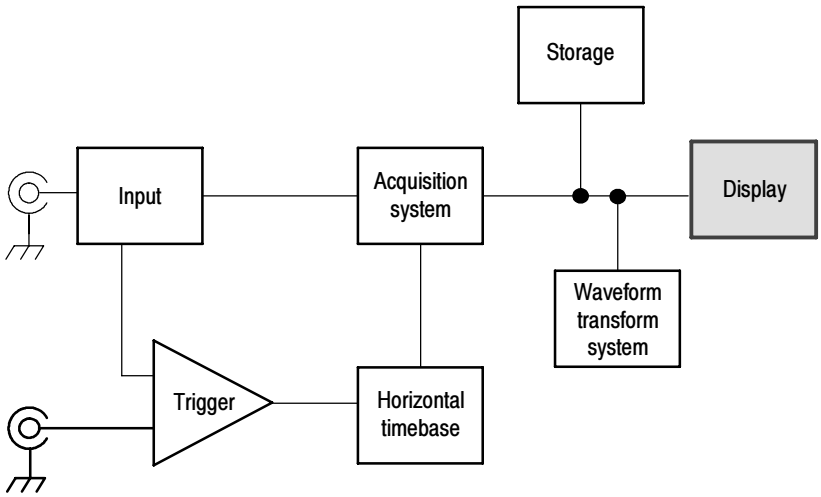
In applications that involve signals with serial data patterns, you may be able to use serial pattern triggering (optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series) to capture more complex events. Serial trigger provides a direct means to analyze pattern dependent issues, even on a single-shot basis. Acquisition of low power signals can be enhanced by combining serial trigger and signal averaging to reduce random noise. You can specify patterns with up to 64 bits at data rates up to 1.25 GHzbaud and up to 40 bits at data rates to 3.125Gbaud (TDS6000C only), including don't-care bits. The serial trigger system can be clocked from an external source or from internal clock recovery. Serial pattern trigger operates on NRZ-encoded signals at data rates up to 1.25Gbaud and on 8b/10b encoded data at up to 3.125Gbaud (TDS6000C only).

For detailed information on using serial pattern triggering to trigger on your serial pattern data signals see Appendix C in the User Manual.

***NOTE**. The instrument will attempt to acquire lock once. If the input data is disrupted, removed, or heavily distorted, the instrument may not acquire lock or may lose lock. If the recovered clock is not locked to the incoming data, the waveform display will not be stable. Once the input data is available, press the PUSH SET TO 50% knob to force the instrument to reacquire lock.*

Displaying Waveforms

This instrument includes a flexible, customizable display that you can control to display the waveforms that you acquire.



Using the Waveform Display

The waveform shown below is displayed as part of the User Interface (UI) application. The UI application takes up the entire screen of the instrument, and the graticule takes up most of the UI application. Some terms that are useful in discussing the following example display.

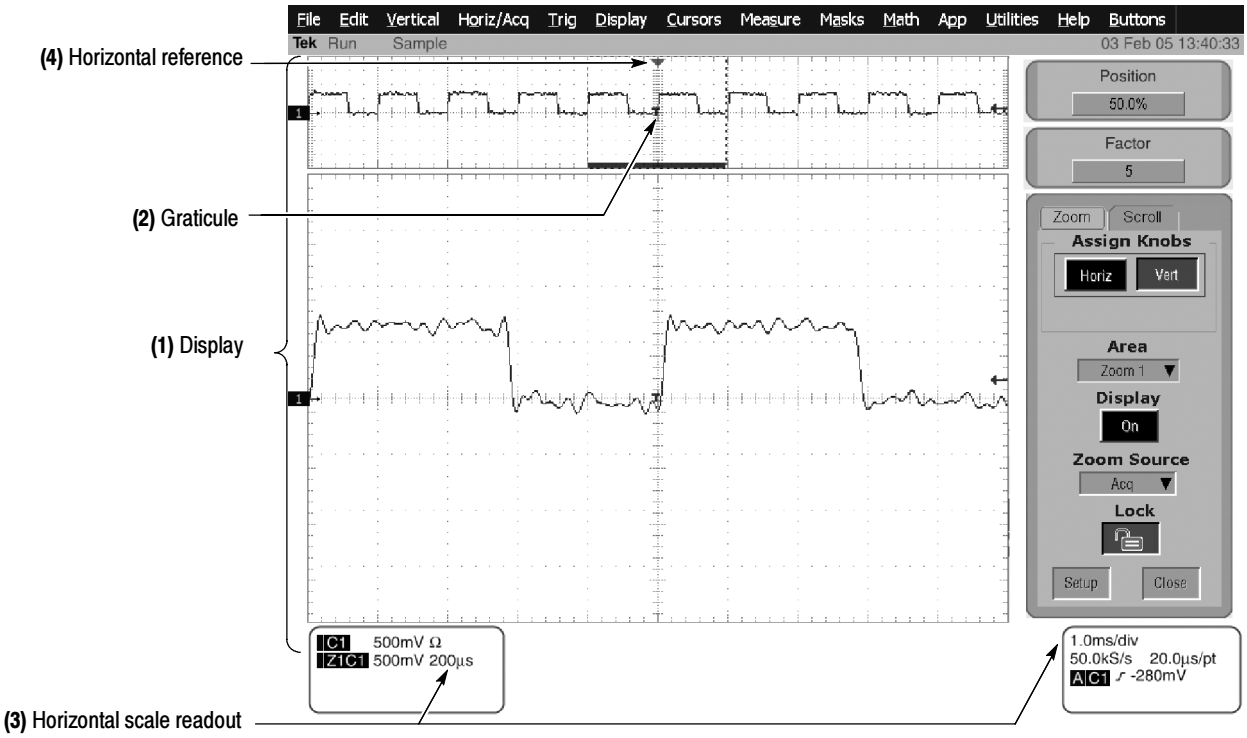


Figure 3- 27: Display elements

(1) Display area. The area where the waveforms appear. The display comprises the timebase and graticules, the waveforms, histograms, and some readouts.

(2) Graticule**.** A grid marking the display area. When MultiView Zoom is on, the upper graticule displays unmagnified waveforms, and the lower graticule displays magnified waveforms.

(3) Horizontal-scale readout. Displays the scale of magnified and unmagnified waveforms.

(4) Horizontal reference. A control that you can position to set the point around which channel waveforms expand and contract horizontally on screen as you change the Horizontal Scale control or push the MultiView Zoom button. The reference is also the trigger point when the horizontal delay is 0%.

Touch Screen (not shown) A feature that lets you touch on-screen controls or touch and drag screen objects to operate the instrument.

Some features of the display follow:

- Flexible Display Control Front-panel knobs and buttons support quick access to the most often used adjustments — those that display, position, and scale waveforms. Mouse, keyboard, and touch-screen interfaces support complete setup of all the display parameters. Anything you can do with the mouse, you can do with the touch screen.
- Fast Access to MultiView Zoom. Waveform inspection has never been easier. Just touch and drag a box around the feature of interest and select zoom from the choices offered, and the feature of interest displays zoomed in the magnified graticule. Both vertical and horizontal zoom functions are available. Zoomed waveforms can be aligned, locked, and automatically scrolled.
- Acquisition Preview. When the next acquisition is delayed due to slow triggers or long acquisition duration, acquisition preview attempts to show what the next acquisition will look like. Acquisition preview does not recalculate math waveforms or represent changes in trigger levels, trigger modes, or different acquisition modes.

Using the Display

Read the following topics; they provide the details that can help you set up the instrument display so that it best supports your data-analysis tasks.

Waveform Display. In general, the method of displaying a waveform is to define the waveform, if necessary (math and reference waveforms), and then turn it on. Table 3–3 summarizes this process as it applies to the different waveforms.

Table 3-3: Defining and displaying waveforms

Waveform	To define:	To turn on:
Channel: Ch1 - Ch4	Channels are predefined	Push the Vertical CH button to toggle the channel on or off.
Reference: Ref1 - Ref4	Define an active reference waveform by: ■ Saving a channel, reference, or math waveform to one of locations Ref1 - Ref4. ■ Recalling a waveform previously saved to a file into one of locations Ref1 - Ref4. Both of these operations can be performed from the File menu.	From the Refs setup control window, touch Display to toggle display of the selected reference on or off.
Math: Math1 - Math4	Define a math waveform by creating a math waveform using existing sources (channel, math, and reference waveforms, and measurements). This operation can be performed by touching the Math button and then selecting Define/Edit Expression.	When defining a math waveform, you turn it on in the Math setup control window.

Operations on Waveforms. In general, the method of adjusting (vertically scaling, offsetting, positioning, and so on) is from the front panel: adjust a waveform using its Vertical Scale and Position knobs.

Table 3-4 summarizes operations you can perform for the three waveform types.

Table 3-4: Operations performed based on the waveform type

Control function	Waveform supports			Operating notes
	Ch	Ref[1]	Math	
Vertical Scale	Yes	Yes	Yes	Math and reference waveforms are scaled and positioned from their setup control windows.
Vertical Position	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Vertical Offset	Yes	No	No	
Horizontal Scale	Yes	Yes	Yes	Waveforms are adjusted according to the Zoom Lock setting.
Horizontal Position	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Horizontal Record Length	Yes	No	No	
Quick Horizontal and Vertical Scale Adjust (Zoom , MultiView)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Dragging a box around a portion of the selected waveform adjusts horizontal scale to fill the zoom graticule with the boxed portion (see *Setting MultiView Zoom Controls on* page 3-105).

1 **Pixel-map reference waveforms, those saved in waveform database mode, cannot be repositioned or rescaled.**

Graticules. Select a graticule size from the Graticule Size drop-down list in the Zoom Setup window to change the size of the acquisition waveform and zoomed waveform windows. The 50-50 selection allocates half of the available display for the zoomed graticule and half of the available display for the acquisition window. The 80-20 selection allocates 80% of the available display for the zoomed graticule and 20% for the acquisition window. Touch 100 to use the entire display for the zoomed graticule.

Figure 3-27 on page 3-98 shows the elements of the graticules; the elements are the same for each graticule displayed.

Operations on the Timebase. In general, the method of adjusting (horizontally scaling, setting resolution/record length, positioning, and so on) is from the front panel: adjust the timebase using the Horizontal Scale, Resolution, and Position knobs. Only channel waveforms can be set directly.

Table 3-4 shows how horizontal operations relate to the waveform types; the key points follow:

- All waveforms are displayed fit-to-screen; that is, within the horizontal divisions that the graticule provides. However, some waveforms may be wider or narrower than the full graticule due to acquisition rate/time scale combinations and acquisition preview.
- The instrument displays a reference waveform with horizontal settings in effect at the time it was saved. You cannot adjust these settings. See *Saving and Recalling Waveforms* on page 3-205 for more information on reference waveforms.

- The instrument displays a math waveform with the horizontal settings derived from the math expression that creates it. You cannot change these directly. See *Creating and Using Math Waveforms* on page 3–145 for more information on math waveforms.

Display and Acquisition Controls. For channel waveforms, the vertical and horizontal controls that you set also adjust the instrument acquisition parameters. See the following descriptions for more information:

- *Vertical Acquisition Window Considerations* on page 3–12
- *Horizontal Acquisition Window Considerations* on page 3–14

Horizontal Position and the Horizontal Reference. The time values that you set for horizontal position are from the trigger point to the horizontal reference point. This is not the time from the trigger point to the start of the waveform record unless you set the horizontal reference to 0%. See Figure 3–28.

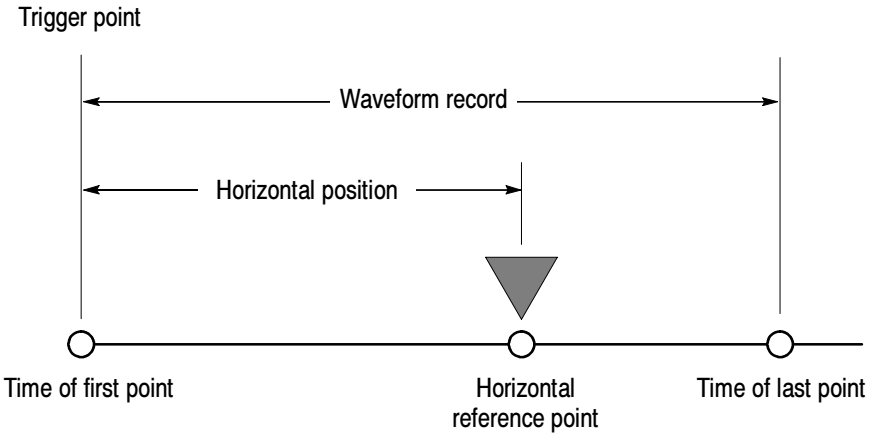
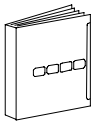
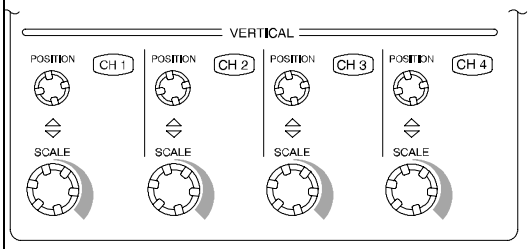
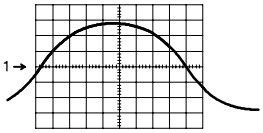
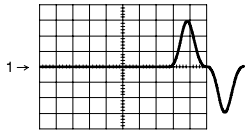
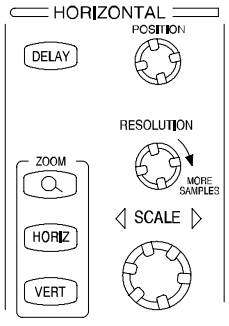


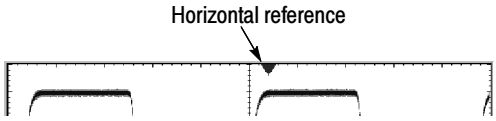
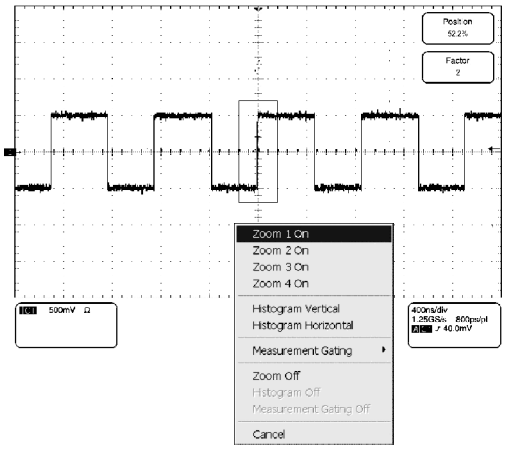
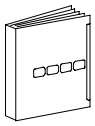
Figure 3- 28: Horizontal Position includes time to Horizontal Reference

Mouse and Touch Screen Operation. In general, anything that you can do with the mouse, you can do by touching the screen, if the touch screen is on. You can select or change all menus and buttons that are displayed on screen by mouse clicks or touching the on-screen control while the touch screen is on.

To Display Waveforms in the Main Graticule

Use the procedure that follows to become familiar with the display adjustments you can make.

Overview	To display waveforms in the main graticule	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be installed and operating. **2.** The acquisition system should be set to run continuously.	 See page page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Set vertical display parameters	**3.** Push a channel button to select the waveform it displays. A channel button lights when its channel is on. ***Note.*** *For information on math waveforms, see* To Define a Math Waveform *on page 3-153. For information on reference waveforms, see* Saving and Recalling Waveforms *on page 3-205.* **4.** Use the Vertical knobs to achieve a good display of each waveform that you select.	
Set horizontal display parameters	**5.** To make sure the main graticule is selected, push the MultiView Zoom button to toggle it off. Use the horizontal knobs to scale and position the waveform on screen and to set sample resolution. Scaled Horizontally  Positioned Horizontally  The Resolution knob sets the record length. (See discussion of record length on page 3-15.) Push PUSH TO SET TO 50% if required to stabilize display.	

Overview	To display waveforms in the main graticule (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Adjust the horizontal reference	**6.** To adjust the point around which the waveforms expand and contract, touch the Horizontal Reference, and drag it left or right on screen. Move the Horizontal Reference along the horizontal axis until it aligns to the point on the waveform that you want to be stationary on screen. ***Note.*** *If Delay is off, Horizontal Reference is the same as Horizontal Position.* **7.** Release the Horizontal Reference, and then adjust the Horizontal Scale.	
Quick-adjust the timebase (zoom)	**8.** To quickly rescale a portion of a channel waveform so that it expands to fill the 10 divisions on screen, touch and drag across the segment of the waveform that you want to see in greater detail. Then select Zoom 1 On, Zoom 2 On, Zoom 3 On, or Zoom 4 On from the list to magnify the highlighted waveform segment. ***Note.*** *The instrument displays the box-enclosed area on the waveform magnified in the graticule.* Both vertical and horizontal zoom functions are available. Zoomed waveforms can be aligned, locked, and automatically scrolled. See *Setting MultiView Zoom Controls* on page 3-105 for more information.	
Explore the zoom controls	**9.** The next procedure describes setting up and controlling MultiView Zoom.	 See *Setting MultiView Zoom Controls* on page 3-105.

Setting MultiView Zoom Controls

The instrument can expand or compress (zoom in or out) on a waveform without changing the acquisition parameters (sample rate, record length, and so on). This section describes how to use MultiView Zoom and how it interacts with the selected waveform.

Use MultiView Zoom (push the MultiView Zoom button) when you want to expand a waveform to inspect small feature(s) on that waveform or compare the feature to the non-zoomed waveform(s). For example, to temporarily expand the front corner of a pulse to inspect its aberrations, use MultiView Zoom to expand it horizontally and vertically.

Using with Waveforms

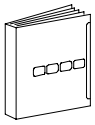
To help you use MultiView Zoom effectively, consider how it operates on waveforms. When in zoom mode, the instrument vertically expands or contracts one waveform at a time unless zoom lock is on. Also, the instrument only vertically positions one waveform at a time when in MultiView Zoom.

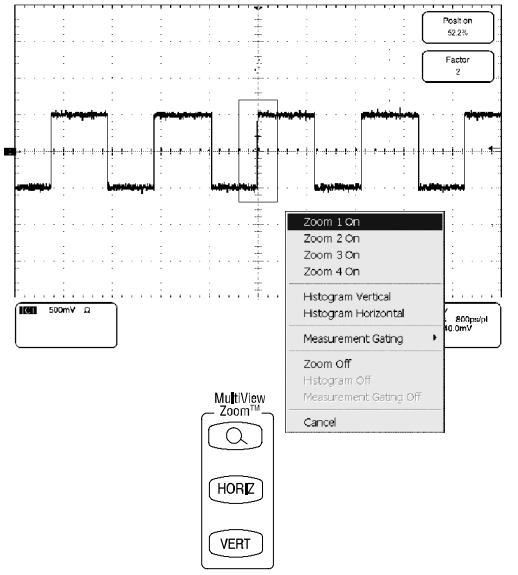
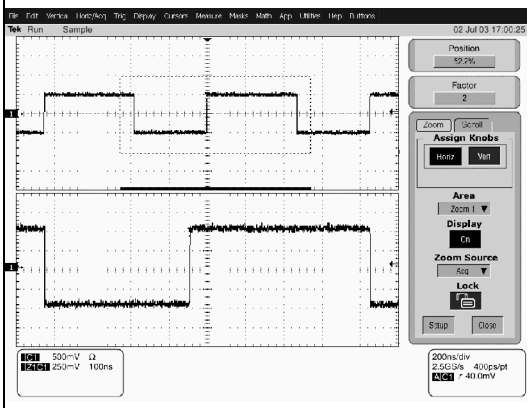
When zooming horizontally, MultiView Zoom expands all waveforms at the same time.

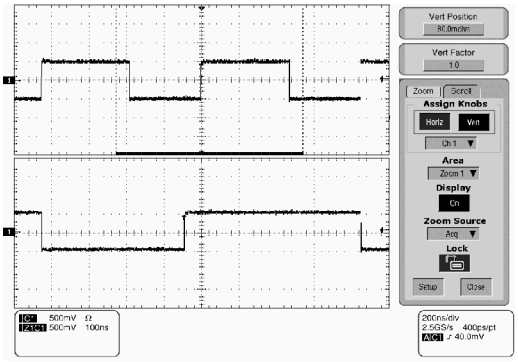
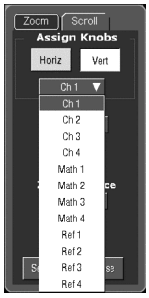
When zooming horizontally or vertically, MultiView Zoom expands or contracts the waveform by the zoom scale factor.

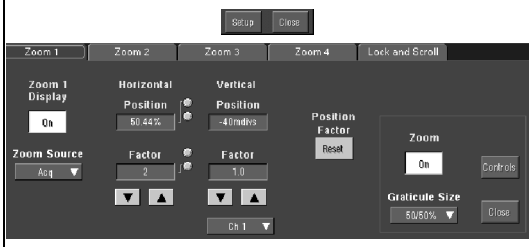
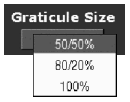
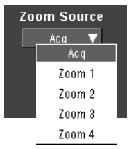
To Zoom Waveforms

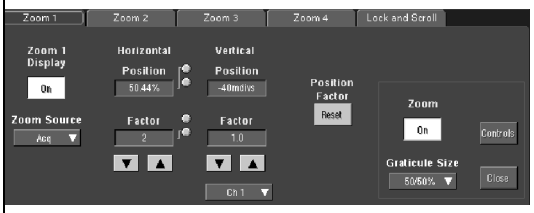
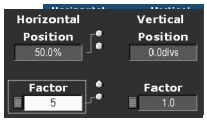
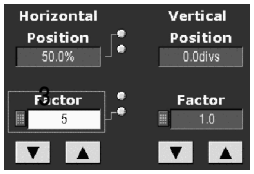
Use the procedure that follows to zoom a waveform. For more information, display online help when performing the procedure.

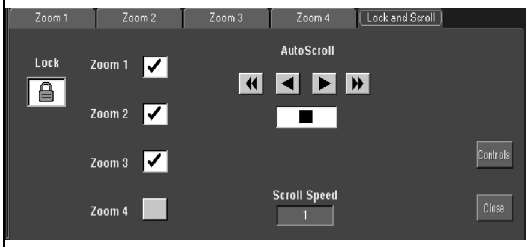
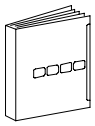
Overview	To zoom waveforms	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be installed and operating. Instrument must be powered up, with horizontal and vertical controls and triggering set up.	 See page 3-43 for trigger setup.

Overview	To zoom waveforms (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Select zoom	**2.** You can select zoom in two ways: ■ To zoom a waveform, touch and drag across the segment of the waveform that you want to see in greater detail. Then select Zoom 1 On, Zoom 2 On, Zoom 3 On, or Zoom 4 On to magnify the highlighted waveform segment in one of the 4 zoom areas. ***Note.*** *The instrument displays the box-enclosed area on the waveform magnified in the graticule. If two graticules are shown, the magnified waveform is shown in the bottom graticule.* ■ Push the MultiView Zoom button to split the screen and add a zoom graticule.	
	If the instrument creates two graticules, the magnified waveform(s) is displayed in the lower graticule, and the unmagnified waveform(s) in the upper graticule. Use the Zoom Setup menu to change the graticule size.	

Overview	To zoom waveforms (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Zoom a waveform	**3.** To zoom a waveform, start by using one of two methods to select the axis that you want to adjust: ■ Push the HORIZ button or the VERT button to select the axis that you want to adjust in the zoom graticule. ■ Touch the HORIZ button or the VERT button in the control window to select which axis is controlled by the multipurpose knobs. **4.** Use the multipurpose knobs to adjust the zoom factor and position of the magnified waveform. ***Note.*** *As you change the zoom factor or move the unmagnified waveform relative to the box, the instrument alters the magnified display accordingly to include only the waveform portion within the box.* *As you change the zoom factor or move the magnified waveform, the instrument scales or moves the box relative to the unmagnified waveform, so that the box encloses only the magnified portion of the waveform.* *If multiple waveforms are displayed, the zoom position for all waveforms is not 0.0, or zoom lock is not on; the magnified display may not match what is shown enclosed in the zoom box.* **5.** To select the waveform that you want to change, select the channel (Ch), Math, or reference (Ref) number for the waveform that you want to change, or touch its level-marker with the mouse or touch screen.	 Nonzoomed waveforms, with box  Zoomed (magnified) waveforms 

Overview	To zoom waveforms (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Set up MultiView Zoom	**6.** To display the Zoom setup window, touch Setup in the controls window. Select the tab for the zoomed waveform area that you want to set up. ***Note.*** *To reduce the Zoom setup window to the controls window, touch Controls.*	
	7. Select from the Graticule Size list to change the size of the unmagnified (Acquisition) and Zoom windows: ■ 50-50 allocates half of the available display for the zoomed graticule and half of the available display for the acquisition window. ■ 80-20 allocates 80% of the available display for the zoomed graticule and 20% for the acquisition window. ■ 100 uses the entire display for the zoomed graticule. ***Note.*** *The instrument displays the box-enclosed area on the waveform magnified in the graticule. If two graticules are shown, the magnified waveform is shown in the bottom graticule.*	
	8. To select the source of your zoomed waveform area, touch Zoom Source and select the source from the drop-down list. You can select the live acquisitions or one of the four zoom areas.	

Overview	To zoom waveforms (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Checking the zoom factor and position	**9.** To quickly determine the zoom factor and position of a zoomed waveform, check the readouts: ■ The Zoom setup window displays the horizontal and vertical position and zoom factor of the selected zoom area. ■ From the Zoom Setup window, touch the Vertical or Horizontal Position or Factor controls to assign the multipurpose knobs to the factor and position controls. ■ Use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to change the zoom position and factor. The knob readout also displays the zoom position and factor. You can also use the up and down arrows to change the zoom factor.	  
Reset zoom	**10.** To reset all Horizontal zoom factors to their defaults, from the Zoom control window touch Setup. **11.** Touch Reset to reset the zoom factor and position.	

Overview	To zoom waveforms (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
To Lock and Automatically Scroll Zoom Areas	**12.** To display the zoom Lock and Scroll setup window, touch Setup in the controls window. Select the Lock and Scroll tab. **13.** To select which zoom areas to lock, touch Zoom 1, Zoom 2, Zoom 3, or Zoom 4 to toggle the areas you want to lock on (check mark). **14.** To lock control of the zoom areas selected in the previous step, touch Lock to toggle it on. **15.** To control the automatic scrolling of the selected zoom areas, touch an AutoScroll control: ▶ Forward ⏩ Fast forward ◀ Reverse ⏪ Fast reverse ■ Stop **16.** To change the scrolling speed, touch Scroll Speed and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to change the scrolling speed.	 
For further assistance	**17.** Touch the Help button while in the Zoom setup window to access a context-sensitive overview of the MultiView Zoom controls and their setup.	

Customizing the Display

Use the display customizing features this instrument provides to present the display elements — color, graticule style, waveform representation, and so on — according to your preferences.

From the Color Palette, you can select temperature, spectral, or gray scale color grading of a waveform so that its data color or intensity reflects the sample density of the data in that area of the waveform.

Using Display Controls

Read the following topics; they provide the details that can help you set up the the display system so that it displays waveforms and other display elements as you prefer.

Display Settings. Table 3–5 lists display attributes that you can set and where they are accessed.

Table 3-5: Customizable display elements

Display attribute	Access		Options
	Menu name[1]	Entry	
Graticule Style	Display	Graticule Style	Choose from: Full, Grid, Cross-hair, and Frame styles.
	Disp	Objects	
Display Persistence	Display	Display Persistence	Choose from No Persistence (Off), Infinite Persistence, and Variable Persistence Modes. Reset the persistence display. Set the Variable Persistence time. Display the persistence control window.
	Disp	Appearance	
Display Style	Display	Display Style	Choose Dots to display each waveform as a series of dots. Choose Vectors to display vectors or lines between the dots.
	Disp	Appearance	Choose Intensified Samples to display actual samples as bright dots.
Screen Text	Display	Screen Text	Enter text that you can display and position on screen. Also see *Label the waveform* on page 3-207
	Disp	Screen Text	
Color Palette (Record View and Waveform Data-base)	Display	Colors	Choose Normal to use system colors for best viewing. Choose Green to display variable persistence waveforms in shades of green. Choose Gray to display variable persistence waveforms in shades of gray. Choose Temp (temperature) to display variable persistence waveforms with the highest sample density points appearing in warmer colors (reds). Choose Spectral to display variable persistence waveforms with the highest sample density points appearing in blue shades. Choose User to use custom palette colors for the selected source. Choose User Palette Edit. . . to display the window in which you can set custom hue, lightness, and saturation for the selected source.
	Disp	Colors	
Reference Colors	Display	Colors	Choose Default to use the default system color (white) for reference waveforms. Choose Inherit to use the same color for the reference waveform as the original waveform.
	Disp	Colors	
Math Colors	Display	Colors	Choose Default to use the default system color (red) for math waveforms. Choose Inherit to use the same color for the math waveform as the waveform the math function is based on.
	Disp	Colors	

Table 3-5: Customizable display elements (Cont.)

Display attribute	Access		Options
	Menu name[1]	Entry	
Waveform Interpolation	Display	Appearance	Choose from Sin(x)/x or Linear interpolation.
	Disp	Appearance	
Waveform Intensity	Display	Appearance	Toggle AutoBright On to set the brightness maximum to the value of the most frequent event. Toggle AutoBright Off to let the brightness depend on the trigger rate, creating a display like an analog instrument. Touch Record View or FastAcq/WfmDB, and use the keypad or multipurpose knobs to adjust the intensity of waveforms.
	Disp	Appearance	
Trigger Level Marker	Disp	Objects	Choose a Short level marker at the right side of the graticule, a Long level marker the width of the graticule, or Off for no trigger level marker.
Trigger T	Display	Display Trigger T	Toggle on and off the display of a T at the trigger point.
	Disp	Objects	
Date and Time	Display	Display Date and Time	Toggle on and off the display of the system date and time.
	Disp	Objects	
Set Date and Time	Utilities	Set Date and Time	Set the date and time using the Set Time and Date setup window that is displayed.

[1] **The Menu Names refer to the menus found in the menu bar or toolbar at the top of the instrument screen.**

Normal and Persistence Displays. Use the display persistence to control how waveform data ages:

- Off style displays waveforms without persistence: each new waveform record replaces the previously acquired record for a channel. You can choose to display normal waveforms as vectors, which displays lines between the record points or dots (vectors off) which displays the record points only. You can also choose an interpolation mode. See *Interpolation* on page 3–113.
- Variable Persistence style accumulates the waveform-record points on screen and displays them only for a specific time interval. Previous waveform data continuously fades from the display as new waveform records acquire.
- Infinite Persistence style accumulates the data record points until you change some control (such as scale factor) causing the display to be erased. Waveform data builds up as new data records acquire.

Persistence style is only available for live waveforms (waveforms with data that is being updated); reference waveforms are static and do not use persistence. Math waveforms use persistence if their sources are live waveforms.

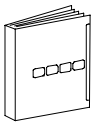
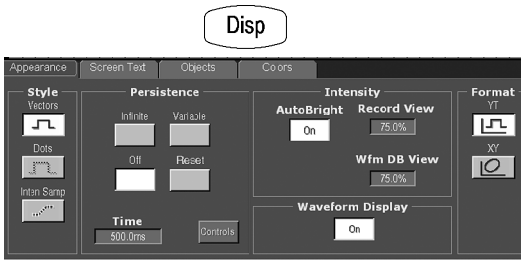
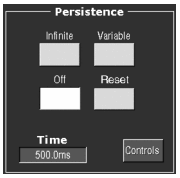
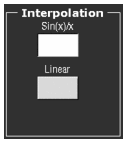
Interpolation. When, due to preview, zoom, or Real Time mode with limited samples, the available sample density falls to less than 1 sample per display column, the instrument calculates intermediate points by either the linear or sine algorithms, and uses them to produce points. There are two options for interpolation:

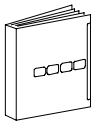
- Sin(x)/x interpolation computes record points using a curve-fit between the actual values acquired. The curve-fit assumes all the interpolated points fall along that curve. Sin(x)x interpolation is particularly useful when acquiring more rounded waveforms such as sine waves. It is also appropriate for general use, although it may introduce some overshoot or undershoot in signals with fast rise times.
- Linear interpolation computes record points between actual acquired samples by using a straight-line-fit. The straight-line-fit assumes all the interpolated points fall in their appropriate point in time on that straight line. Linear interpolation is useful for many waveforms such as pulse trains.

Interpolation is used whenever the displayed sample density falls below 1 sample per column. If the acquired record length is 500 points, zoom of 2x requires interpolation. If instead, the record length of the acquisition is 100K, horizontal zoom of 200x produces 1 sample per column (100,000/500 = 200); therefore, you will see interpolated samples starting at the next scale setting.

Set Display Styles

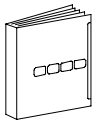
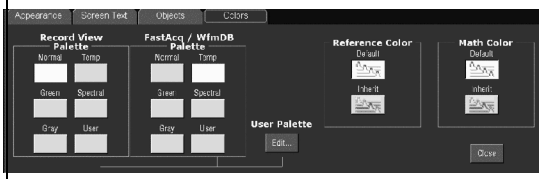
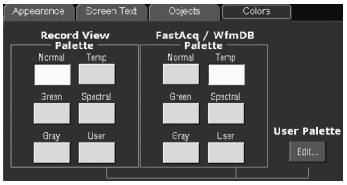
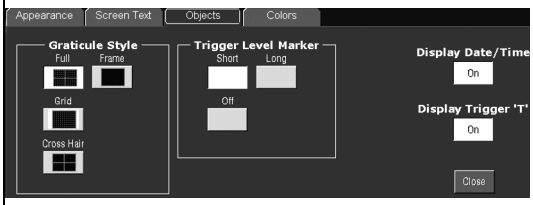
Use the procedure that follows to become familiar with the display adjustments that you can make.

Overview	Set display styles	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be powered up, with any waveform you want to display on screen.	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Access the display setup dialog box	**2.** From the toolbar, touch Disp, and then select the Appearance tab. See right.	
Select the display style and persistence and waveform interpolation mode	**3.** From display Persistence, choose a persistence mode: ■ Off displays Waveforms with new data replacing the data from previous waveform acquisitions (no persistence). ■ Infinite persistence continuously accumulates record points until you change an acquisition setting. ■ Variable persistence accumulates record points for a specified time. Each point decays in a set time interval. **4.** From display Style, select an available style: ■ Vectors displays lines between waveform dots. ■ Dots displays waveform record points as dots. ■ Inten Samp displays actual samples as bright dots and blacks out interpolated samples. ***Note.*** *Adjustment of display intensity may be necessary to set display intensity to the desired level.* **5.** Select an Interpolation mode by choosing Sin(x)/x or Linear. For more information see *Interpolation* on page 3-113.	 

Overview	Set display styles (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Select a persistence mode	**6.** From the the Display setup control window (see right), choose a persistence mode: ■ Infinite Persistence to make data persist indefinitely. Waveform displays accumulate data as new waveform records acquire, resulting in a build up of data in the displayed waveforms. ■ Variable Persistence to make data persist momentarily, but also decay. New waveform displays accumulate data as new waveform records acquire, but with continuous replacement of the oldest data. If you select Variable Persistence, set a time at which the oldest data fades away. ■ Off to make data display for the current acquisition only. ■ Reset to restart the accumulation of data.	
Continue with next procedure	**7.** For more ways to customize the display, see the next procedure.	 See *Customize Graticule and Waveforms* on page 3-116.

Customize Graticule and Waveforms

Use the procedure that follows to become familiar with the display adjustments that you can make.

Overview	Customizations you can make	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Display the waveforms to be measured on screen. The waveform may be a channel, reference, or math waveform.	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Change waveform colors	**2.** From the Display setup control window, select the Colors tab.	
	3. Choose a color palette from the Color Palette list. Normal, Green, and Gray give the appearance of an intensity-graded display similar to an analog instrument. Spectral and Temp use hue to indicate the frequency of occurrence and to highlight events. User and User Palette let you create a custom color palette.	
Change graticule style	**4.** From the Display setup control window, select the Objects tab. **5.** Touch the Full, Grid, Cross Hair, or Frame button to select that style of graticule.	

Overview	Customizations you can make (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
To set the display readout options	**6.** Touch the DISP button and select the Objects tab. **7.** Touch Display Date/Time to toggle between On and Off. (On displays the date and time.) **8.** Touch Display Trigger T to toggle between On and Off. (On displays the trigger T at the trigger location.)	
For further assistance	**9.** Touch the Help button in the toolbar to access a context-sensitive overview of the display controls and their setup.	

Measuring Waveforms

The instrument comes equipped with cursors and automatic measurements to assist you in analyzing your waveforms.

***NOTE**. You can also make graticule measurements, counting graticule divisions and multiplying them by the vertical or horizontal scales set for the waveform that you are measuring.*

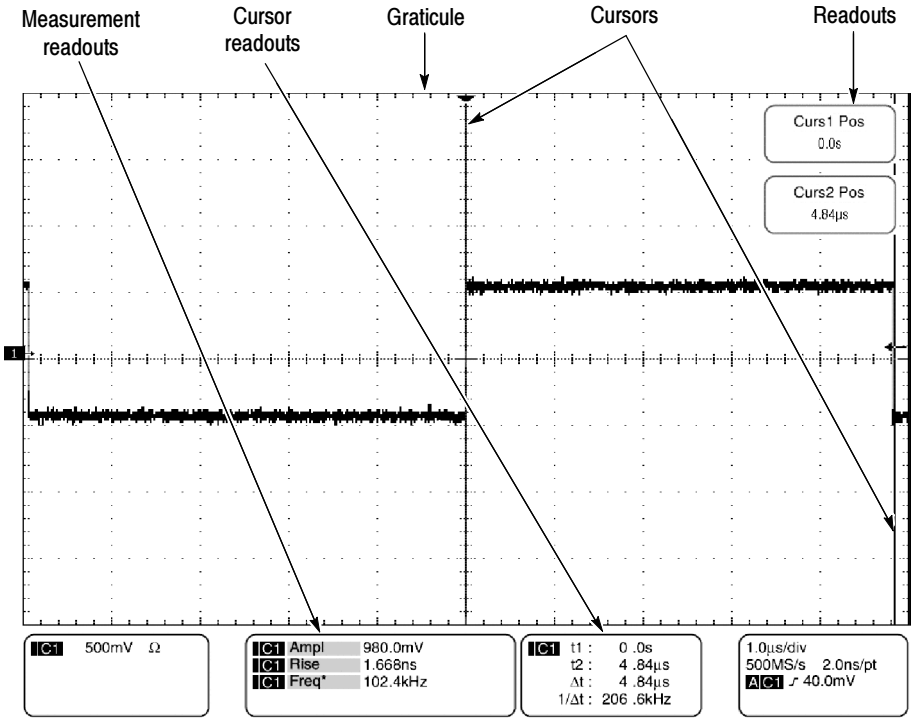


Figure 3- 29: Graticule, Cursor, and Automatic measurements

Taking Automatic Measurements

The instrument automatically takes and displays waveform measurements. This section describes how to set up the instrument to let it do the work of taking measurements for you.

Because automatic measurements use the waveform record points, and Waveform Database mode measurements use a multidimensional array of points,

automatic measurements are usually more accurate than cursor and graticule measurements. And the instrument does the work, continuously taking, updating, and displaying these measurements.

Some features of automatic measurements follow.

Annotate Waveforms On Screen. You can create text to mark characterization levels that each measurement uses to compute results (see Figure 3–30). See *Customizing the Display* on page 3–110, *Label the waveform* on page 3–207, and *Annotate measurements* on page 3–125 for additional information.

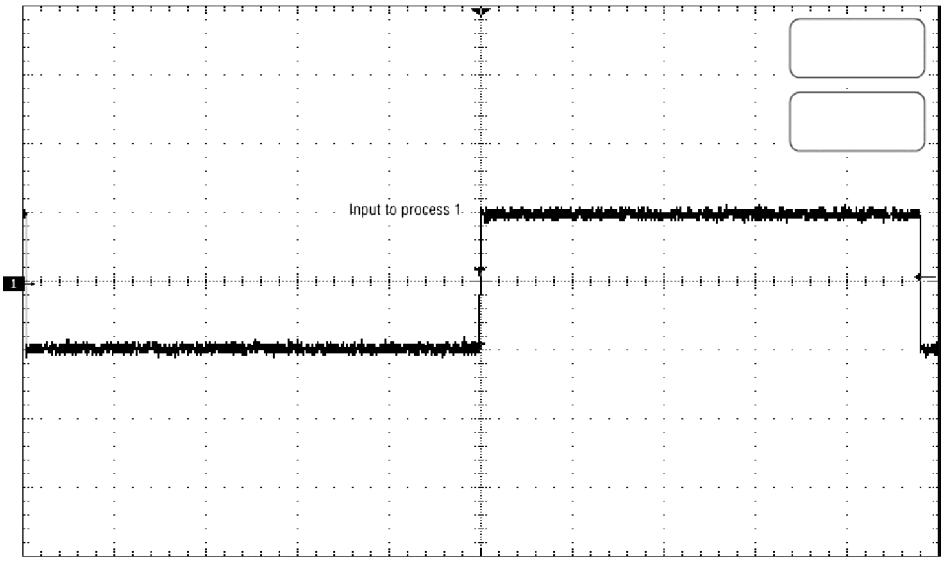


Figure 3- 30: Annotated display

Customize Measurements. To allow you control over how your waveform data is characterized by measurements, the instrument lets you set the methods used for each measurement. See *High/Low Method* on page 3–121 and *Reference Levels Method* on page 3–122.

See Statistics on Measurement Results. To see how automatic measurements vary statistically, you can display a readout of the Min, Max, Mean, and Standard Deviation of the measurement results. See *Display measurement statistics* on page 3–125 for more information.

Select Measurement Parameters. You can select from an extensive range of parameters to measure; for a list, see *Appendix A: Automatic Measurements Supported.*

Measure Part of a Waveform. You can feed the entire waveform to a measurement or limit the measurement to a segment of the waveform. By default, the instrument takes each automatic measurement over the entire waveform record, but you can use measurement gates and zoom to localize each measurement to a section of a waveform (see *To Localize a Measurement* on page 3–128).

Select Measurement Sources. Select from these measurement sources: channel, reference, and math waveforms.

Take Measurements on a Frame. In FastFrame, measurements are taken only on the displayed frame.

Using Automatic Measurements

Read the following topics; they provide the details that can help you set up automatic measurements so that they best support your data-analysis tasks.

Measurement Selection. The instrument takes automatic measurements of the following categories: Amplitude, Timing, More, Histogram, and Comm (optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series). Check *Appendix A: Automatic Measurements Supported* for a listing of the measurements that you can choose.

Number of Measurements. The instrument can take and update up to eight measurements at one time. You can apply measurements to any combination of sources (described below). You can take all eight measurements on Ch1, for example or you can take measurements on Ch1 – Ch4, Math1 – Math4, Ref1 – Ref4, or a histogram.

Measurement Sources. All channel, reference, and math waveforms can serve as sources for automatic measurements.

Some measurements, such as delay and phase, require two sources. For example, delay would be used to measure an input from one measurement source (for example, C1) with respect to an output in another source (C2).

High/Low Method. The levels that the automatic measurement system derives as the High (Top) or Low (Bottom) for a waveform influence the fidelity of amplitude and aberration measurements. You can select among the modes the instrument provides for determining these levels. You can set the modes differently for each measurement:

- Histogram Sets the values statistically. It selects the most common value either above or below the midpoint (depending on whether it is defining the high or low reference level). Since this statistical approach ignores short term aberrations (overshoot, ringing, and so on.), Histogram is the best setting for examining pulses. See Figure 3–31.

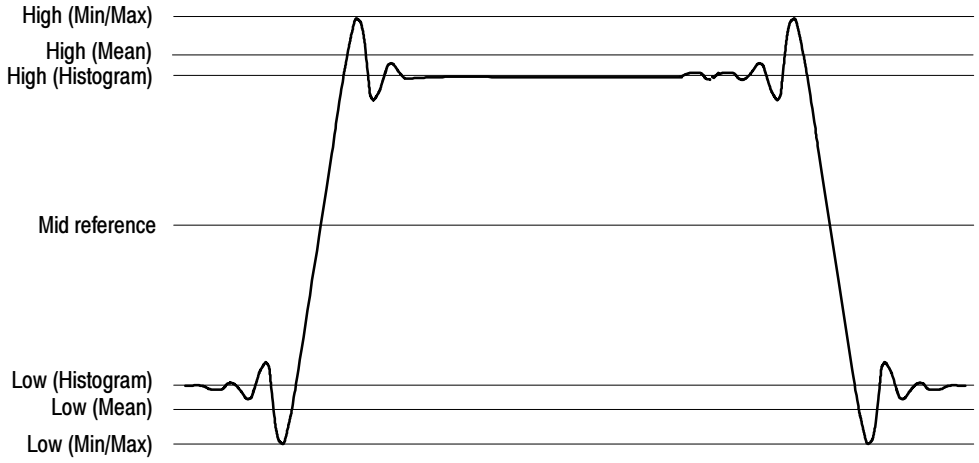


Figure 3- 31: High/Low tracking methods

- Min-max. Uses the highest and lowest values of the waveform record. This setting is best for examining waveforms that have no large, flat portions at a common value, such as sine waves and triangle waves — almost any waveform except for pulses. See Figure 3–31.
- Histogram mean Sets the values statistically. Using a histogram, it selects the mean or average value derived using all values either above or below the midpoint (depending on whether it is defining the high or low reference level). This setting is best for examining eye patterns. See Figure 3–31.
- Noise. (Optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series) Tells the instrument if the noise measurement is at the top or the bottom of the eye diagram.
- Signal Type. (Optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series) Lets the instrument know if the signal to be measured is a pulse waveform or an eye diagram.

Reference Levels Method. A second set of levels affect the fidelity of time-related measurements, the Hi, Mid, and Lo references. For example, the measurement system takes risetime measurements from the waveform-edge that transitions from the Low to High reference levels.

You can set the calculation method for each measurement. The instrument provides the following calculation methods; refer to Figure 3–32 as you read about each method:

- Relative Reference Calculated as a percentage of the High/Low range.
- Absolute Reference Set by absolute values in user units.

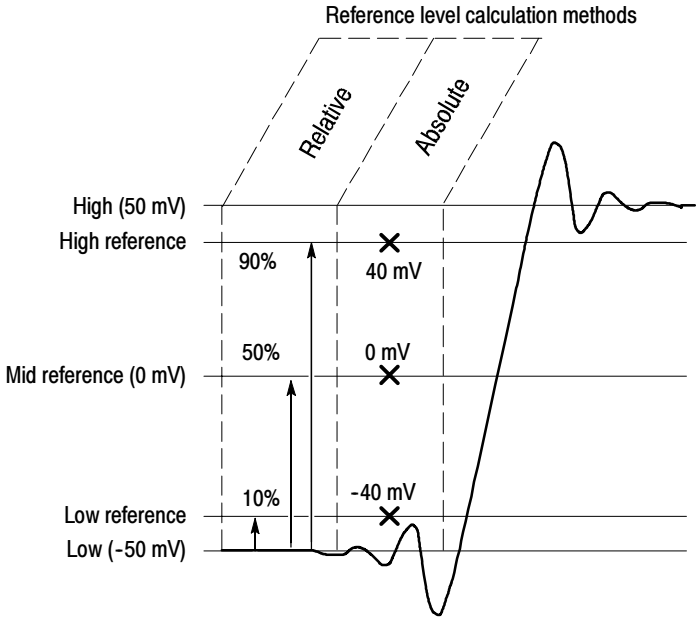
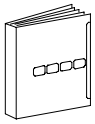


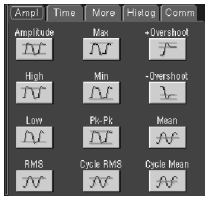
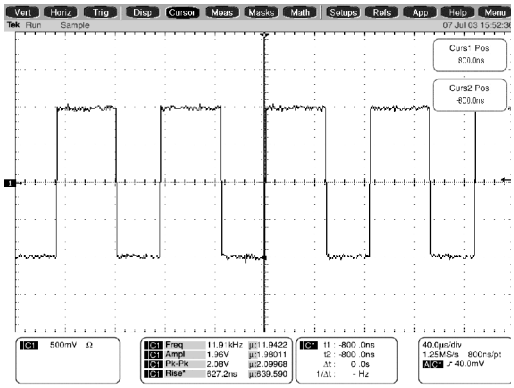
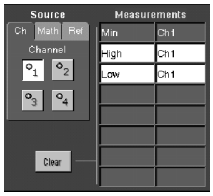
Figure 3-32: Reference-level calculation methods

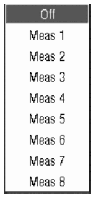
The High and Low levels from which the reference levels are calculated are the levels established using the selected Hi/Low method described on page 3–121.

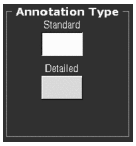
To Take Automatic Measurements

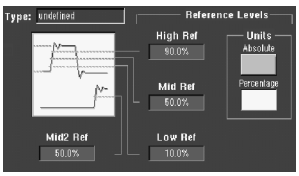
Use the procedure that follows to quickly take a measurement based on the default settings for High/Low and for reference-levels.

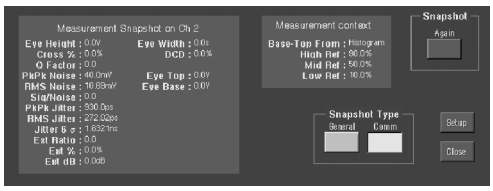
Overview	To take automatic measurements	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Obtain a stable display of the waveform to be measured.	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.

Overview	To take automatic measurements (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Select the waveform	**2.** From the toolbar, touch Meas to display the Measurement setup control window. **3.** To select the source waveform that you want to measure, select the Ch, Math, or Ref Source tab, and then touch the Channel, Math, or Reference button for the waveform. The waveform may be a channel, reference, or math waveform.	
Take automatic measurements	**4.** From the Measurement setup control window, select the Ampl, Time, More, Histog, or Comm (optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series) tab that contains the measurement that you want to take. **5.** Touch the button for the measurement that you want to take. For a list of the measurements this instrument can take, see *Appendix A: Automatic Measurements Supported*. The readout for the measurement is automatically displayed, and the measurement is added to the measurement list in the setup window. Measurements are displayed below the graticule area as shown here. If the area is occupied or there are too many measurements to fit in that area, measurements are displayed in the lower graticule area. In Roll mode measurements are not available until after you stop acquisitions.	 
Remove measurements	**6.** To remove the measurement, touch Clear, and the last measurement selected is removed. **7.** To remove any measurement in the measurement list, touch the measurement prior to touching the Clear button. More than one measurement can be selected. Touch the first measurement that you want to remove, drag across all of the measurements that you want to select, and then touch the Clear button. **8.** You can also toggle the display of measurements on and off by touching the Display button.	 

Overview	To take automatic measurements (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Display measurement statistics	**9.** From the Measurements setup control window, touch Setup Statistics.	
	10. From the Statistics control window, select Off, Mean, or All. ■ Off. Turns off measurement statistics ■ Mean. Displays the mean of measurements ■ All. Displays the Mean, Min, Max, and Standard Deviation of measurements	
	11. To set the number of measurements included in the measurement statistics, touch Weight n=, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the weighting.	
Annotate measurements	Measurement annotation graphically shows the position on the waveform of the elements from which the measurement result is derived. Horizontal bars, vertical bars, horizontal arrows, and vertical arrows indicate the elements used by the measurement. See *Measurement Annotations* on page A-9 for a description of the annotations. To annotate measurements, perform the following steps: **12.** From the Measurements setup control window, touch Setup Annotation.	
	13. From the drop down list, select the measurement to annotate. The readout of the annotated measurement contains an asterisk (*).	

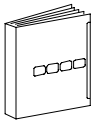
Overview	To take automatic measurements (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Show more annotation detail	**14.** To select the amount of annotation detail shown with a measurement, from the menu bar touch Utilities, User Preferences, and then select the Measurement tab to display the Annotation Type setup window. **15.** From the window select either the Standard or Detailed annotation type. Selecting Detailed displays more annotations than selecting standard.	
Set measurement reference levels	**16.** From the Measurements control window, touch Setup Ref Levs to display the Reference Levels setup control window. **17.** To use these settings for all measurements, toggle the Use On All Meas button to On. To set different values for some measurements, toggle the Use On all Meas button to Off.	

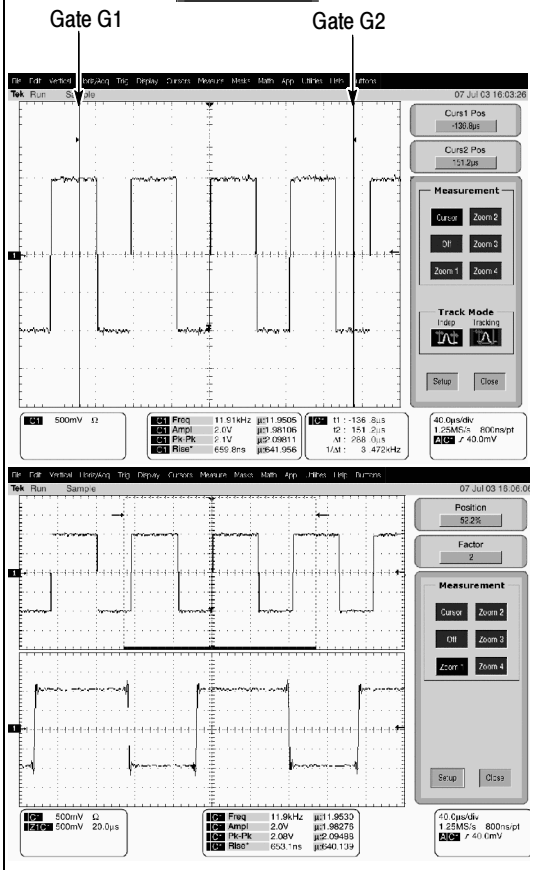
Overview	To take automatic measurements (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set measurement reference levels (Cont.)	**18.** To select how the instrument determines the base and top of the waveform, touch Min-Max, Histogram, or Histogram mean. ■ Min-max. Uses the highest and lowest values of the waveform record. This setting is best for examining waveforms that have no large, flat portions at a common value, such as sine waves and triangle waves — almost any waveform except for pulses. See Figure 3-31 on page 3-122. ■ Histogram. Selects the most common values above or below the midpoint. Since this approach ignores short term aberrations (overshoot, ringing, and so on), Histogram is the best setting for examining pulses. See Figure 3-31 on page 3-122. ■ Histogram mean. Calculates the mean value using all values either above or below the midpoint (depending on whether it is defining the high or low reference level). Histogram mean is best for examining eye patterns signals. **19.** To select the reference level units, touch Units Absolute or Percentage. ■ Absolute. Sets the units to absolute values in user units. ■ Percentage. Sets the units as a percentage of the High/Low range. **20.** To set the reference levels, touch HighRef, Mid Ref, Low Ref, or Mid2 Ref, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the levels.	 

Overview	To take automatic measurements (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Take a snapshot of measurements	**21.** From the Measurement setup control window, touch the Snapshot button (Comm Snapshot button if the Comm tab is selected) to display a window of all single waveform measurements or Comm measurements (optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series). ***Note**: Snapshot measurements are taken on the selected waveform. The Snapshot window tells you the waveform that the measurements are being taken on and the reference levels used.* **22.** Snapshot measurements are not continuously updated. To update snapshot measurements, touch the Snapshot Again button. To select the type of snapshot measurements, touch one of the Snapshot Type buttons: ■ Comm. Selects snapshots of Comm measurements (optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series) ■ General. Selects all single waveform measurements Phase, Delay, and Histogram measurements are not included in a snapshot.	 
For further assistance	**23.** Touch the Help button in the Measurements setup control window to access the online assistance. **24.** See *Appendix A: Automatic Measurements Supported,* on page A-1 for a list of the measurements and their definitions.	

To Localize a Measurement

Use the procedure that follows to take a measurement over a segment of the waveform (otherwise, the entire waveform is included in the measurement).

Overview	To gate a measurement	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Set up as from last procedure.	 See *To Take Automatic Measurements* on page 3-123

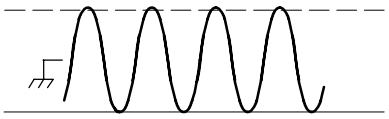
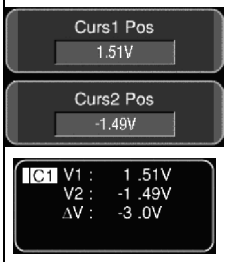
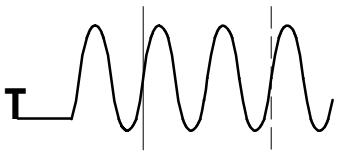
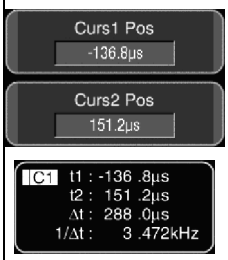
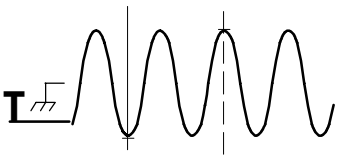
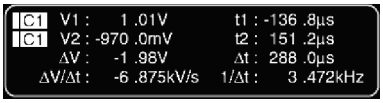
Overview	To gate a measurement (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Access gating	**2.** From the toolbar, select Meas, and then select Gating from the Measurement setup control window.	
Enable and position the gates	**3.** To select how to control the gated area, touch Measurement Gating Cursor, Zoom 1, Zoom 2, Zoom 3, Zoom 4, or Off: ■ Cursor. Sets the gated area to the area between the cursors. Use the multipurpose knobs to adjust the cursors on screen such that the area to measure is between the cursors. ■ Zoom 1 - 4. Sets the gated area to the waveform area contained in the Zoom graticule. ■ Off. Turns off measurement gating. Turning V Bar cursors off will not turn gating off. You must turn gating off in the Measurement Gating control window or the Zoom drop-down list.	 

Taking Cursor Measurements

Because cursor measurements give immediate feedback of the amplitude or time values they measure, they are usually quick to take and are more accurate than graticule measurements. Since you position cursors wherever you want them on the waveform, they are easier to localize to a waveform segment or feature than automatic measurements.

You can measure time or amplitude or both. Vertical cursors measure time or distance on screen, horizontal cursors measure voltage or amplitude, and waveform and screen cursors measure both. Table 3–6 expands on these definitions.

Table 3-6: Cursor functions (types)

Cursor function	Parameter measured	Cursor readout
 Horizontal cursors	Horizontal cursors measure amplitude (volts, watts). Each cursor measures with respect to: ■ V1 = Level @ Cursor 1 with respect to its source ground level ■ V2 = Level @ Cursor 2 with respect to its source ground level ■ ΔV = Level @ Cursor 2 - Level at Cursor 1 Level is cursor displacement from the source ground times the source volts/div. Note that the two cursors may have different sources and therefore can have different volts/div settings.	
 Vertical cursors	Vertical cursors measure distance (time in seconds or bits). Each cursor measures with respect to: ■ T1 = Time @ Cursor 1 with respect to the trigger point ■ T2 = Time @ Cursor 2 with respect to the trigger point ■ ΔT = Time @ Cursor 2 - Time @ Cursor 1 Time is divisions of displacement of the cursor from its source trigger point times the source time/div.	
 Waveform (and Screen) cursors	Waveform cursors measure both voltage and time. Each cursor is, in effect, both a vertical and horizontal cursor. You can select the style of the cursors. These waveform cursors cannot be moved off the waveform. Note that Screen cursors are the same as waveform cursors except that the cursors can be moved off the waveform.	 

Cursors can measure channel, reference, and math waveforms. You must set the source of each cursor explicitly in the Cursor Setup control window.

Using Cursors

Cursor operation is easy, you move the cursors on screen and read the results in the cursor readouts. The following key points will help you use the cursors effectively:

Cursor Types. The cursor types are described in Table 3–6 on page 3–130. There are two cursors displayed for all types, Cursor 1 and Cursor 2. You can move cursors with the multipurpose knobs or the cursor position controls in the Cursor Setup control window.

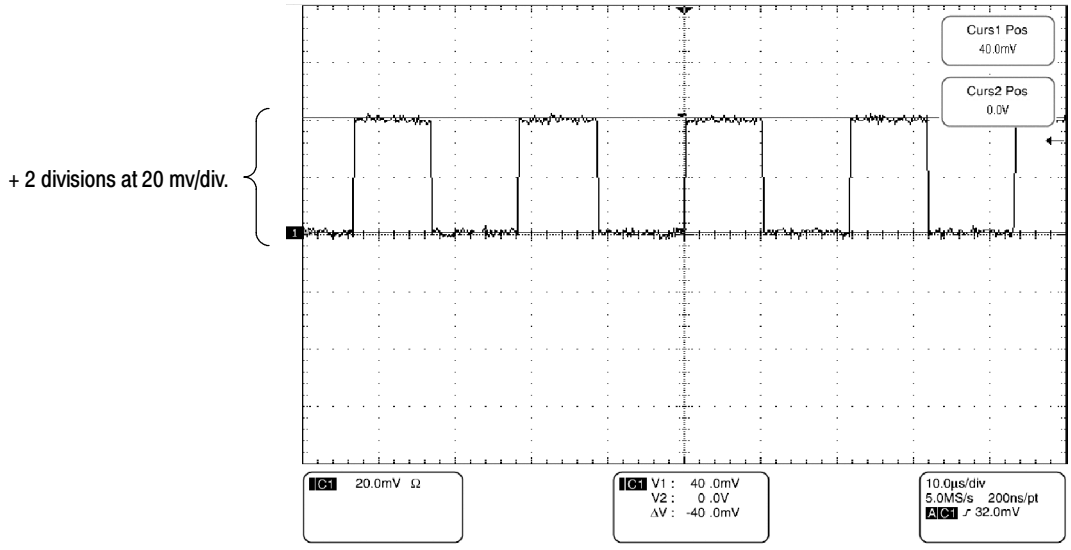


Figure 3- 33: Horizontal cursors measure amplitudes

Cursors are Display-Limited. You cannot move a cursor off screen. Also, if you resize waveforms, the cursors do not track. That is, a cursor stays at its screen position, ignoring changes to horizontal and vertical scale and position, and vertical offset (waveform cursors will track a waveform vertically).

Cursors Ignore the Selected Waveform. Each cursor measures its source, defined in the Cursors Setup dialog box. Selecting a waveform for scaling on screen (by pushing the CH 3 front-panel button, for example) does not change the source that each cursor measures.

After you have selected the source from the Cursors Setup control window, you can operate the cursor from the front-panel knobs and buttons.

Cursors Treat Sources Independently. Each cursor can take a different, independent source, with each source having its own amplitude scale.

- Cursor 1 is set to measure channel 3 (Ch3), which is set to 100 mV per division, so cursor readout v1 measures Ch3 relative to its ground as 3 divisions x 100 mV/div, or about 300 mV.
- Cursor 2 is set to measure reference 4 (Ref4), which is set to 20 mV per division, so cursor readout v2 measures R4 relative to its ground as 3 divisions x 20 mV/div, or about 60 mV.
- Note that the value of each graticule division is not readily apparent relative to the delta readout, because the delta-amplitude readout (Δv) must account for the different amplitude-scale settings of the sources. To do so, the Δv readout displays the results of v2 – v1 (60 mV – 300 mV = –240 mV), automatically accounting for the different scales of the cursor sources.

***NOTE**. If a cursor readout does not seem correct, check the source of each cursor in the Cursor setup dialog box. Each cursor readout relates to the amplitude and time base settings of its source.*

Vertical Cursors Measure from the Trigger Point. Remember that each vertical cursor measures the time from the trigger point to itself. This relationship is shown in Figure 3–34 on page 3–132.

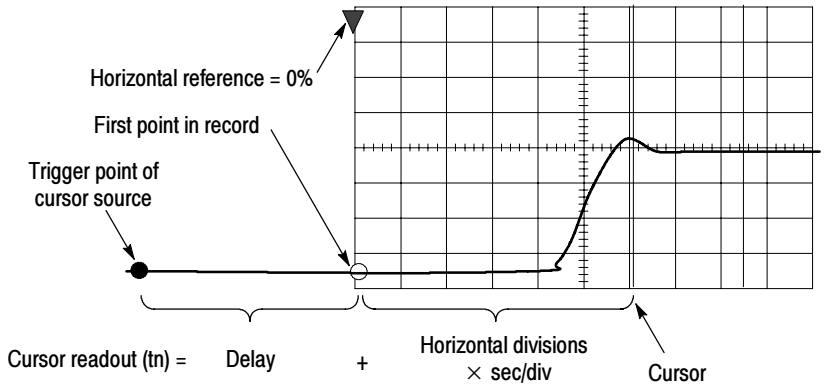


Figure 3-34: Components determining Time cursor readout values

Note that a vertical cursor readout includes and varies directly with the Time-to-First-Point component, which varies directly with the horizontal position set for the timebase. To see the amount of time to the first point, set Horizontal DELAY to 0.0 and set Horizontal Ref to 0%. Now the Horizontal position readout shows the time following the first point, and adding this value to the cursor readout yields the cursor position on screen relative to first point. (You can find the horizontal readout both in the control window and in the readout at the bottom of the screen.) The following relationships hold:

Time from First Point = Horiz. Position (when Horiz. Delay and Ref Position are zero)

T1 readout = Time to First Point + Additional Time to Cursor

Cursor Units Depend on Sources. A cursor that measures amplitude or time will read out in the units of its source as indicated in Table 3–7. Note mixed sources require Delta–Cursor readouts to follow units of the cursor 1 source.

Table 3-7: Cursor units

Cursors	Standard units[1]	Readout names
Horizontal	volts, watts	V1, V2, ΔV
Vertical	seconds, bits	T1, T2, ΔT, F1, F2, ΔF
Waveform, Screen	volts, watts, seconds, bits	V1, V2, ΔV, T1, T2, ΔT

[1] **If the V1 and V2 units do not match, the ΔV readout defaults to the units used by the V1 readout.**

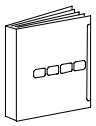
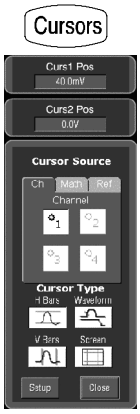
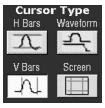
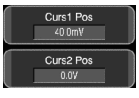
Multipurpose knobs. You can change cursor position using the position controls in the Cursor setup window, dragging the cursor into position using the touch screen or mouse, or by turning the front-panel multipurpose knobs.

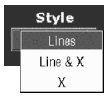
The multipurpose knobs also work with other controls. If a setup window item has an adjustable value, you can adjust it with the multipurpose knob or keypad after touching the setup control.

NOTE*. To make small changes with the multipurpose knobs, push the FINE button before turning the knob. When a FINE button is illuminated, its multipurpose knob makes smaller adjustments.*

To Set the Cursor Sources

You must target the cursors to the source they are to measure. (See *Cursors Treat Sources Independently* on page 3-132). To do so, use the procedure that follows.

Overview	To set the cursor sources	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Display the waveform to be measured on screen. The waveform may be a channel, reference, or math waveform.	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Display the cursor controls window	**2.** Push the CURSORS front-panel button, or from the toolbar, touch Cursors.	
Select the cursor sources	**3.** From the Cursor Source menu, select the channel, math, or reference tab, and then select the waveform to take cursor measurements on. If you are using Waveform or Screen cursors, your must select a source for both cursors by first touching a cursor button before selecting a source. ***Note.*** *If a waveform is not available, its source button is grayed out.*	
Select a cursor type	**4.** From the Cursor Type menu, select the H Bars, V Bars, Waveform, or Screen cursor type. See Table 3-6 on page 3-130 for an explanation of the cursor types.	
Change cursor position	**5.** To change the position of a cursor, use the multipurpose knobs or the keypad to move a cursor.	

Overview	To set the cursor sources (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set cursor tracking	**6.** To change the cursor tracking mode, from the Cursor controls window select Setup. **7.** Touch Track Mode Indep or Tracking: ■ Indep. Makes each cursor positionable without regard to the position of the other cursor. ■ Tracking. Makes both cursors move in unison and maintain a fixed horizontal or vertical distance between each other. **8.** To return to the Cursor controls window, touch the Controls button. **9.** To toggle the display of cursors on or off, touch the Cursor button. ***Note.*** *All adjustments that you can make in the Cursor controls window can also be made in this window.*	
Set cursor style	**10.** To change the waveform and screen cursor marker style, from the Cursor controls window, select Setup. **11.** Touch Style, and select Lines, Line & X, or X.	 
For further assistance	**12.** Touch the Help button in the Cursor setup control window or the Cursor controls window to access the online assistance.	

Taking Histograms

The instrument can display histograms constructed from the selected waveform data. You can display both vertical (voltage) and horizontal (time) histograms, but only one at a time. Use histogram measurements to get statistical measurement data for a section of a waveform along one axis.

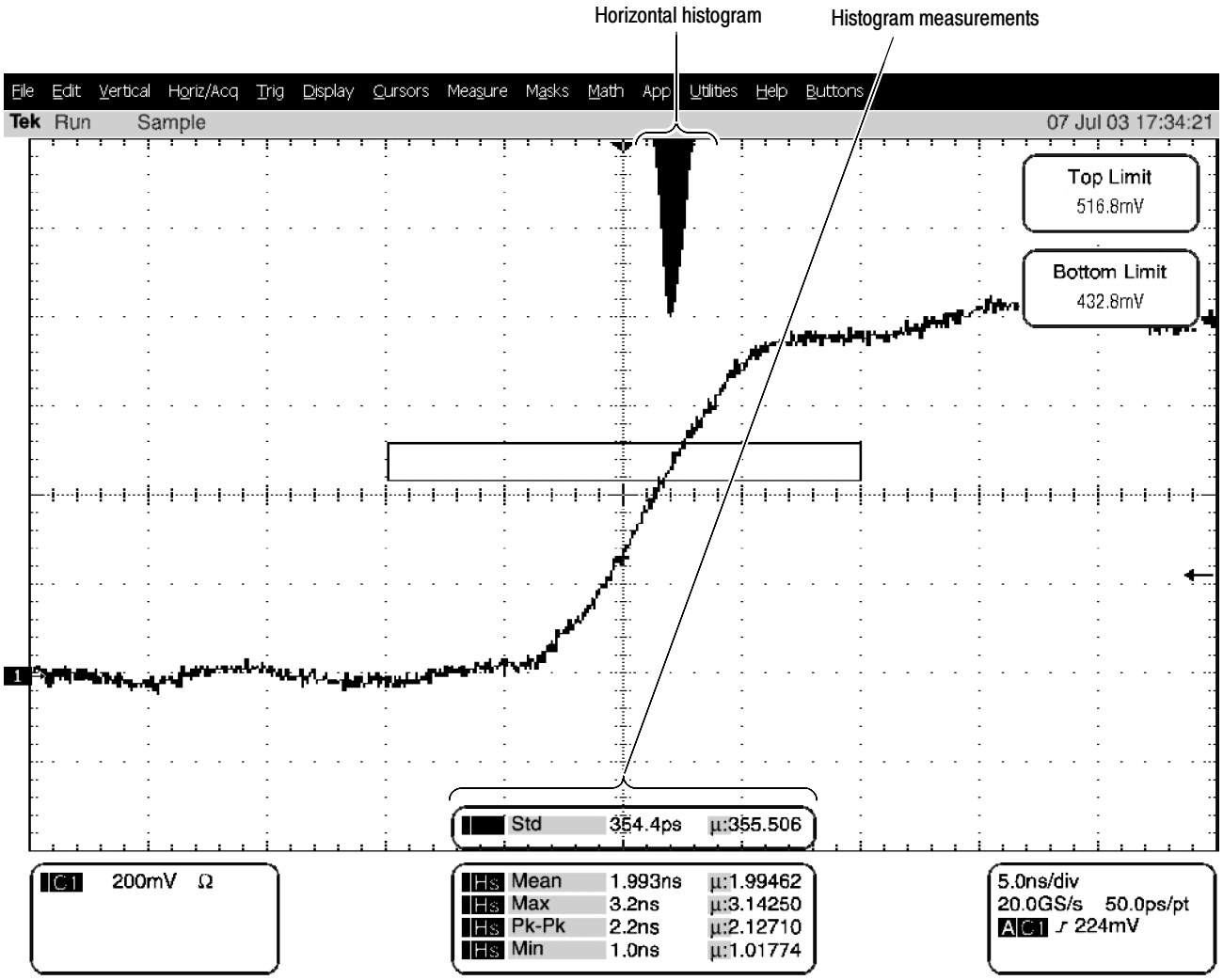


Figure 3- 35: Horizontal histogram view and measurement data

A histogram source can be any waveform (channel or math), including a reference waveform.

In addition to using limit controls to set histogram box boundaries, you can also use standard Windows drag-and-drop to resize and reposition the histogram box.

Histograms are not available in FastFrame, Record View XY, or Zoom modes.

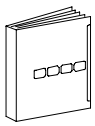
Using Histograms

Histogram Size. The maximum vertical histogram size is 200. The maximum horizontal size is 500.

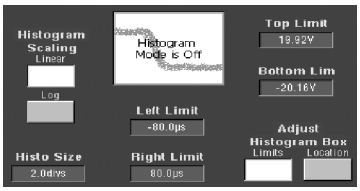
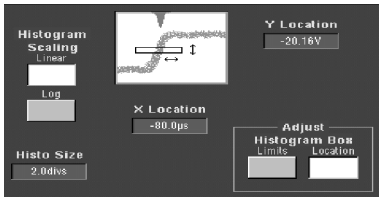
Histogram Counting Stays On. Turning on histograms starts histogram counting and data accumulation. A sample histogram display is shown in Figure 3–35. Histogram data is continuously accumulated until you explicitly turn off histograms. This allows you to continue collecting histogram data even when you turn off the histogram display.

To Start and Reset Histogram Counting

Use the procedure that follows to quickly take a measurement based on the default settings for histograms.

Overview	To start and reset histogram counting	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must have a waveform displayed.	 See page 3-98 for information on displaying waveforms.
Open histogram setup window	**2.** From the toolbar, touch the Meas button, and then touch the Histogram button to display the Histogram setup window.	

Overview	To start and reset histogram counting (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set, display, and reset histogram source and type	**3.** Select either the Source Ch, Math, or Ref tab, and then select the waveform source for the histogram.	
	4. Touch either Histogram Mode Horiz or Vert to start histogram counting and display the histogram data: ■ Horiz. Displays a horizontal histogram that shows how time varies in the histogram box ■ Vert. Displays a vertical histogram that shows how your vertical units vary in the histogram box ■ Off. Turns off histogram counting and display ***Note.*** *This control turns on histogram counting and data display. You can only display one type of histogram at a time.*	
	5. Touch Reset to reset the histogram count. Histograms track numbers of counts. Touching Reset resets those counts to zero and begins counting from zero.	
Set histogram display options	**6.** Touch Display to toggle the display of the selected histogram on and off. **7.** Select Linear to display histogram data linearly. Bin counts smaller than the maximum counts are scaled linearly by dividing the bin count by the maximum bin count. **8.** Select Log to display histogram data logarithmically. Bin counts smaller than the maximum counts are scaled logarithmically. Logarithmic scaling provides better visual details for bins with low counts.	

Overview	To start and reset histogram counting (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set histogram limit controls	**9.** Touch Adjust Histogram Box Limits, and use the Top Limit, Bottom Limit, Left Limit, and Right Limit controls to set the size of the histogram box. The histogram box selects the section of the waveform used for histograms. **10.** Touch Adjust Histogram Box Location, and use the X Location and Y Location controls to set the location of the histogram box.	 

Histogram Measurements

Table A–1 on page A–1 includes a list of the available histogram measurements and a brief description of each.

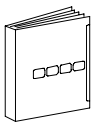
Optimizing Measurement Accuracy

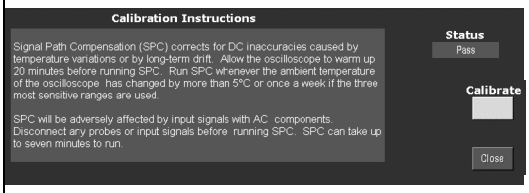
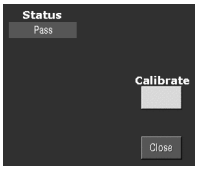
The procedures given here will increase the accuracy of the measurements that you take.

This instrument can compensate itself and the attached probes, optimizing the internal signal path used to acquire the waveforms you measure. Compensation optimizes the capability of the instrument to take accurate measurements based on the ambient temperature.

To Compensate the Instrument

To compensate the instrument so that it can take accurate measurements based on the ambient temperature, use the procedure that follows.

Overview	To compensate the instrument	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Instrument should be powered on. Allow a 20 minute warm up. Remove all input signals.	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and *Power on the Instrument* on page 1-8.

Overview	To compensate the instrument (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Display the calibration instructions	**2.** From the menu bar, select Utilities, and then select Instrument Calibration.	
Check the calibration status	**3.** The calibration status should be Pass. If the status is Warm-up, wait until the status changes. If the status does not change to Pass, use the following steps to calibrate the instrument. ***Note**: Signal Path Compensation is the only calibration that is accessible to users.*	
Calibrate the instrument	**4.** Touch Calibrate to start the calibration. Calibration may take several minutes. Calibration is complete after Working is no longer displayed in the Calibrate button and Running is no longer displayed in the Status readout.	
Check the calibration status	**5.** The calibration status should be Pass. If not, recalibrate the instrument, or have the instrument serviced by qualified service personnel.	
For further assistance	**6.** Touch the Help button to access the online assistance.	

To Connect the Probe Calibration Fixture

To compensate or calibrate probes you must connect the Probe Calibration and Deskew Fixture to the instrument; use the procedure in the manual that came with the deskew fixture: *Tektronix part number 067-0484-xx Deskew Fixture, Tektronix part number 071-7022-xx*.

To Calibrate Probes

To compensate the instrument so that it can take accurate measurements based on the ambient temperature, use the procedure in the manual that came with the deskew fixture: *Tektronix part number 067-0484-xx Deskew Fixture, Tektronix part number 071-7022-xx*.

To Deskew Channels

You can adjust a relative time delay for each channel. This lets you align the signals to compensate for signals that may come in from cables of differing lengths. The instrument applies deskew values after it completes each acquisition; therefore, the deskew values do not affect logic triggering.

To deskew channels, use the procedure in the manual that came with the deskew fixture: *Tektronix part number 067-0484-xx Deskew Fixture, Tektronix part number 071-7022-xx*.

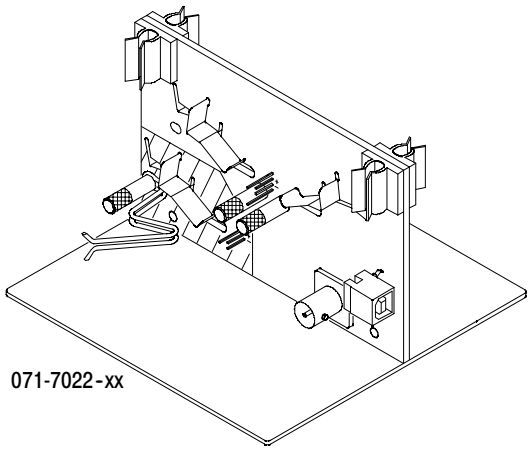
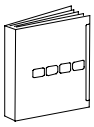
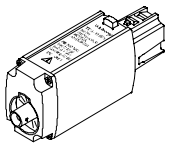
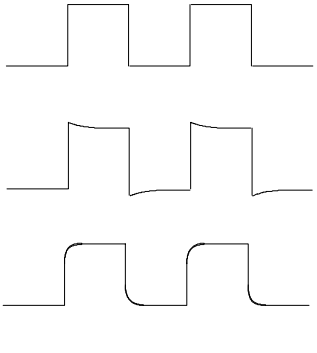
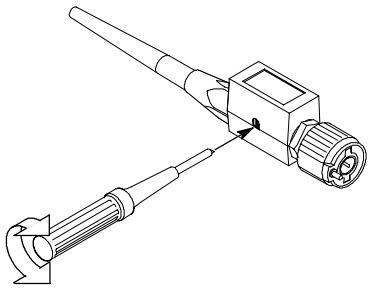


Figure 3-36: Probe calibration and deskew fixture

To Compensate Passive Probes

To compensate passive probes to ensure maximum distortion-free input to the instrument and to avoid high frequency amplitude errors, use the procedure that follows.

Overview	To compensate passive probes	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Instrument should be powered on. Allow a 20 minute warm up.	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and *Power on the Instrument* on page 1-8.
Use adapter	**2.** If your probe is a 1 M Ohm probe without a TCA interface, connect it to the instrument using a TCA-1MEG adapter.	
Low frequency compensation	**3.** Connect fixture to the instrument (see *To Connect the Probe Calibration Fixture* on page 3-141). **4.** Connect one probe to the fixture. **5.** Push the **AUTOSET** button on the instrument. **6.** Adjust the probe compensation box for best square corner:  Probe compensated correctly Probe overcompensated Probe undercompensated **7.** Remove the connections.	 AUTOSET 

Overview	To compensate passive probes (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
For further assistance	**8.** Touch the Help button to access the online assistance.	

Serial Mask Testing

The instrument provides a portfolio of masks (optional on the TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series) for verifying compliance to electrical standards. You can verify circuit design performance and perform interface compliance testing. Mask testing results are reported live, providing real time feedback. Mask hits are highlighted on the display and accompanied by readouts indicating the number of waveforms tested, pass/fail results, and hit counts.

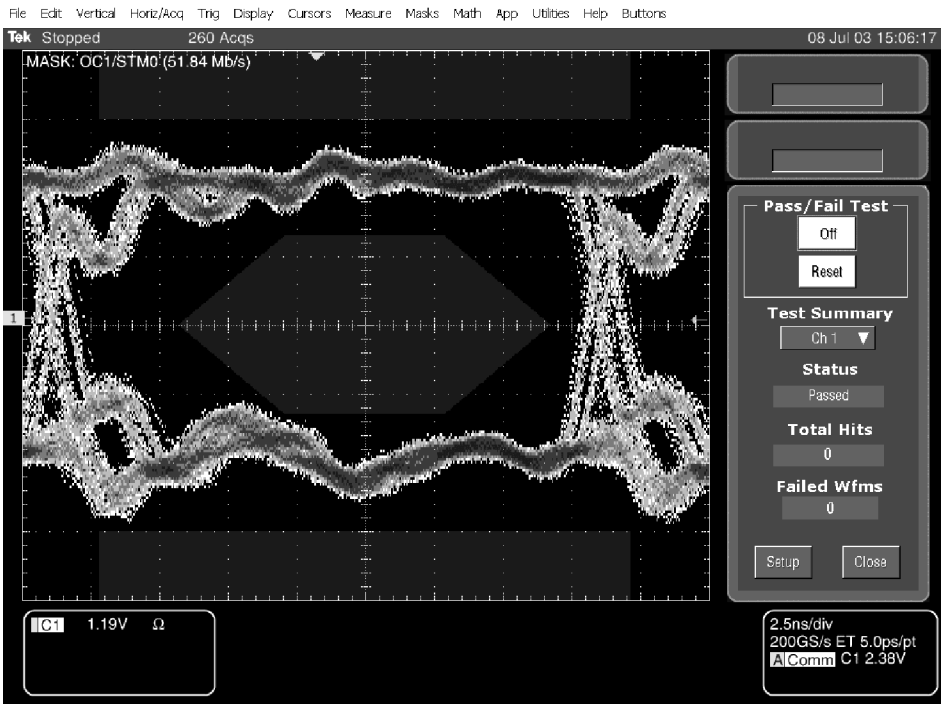
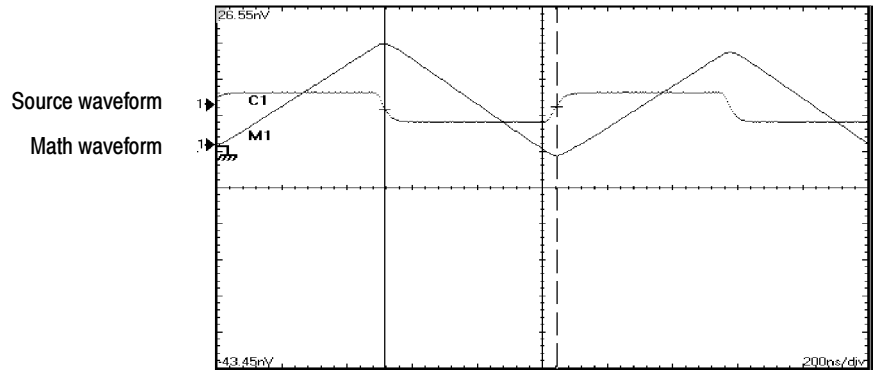


Figure 3- 37: Pass/Fail mask testing

For detailed information on using Serial Mask Testing to test your signals for compliance to electrical standards see the *TDS6000B Option SM Serial Mask Testing and Option ST Serial Triggering User Manual*.

Creating and Using Math Waveforms

Once you have acquired waveforms or taken measurements on waveforms, the instrument can mathematically combine them to create a waveform that supports your data-analysis task. For example, you might have a waveform obscured by background noise. You can obtain a cleaner waveform by subtracting the background noise from your original waveform (note that the background noise you subtract must be identical to the noise in your signal). Or, you can integrate a single waveform into an integral math waveform as shown below.



With spectral analysis you can analyze waveforms in the frequency domain. The interface is similar to a dedicated spectrum analyzer, relieving you of the burden of knowing the details of the underlying algorithms (see Figure 3–38).

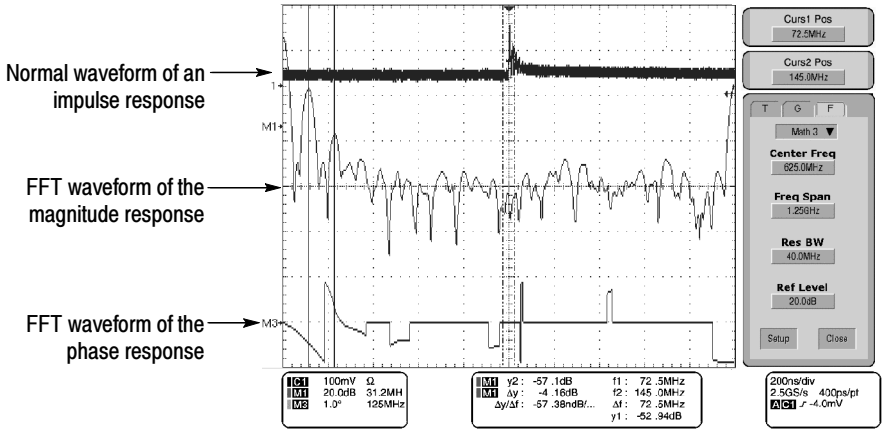


Figure 3- 38: Spectral analysis of an impulse

Defining Math Waveforms

This instrument supports mathematical combination and functional transformations of waveforms it acquires. Figure 3–39 shows this concept:

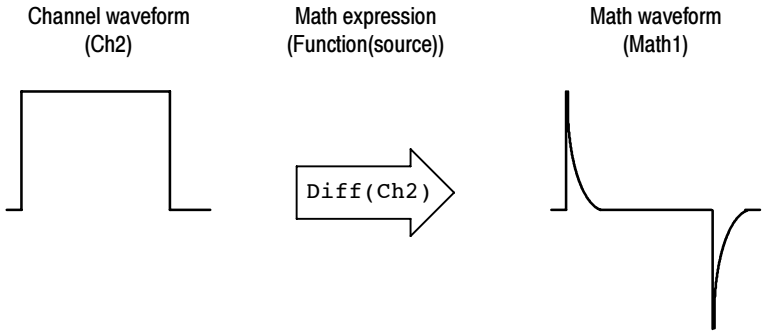


Figure 3- 39: Functional transformation of an acquired waveform

You create math waveforms to support the analysis of your channel and reference waveforms. By combining and transforming source waveforms and other data into math waveforms, you can derive the data view that your application requires. You can create math waveforms that result from:

- Mathematical operations on one or several waveforms: add, subtract, multiply, and divide
- Logical operations: greater than, less than, less than or equal, greater than or equal, not equal or equal
- Variables that you set
- Regular scalars such as 3.14
- Function transforms of waveforms, such as integrating, differentiating, and so on
- Spectral analysis of waveforms, such as an impulse
- Measurement scalars can be used in expression; for example, you can use the measurement feature this instrument provides to measure the average of a waveform and subtract it from the original waveform to define a new math waveform

You can create up to four math waveforms; see *Using Math* on page 3–147 for more examples.

Math waveforms can be used in other math. Math waveforms autoscale when the math waveform is first defined and turned on. Advanced functions, such as

integrate, differentiate, average, square root, and log, can be taken on single waveforms or complicated expressions.

In FastFrame, math is applied to each frame.

Some operations that you cannot use with math waveforms follow:

- **Circular Math-on-Math, Measurements in Math, and Measurements on Math**—You cannot use circular definitions of math waveforms. For example, if you define Math2 = Ch1 – Math1, and then define a second math waveform as Math3 = Ch2 + Math2, you cannot define a third math waveform as Math1 = Math2 + Ch3. If you do, the Math1 definition is rejected with an error because a circular definition is not allowed.
- **Measurements**—Meas1 – Meas8 are allowed in a math definition, but not measurement functions, such as rise (Ch1).
- **Roll Mode**—Math is updated when acquisition is stopped.

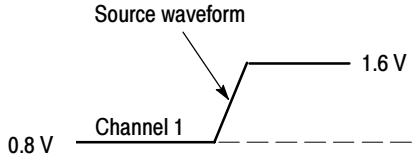
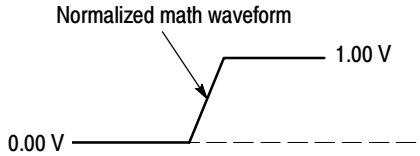
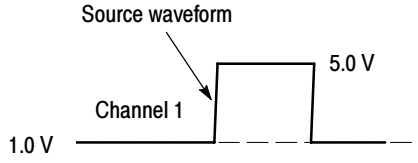
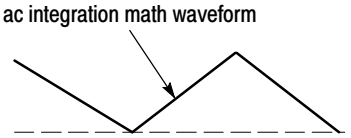
Using Math

The following topics provide details that can help you create the math waveform that best supports your data-analysis tasks.

How to Create. You create math waveforms when you create a math expression. You do so by applying numerical constants, math operators and functions to operands, which can be channel waveforms, reference waveforms, math waveforms, or measurements (scalars). You can display and manipulate these derived math waveforms much like you can the channel and reference waveforms (see *Operations on Math Waveforms* on page 3–156).

Some examples of typical math waveforms follow:

Table 3-8: Math expressions and the math waveforms produced

To. . .	Enter this math expression. . .	and get this math waveform. . .
Normalize a waveform 	. . . (Ch1 - Meas1)/ Meas2, where Ch1 is the waveform shown at left Meas1 = Low of Ch1 Meas2 = Amplitude of Ch1	. . . 
Simulate ac coupling 	. . . Intg(Ch1-Meas1), where Ch1 is the waveform shown at left Meas1 = Mean or Cycle Mean of Ch1	dc component removed before integration 

Sources. Math Waveforms can incorporate the following sources:

- Channel waveforms
- Reference waveforms
- Measurements (automated measurements) that measure channel, reference, histogram, or math waveforms
- Math waveforms

Source Dependencies. Math waveforms that include sources as operands are affected by updates to those sources:

- Shifts in amplitude or DC level of input sources that cause the source to clip also clips the waveform data supplied to the math waveform.
- Changes to the vertical offset setting for a channel source that clips its data also clips the waveform data supplied to the math waveform.
- Changes to the acquisition mode globally affects all input channel sources, thereby modifying any math waveforms using them. For example, with the acquisition mode set to Envelope, a Ch1 + Ch2 math waveform will receive enveloped channel 1 and channel 2 data and, therefore, will also be an envelope waveform.

- Clearing the data in a waveform source causes a baseline (ground) to be delivered to any math waveform that includes that source until the source receives new data.

Expression Syntax. You build math waveforms using the Define/Edit Expression control window. To help you create valid math waveforms, this window blocks most illegal entries by disabling any window element that would create an invalid entry in the math waveform expression.

The syntax that follows describes valid math expressions, which can be quite complex (in excess of 100 characters long):

<MathWaveform> := <Expression>

<Expression> := <UnaryExpression> | <BinaryExpression>

<UnaryExpression> := <UnaryOperator> (<Term>)
| <UnaryOperator> (<Expression>)

<BinaryExpression> := <Term> <BinaryOperator> <Term> | <Scalar>
<BinaryOperator> <Term> | <Term> <BinaryOperator> <Scalar>

<Term> := <Waveform> | (<Expression>)

<Scalar> := <Integer> | <Float> | <Meas-Result> | <Variable>

<Waveform> := <ChannelWaveform> | <ReferenceWaveform> | <MathWaveform>

<ChannelWaveform> := Ch1 | Ch2 | Ch3 | Ch4

<ReferenceWaveform> := Ref1 | Ref2 | Ref3 | Ref4

<MathWaveform> := Math1 | Math2 | Math3 | Math4

<UnaryOperator> := Average | Integral | Derivative | Invert | Sqrt | Exp
| log 10 | log e | Fabs | Sin | Min | Max | Ceil | Cos | Tan
| ASin | Sinh | ACos | Cosh | ATan | Tanh | Floor
| Spectral Magnitude | Spectral Phase | Spectral Real | Spectral Imag

<BinaryOperator> := + | - | / | * | == | != | < | <= | > | >= | CHS | EXX

The logical operators generate a vector that is all 0.0 or 1.0. Operators && and || are not provided, but if x and y are expressions equal to 0 or 1, then x*y is the same as x&&y and (x+y)>0.99 is the same as x||y.

<Meas-Result> := meas1 | meas2 | meas3 | meas4 | meas5 | meas6 | meas7 | meas8

<Variable> :>= VAR1 | VAR2 | VAR3 | VAR4 | VAR5 | VAR6 | VAR7 | VAR8 |

Waveform Differentiation. The math capabilities of the instrument include waveform differentiation. This allows you to display a derivative math waveform that indicates the instantaneous rate of change of the waveform acquired.

Derivative waveforms are used in the measurement of slew rate of amplifiers and in educational applications. You can create a derivative math waveform and then use it as a source for another derivative waveform. The result is the second derivative of the waveform that was first differentiated.

The math waveform, derived from the sampled waveform, is computed based on the following equation:

$$Y_n = (X_{(n+1)} - X_n)\frac{1}{T}$$

Where: X is the source waveform

Y is the derivative math waveform

T is the time between samples

Since the resultant math waveform is a derivative waveform (See Figure 3–40), its vertical scale is in volts/second (its horizontal scale is in seconds). The source signal is differentiated over its entire record length; therefore, the math waveform record length equals that of the source waveform less 1 point.

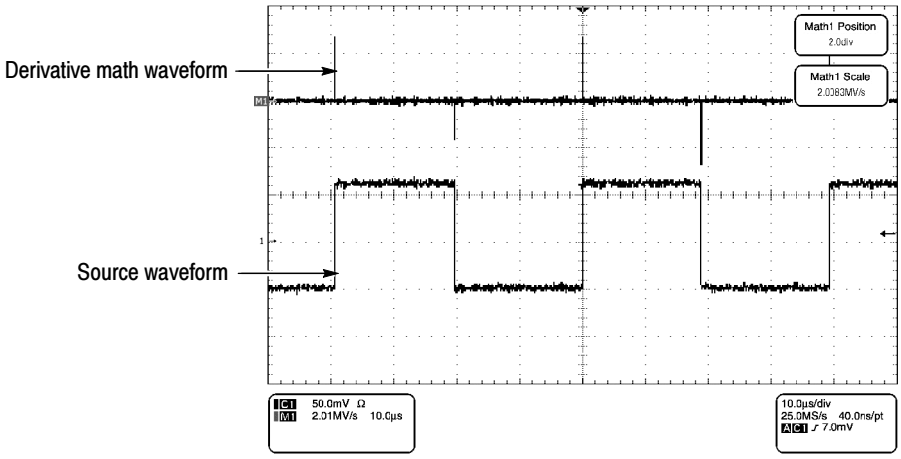


Figure 3- 40: Derivative math waveform

Cursor Measurements. You can also use cursors to measure derivative waveforms. Use the same procedure as is found under *Take cursor measurements* on page 3–159. When using that procedure, note that the amplitude measurements on a derivative waveform will be in volts per second rather than in volt-seconds as is indicated for the integral waveform measured in the procedure.

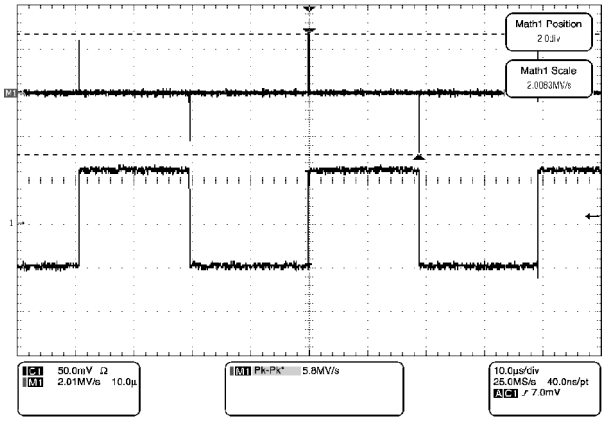


Figure 3- 41: Peak-peak amplitude measurement of a derivative waveform

Offset, Position, and Scale. The settings that you make for offset, scale, and position affect the math waveform that you obtain. Note the following tips for obtaining a good display:

- You should scale and position the source waveform so that it is contained on screen. (Off screen waveforms may be clipped, resulting in errors in the derivative waveform).
- You can use vertical position and vertical offset to position your source waveform. The vertical position and vertical offset will not affect your derivative waveform unless you position the source waveform off screen so it is clipped.

Waveform Integration. The Math capabilities of the instrument include waveform integration. This allows you to display an integral math waveform that is an integrated version of the acquired waveform.

Integral waveforms find use in the following applications:

- Measuring power and energy, such as in switching power supplies
- Characterizing mechanical transducers, as when integrating the output of an accelerometer to obtain velocity

The integral math waveform, derived from the sampled waveform, is computed based on the following equation:

$$y(n) = scale \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{x(i) + x(i-1)}{2} T$$

Where: x(i) is the source waveform

y(n) is a point in the integral math waveform

scale is the output scale factor

T is the time between samples

Since the resultant math waveform is an integral waveform, its vertical scale is in volt-seconds (its horizontal scale is in seconds). The source signal is integrated over its entire record length; therefore, the math waveform record length equals that of the source waveform.

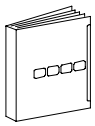
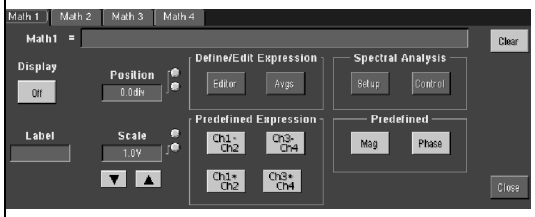
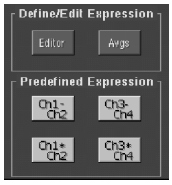
Offset and Position. When creating integrated math waveforms from live channel waveforms, consider the following topics:

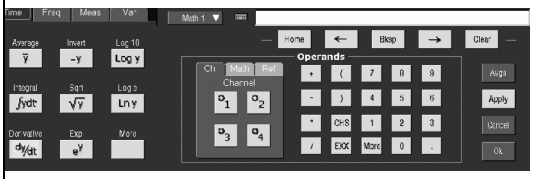
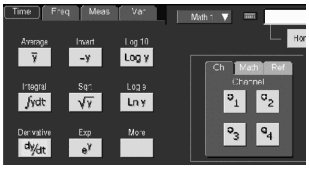
- You should scale and position the source waveform so that it is contained on screen. (Off screen waveforms may be clipped, which will result in errors in the integral waveform).
- You can use vertical position and vertical offset to position your source waveform. The vertical position and vertical offset will not affect your integral waveform unless you position the source waveform off screen so that it is clipped.

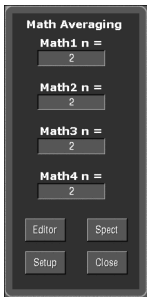
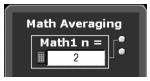
DC Offset. The source waveforms that you connect to the instrument often have a DC offset component. The instrument integrates this offset along with the time varying portions of your waveform. Even a minor division of offset in the source waveform may be enough to ensure that the integral waveform saturates (clips), especially with long record lengths.

To Define a Math Waveform

Use the procedure that follows when defining a math waveform. Remember, to ensure that the sources you use exist. Acquisitions should be running or the channels should already be on, and reference waveform sources should contain saved waveforms, and so on. These sources do not have to be displayed to be used.

Overview	To define a math waveform	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** All channel and reference Waveforms and automatic measurement scalars that you will use in your math waveform must be available (channels and references contain data, measurement scalars are defined, and so on).	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Display the math control window	**2.** From the toolbar, touch the Math button to display the Define Math control window.	
Select a math waveform	**3.** Select the Math(x) tab for the math waveform that you want to define. Be sure to touch Display to toggle it on, so that the waveform displays. If the math waveform that you select has already been defined, its math expression appears in the window. You can still use the waveform by touching the Clear button, which discards its previous math expression. Or repeat step 3 to select another waveform.	
To define an expression	**4.** Touch one of the Predefined Expression buttons to use a predefined math expression, or touch Editor to Define/Edit a new math expression.	

Overview	To define a math waveform (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
To define/edit a math expression	**5.** Use the control window at right to define a math expression. See Table 3-8 on page 3-148 for expression examples; some guidelines for creating your expression follow: ■ Sources — Ch1-Ch4, Ref1-Ref4, and Meas1-Meas8 — should be set up before you use them (channels acquired or acquisitions running, references and automated measurement scalars defined). ■ Math definitions are not implemented if sources or other elements of the definition are not valid. ■ Use the backspace button to remove the last entry; use the clear key to remove the entire expression and start over. ■ Use parentheses to group terms in the expression to control execution order, for example; 5*(Ch1 + Ch2).	
Select a function	**6.** Select the Time, Freq, Meas, or Var tabs to display the available functions.	
	7. Touch a function button to enter the function in the math expression. Select an operand for the function to operate on.	
	8. Use the Home and arrow buttons to move within the math expression. Use the Bksp (backspace) button to delete portions of the expression.	
	9. Touch Apply to apply your new math expression to the math waveform.	

Overview	To define a math waveform (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Apply averaging	**10.** Touch Avgs to display the Math Averaging control window. The controls in the window apply to the math waveform defined by the expression. **11.** Select one of the Math(x) n = controls and set the number of averages using the multipurpose knobs or keypad. This number of averages affect math waveforms if the Avg() function is used. **12.** Touch Close to close the window, touch Editor to open the Define/Edit Expression window, touch Setup to open the math control window, or touch Spect to open the Spectral control window.	 
Finished	**13.** Once you have defined the math expression to your satisfaction, Touch the the apply button. Then touch the OK button to dismiss the dialog box. See *To Use Math Waveforms* on page 3-157 for more procedures.	
For further assistance	**14.** Touch the Help button in the toolbar to access context-sensitive help on math waveforms.	

Operations on Math Waveforms

This instrument supports many of the same operations for math waveforms that it provides for channel (live) and reference waveforms. For example, you can measure math waveforms with cursors. This section introduces these operations.

- Vertical display scaling and positioning
- Taking automatic measurements
- Taking cursor measurements
- Histograms on math waveforms

Many of the same instrument tools that prove to be powerful adjuncts for displaying, processing, and analyzing other waveforms also work on math waveforms. For example, in addition to the operations listed above, you can save math waveforms as references.

Independent horizontal scaling. Each math waveform that you create derives its horizontal scale and position from the sources that you include in its math expression. You can adjust these controls for the source waveforms, and your adjustments will reflect in the math waveform as the sources update. You can also magnify all waveforms, including math waveforms, using zoom.

Using Math Waveforms

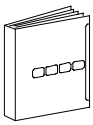
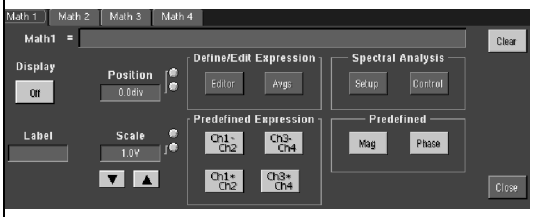
Basically, you use the same techniques to work with math waveforms that work with channel waveforms.

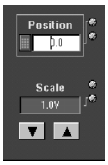
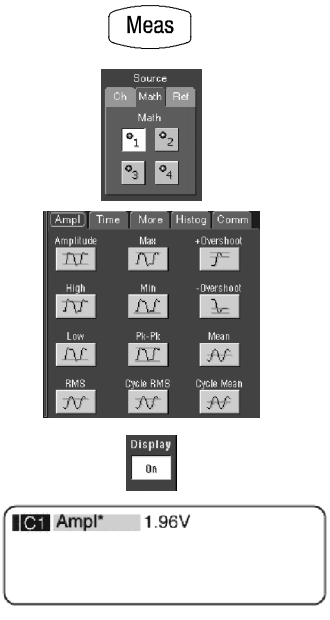
Consider the Source. Changes to source waveforms that you include as math-expression operands are reflected in the math waveform. However, if Ch1 is 4 divisions high at 100 mV per division, then at 50 mV per division Ch1 is 8 divisions high. Any math using Ch1 will not be affected by this change because the Ch1 voltage levels have not changed. See *Source Dependencies* on page 3–148.

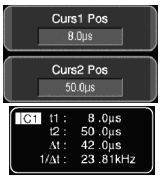
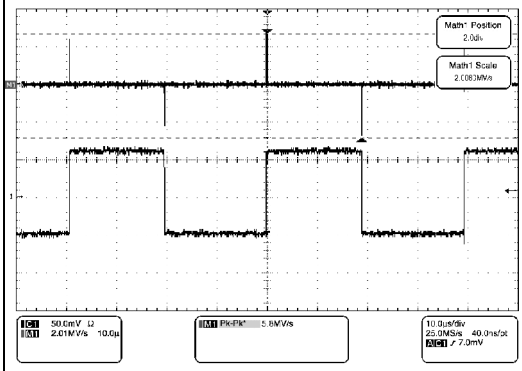
How to manage displaying. Turn on and off the display of math waveforms from the Math control window. Use the same control-window controls (waveform selection buttons, vertical position, and vertical scale knobs). Mouse or touch screen operations for positioning waveforms on screen work also.

To Use Math Waveforms

The procedure that follows demonstrates some common operations that you can perform on math waveforms:

Overview	To use math waveforms	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The Math waveform must be defined and displayed. See the reference listed at right.	 See *To Define a Math Waveform* on page 3-153
Select and display	**2.** Touch the Math button to display the Math control window. **3.** Touch any Math(x) tab to make that math waveform the selected waveform. ■ If the waveform that you select is not defined, use the *To Define a Math Waveform* procedure starting on page 3-153 to define the math waveform. ■ If the waveform is not displayed, touch Display to toggle it on.	 

Overview	To use math waveforms (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set scale and position	**4.** Touch Position or Scale and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to size and position the waveform on screen as you want it. ***Note.*** *Position is in divisions, so changing the scale can make the math waveform disappear until position is also changed (the same effect happens with channel waveforms).* You can touch and drag a waveform handle to change the waveform vertical position. You can adjust the waveform vertical position and scale by first touching the waveform handle and then using the multipurpose knobs to adjust the scale and position. You cannot adjust the offset of a math waveform. You cannot adjust horizontal scale, position, and sample density (resolution) of math waveforms; different length source waveforms result in a math waveform of the shortest source record length. If you adjust these settings for sources for a math waveform, the adjustment is reflected in the math waveform.	
Take automatic measurements	**5.** Touch the Meas button, select the Math tab, and touch a math button to choose a math waveform from Math1 - Math4. (See right.) **6.** Select a measurement (for more information, see *Taking Automatic Measurements* on page 3–119). Touch the Help button in the menu bar for more information. **7.** To display the measurement, touch Display to toggle it to on. **8.** Read the results in the measurements readout.	

Overview	To use math waveforms (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Take cursor measurements	You can also use cursors to measure math waveforms. Use the same procedures found under *Taking Cursor Measurements* on page 3-130. **9.** From the toolbar, touch the Cursor button to display the cursors and the cursor control window. **10.** Select the Math tab and touch the numbered button for the math waveform that you want to measure. **11.** Select the cursor type by touching either the H Bars, V Bars, Waveform, or Screen buttons (for more information, see *Taking Cursor Measurements* starting on page 3-130). **12.** Turn the multipurpose knobs to position each cursor on the math waveform to measure the feature that interests you. **13.** Read the results in the cursor readout. The cursor readout is displayed under the multipurpose readouts or in the upper right corner of the graticule area. ***Note.*** *Amplitude measurements on a derivative waveform are in volts per second and volt-seconds for an integral waveform measurement.*	  
For further assistance	**14.** Touch the Help button in the toolbar to access context-sensitive help on math waveforms, or see *Measuring Waveforms* on page 3-119.	

Defining Spectral Math Waveforms

The math capabilities of the instrument include spectrum analysis of a waveform. This section describes a spectral analyzer that allows you to control the analysis intuitively with time domain and frequency domain controls. These controls merge the time domain controls with the frequency domain controls to provide a complete spectral analyzer.

Signals may be represented by their characteristics in both the time and the frequency domain. By combining and transforming source waveforms into spectral math waveforms, you can simultaneously view signal characteristics in both domains.

This spectral analyzer provides a complete set of controls and features that allow you to make time and frequency domain measurements without the need to learn extensive details about FFT algorithms.

- **Frequency Domain Controls:** You can operate the spectral analyzer using traditional spectrum analyzer controls. You can set the center frequency, span, and resolution bandwidth directly.
- **Time Domain Controls:** The spectral analyzer has time domain controls for the acquired waveform. These controls set the time duration and the resolution time between samples. You can easily set the required sample rate and record length.
- **Gating Controls:** These controls are the bridge that connect the time domain to the frequency domain. You can perform spectral analysis on a gated region of the input waveform. This gating also determines the resolution bandwidth of the analyzer.
- **Window Functions:** There are eight different window functions that shape the filter response of the spectral analyzer.
- **Magnitude Versus Frequency:** You can choose to display data in dB or linear mode. You may display the real or imaginary parts of the spectral magnitude only. Ref level offset and reference level controls give complete control over the vertical position and offset of the spectrum. The log zero dB ref level may be dialed in manually or set to dBm with a single button touch.
- **Phase Versus Frequency:** You can display phase data as a function of frequency in radians or degrees. You can zero the noise phase for magnitudes below a threshold level. Finally, you can select Phase unwrap and $d\theta/d\omega$, group delay.
- **Spectral Averaging:** You can turn on averaging in the frequency domain for phase and magnitude waveforms.

- **Multiple analyzer control locks:** Up to four spectral analyzers may be used simultaneously. They may all be assigned to different gates on the same source waveform or to different channel sources. The controls of Math1 and Math2 may be locked and the controls of Math3 and Math4 may be locked; that is, turning a control on one analyzer changes the control on the other analyzer to the same value. Other combinations of locking, including all four analyzers, are available using GPIB commands.

The same exclusions for math waveforms apply to spectral math waveforms. In addition, sources for spectral math waveforms must be channel waveforms.

Using Spectral Math Controls

Read the following topics; they provide details that can help you create the spectral waveform that best supports your data-analysis tasks.

The spectral analyzer contains five primary control categories. These are shown in Table 3–9.

Table 3-9: Spectral analyzer controls

Time controls	Gate controls	Frequency controls	Magnitude controls	Phase controls
Source	Position	Center	dB, dBm linear, real imaginary	degrees, radians, group delay
Duration, record length	Duration	Span	Ref level	Zero threshold
Duration, sample rate	Window	Resolution bandwidth	Ref level offset	Phase Unwrap
Resolution				

Using the time controls. The operation of the time domain controls for the spectral analyzer is summarized by the following rules:

- Duration selects the time from the beginning to the end of the acquired waveform. You may set duration using the record length control or the sample rate control.
- Resolution determines the time between samples. Duration is kept constant as resolution is changed. Therefore, the Resolution control affects both the sample rate and the record length simultaneously.
- Most often, you will want to use a short record length because long record lengths can slow instrument response. However, long record lengths lower the noise relative to the signal and increase the frequency resolution for the spectral math waveform. More important, they might be needed to capture the waveform feature you want to include in the waveform.

Examples of how duration and resolution affect the acquired waveform are shown in Figure 3–42.

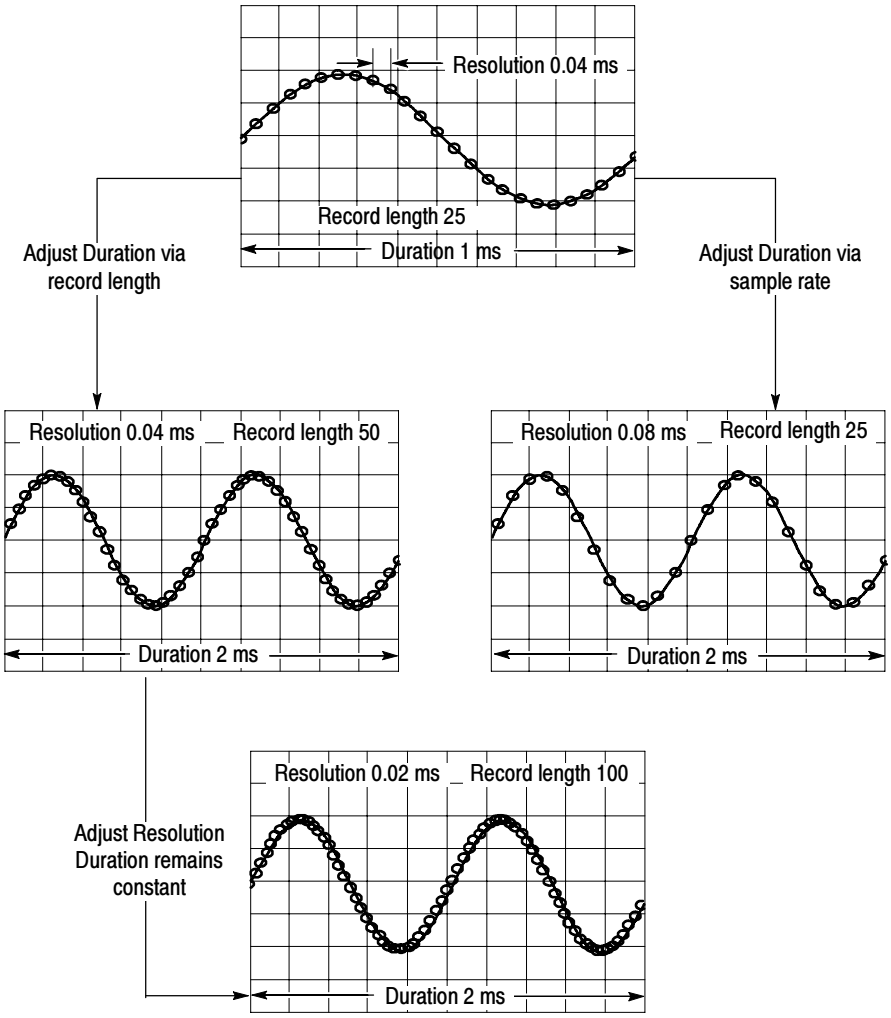


Figure 3- 42: Duration and resolution control effects

Using the gate controls. Gating determines what portion of the acquired waveform is transformed into the frequency domain. The gate has a position and a width control.

The gate position is the time in seconds from the trigger location to the center 50% position of the gate interval (see Figure 3-43). The position and width units are seconds.

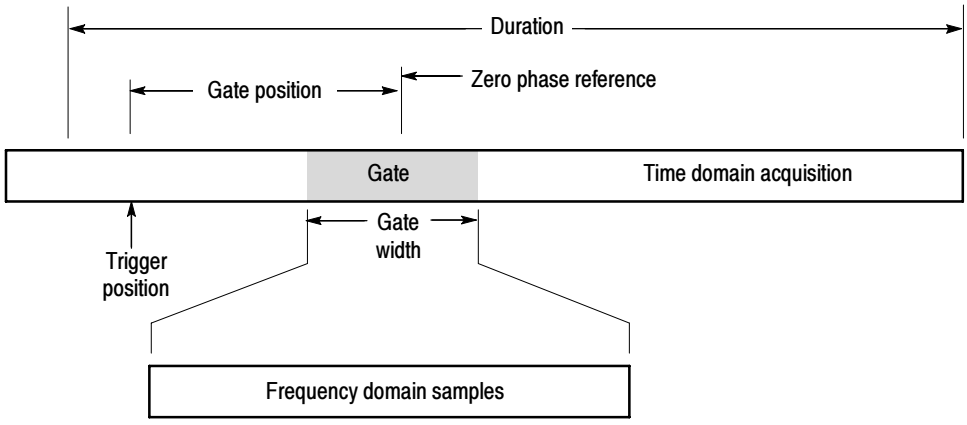


Figure 3- 43: Definition of gate parameters

The gate must reside within the duration interval of the source waveform. If the source waveform duration is adjusted and the gate position and width would result in the gate being outside of that duration then the gate position or width is set within the limits.

The width of the gate affects the resolution bandwidth of the spectral analyzer. See *Using Spectral Math Controls* on page 3–161 for more details.

The data contained in the gated region is transformed to the frequency domain.

The gate is identified on the display using dashed markers (similar to cursors). The default gate width setting is equal to the duration of the source waveform.

Using the Frequency Domain controls. The gated region of the source waveform is transformed by the spectral analyzer to a spectral waveform. This may be a phase or magnitude waveform. The horizontal units are always Hz. The vertical units depend on whether phase or magnitude is selected. The frequency domain controls for the spectral waveform are span, center, and resolution bandwidth. The spectrum normally appears on the display fit to a screen width of 10 divisions.

- Span. The span is the stop frequency at the end of the spectral waveform minus the start frequency at the beginning of the waveform. The span control maximum value is equal to the current sample rate divided by two. Therefore, if you are unable to increase the span to the desired value and if you want to keep the same source waveform duration, go to the timebase controls and increase the sample rate using the resolution control. Or, if you want to also decrease the source waveform duration, adjust the sample rate control. If you decrease the sample rate, the span setting may decrease, if necessary, to keep the span less than the sample rate divided by two.

- Center. This is the frequency at the center of the spectral waveform. Center is equal to the start frequency plus one half of the span. The adjustment range depends on the sample rate and the current span setting. Remember that the span must always be in the interval of zero to one half of the sample rate. Where one end of the span goes to DC or Nyquist, depending on which direction the center frequency is adjusted, the span decreases to allow the center frequency to go further in the direction it is being adjusted. If you are unable to increase the center to the desired value then increase the sample rate using either the sample rate or resolution controls. You may also change sample rate by using the HORIZONTAL SCALE knob on the instrument front panel.
- Resolution Bandwidth, RBW. This is the 3 dB down bandwidth of the spectral analyzer frequency response to a sine wave input. The resolution bandwidth is affected by two parameters.
  - Different window functions produce different filter response shapes in the spectrum and result in different resolution bandwidths.
  - The gate width, of the input data, affects the resolution bandwidth (RBW). Gate width has units of seconds. The resolution bandwidth directly controls the gate width, but the numerical value is entered in units of Hz. Therefore, the time domain gate markers move as you adjust the RBW control.

  $$RBW = \frac{Window\ Bin\ Width}{Gate\ Width}$$

  Where the Window Bin Width is the resolution bandwidth in units of bins. It depends on what window function is used. The gate width is in units of seconds.

Figure 3–44 demonstrate the effects of adjusting center frequency and span. Center frequency is a horizontal position control for the spectrum. Span is a horizontal scale control. Resolution bandwidth usually adjusts the bandwidth of the analyzer filters without affecting the span and center frequency.

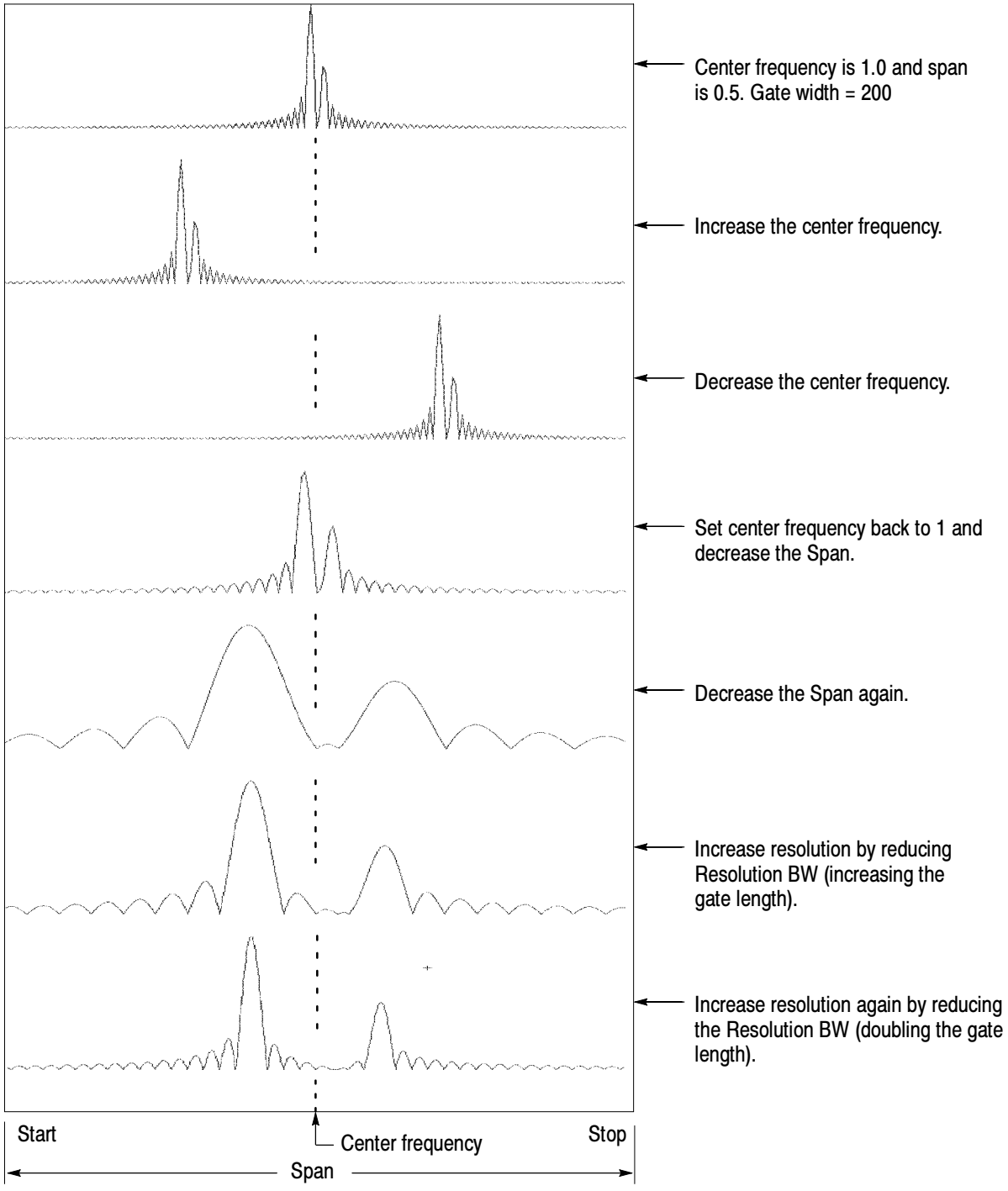


Figure 3- 44: Effects of frequency domain control adjustments

Using the magnitude controls. Vertical units can be either linear or logarithmic. You can select these choices by touching the Math menu button. Then touch the Spectral Analysis Setup button. Then select the Mag tab. Then select the desired scale type from Linear, dB, or dBm.

- Linear. When the spectrum is linear magnitude the vertical units are the same as the source waveform. Usually this is volts. However, it may also be watts or amperes.
- dB. This sets the vertical scale of the magnitude spectrum to dB. Use the Reference Level Offset to set what vertical position in the magnitude spectrum will be zero dB. The following equation applies:

$$dB = 20 \log\left(\frac{|X|}{Ref}\right)$$

- If the input units are watts, the the following equation applies:

$$dB = 10 \log\left(\frac{|X|}{Ref}\right)$$

  Where X is a complex data point in the spectrum and Ref is the Reference-Level Offset value.

- dBm. This selects dB as described in the above equation, but it also sets the Reference-Level Offset to a value that is equivalent to 1 mW of power into 50 Ω. Therefore, if the input units are volts, then the value is set to 223.6 mV. If the input units are amperes, then the value is set to 40 μA. If the input units are watts, then the value is set to 1 mW.
- Reference Level. This sets the vertical position of the displayed spectrum. Its value is the magnitude at the top of the display screen. When this control is adjusted, the spectral waveform along with its zero reference marker move vertically on the screen (see Figure 3–45). This control does not change the spectral data.

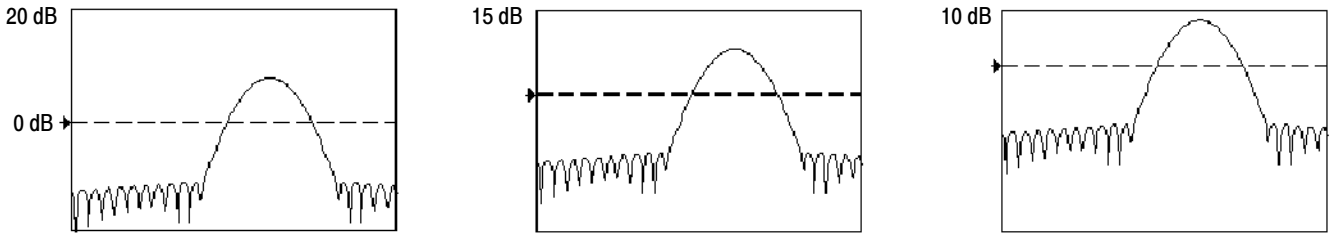


Figure 3- 45: Effects of adjusting the reference level

- Reference Level Offset. This changes the value of Ref in the equation for dB shown above. Unlike the Reference Level control, this control actually changes the output data values in the spectrum. Zero dB is shown on the display screen by the marker associated with the spectral waveform. Adjusting the reference-level offset causes the spectral waveform to move vertically with respect to the waveform reference marker. This moves the waveform without changing the Reference-Level control setting. Sometimes it is beneficial to adjust this control so that the peak of a fundamental is at zero dB. Then you can measure other harmonics in terms of how many dB they are down from the fundamental. Touch the dBm button to preset this level to the equivalent of 1 mW into 50 ohms.

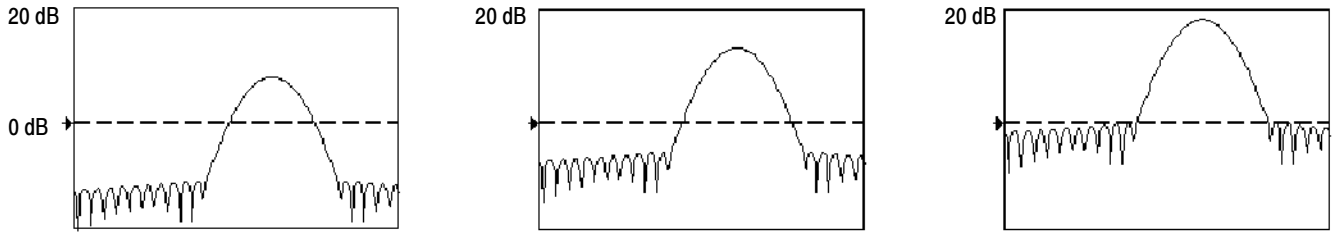


Figure 3- 46: Effects of adjusting the reference level offset control

- Real and Imaginary Magnitudes. You may set the spectral analyzer to display the linear magnitude of the real data or the imaginary data in the spectrum. This is useful if you process the spectrum off line and transform it back into a time domain trace. You could save the real and the imaginary spectrum into a reference memory. You can export the waveforms directly into Mathcad, Matlab, and Excel documents and update in real time.

To turn on a real or imaginary spectrum, touch the Math button, the Define/Edit Expression Editor button, and then select the Freq tab. Touch either the Real or the Imag menu items to enter an expression. Then touch the Ch tab and one of the channel buttons. Touch apply.

Using the Phase Controls. You can set the vertical units to degrees, radians, or seconds of group delay. You select these choices by touching the Math button, the Spectral Analysis Setup button, and then selecting the Phase tab. Select the desired scale type from Degrees, Radians, or Group Delay.

- Phase Reference Position. Phase is a relative measurement that must have a time domain reference point. The phase value is specified with respect to this phase reference position.

  For the spectral analyzer, the phase reference position is the 50% position of the gate, that is, the middle of the gate interval of the data that is input to the spectral analyzer. This is true for all window functions except for the Tek Exponential window. This window has the reference point at the 20% position of the gate.

- Phase Unwrap. The spectral analyzer produces phase values from $-\pi$ to π radians or –180 to 180 degrees. However, when you perform impulse response testing and the phase is continuous, then phase values outside these ranges may occur. The spectral analyzer then wraps the data with discontinuities in the display from +180 to –180 degrees. Phase unwrap will display the correct result by unwrapping the phase.

  Phase unwrap is only valid when the phase spectrum is a continuous function of frequency. Therefore, do not use it when analyzing the harmonic content of the typical repetitive signal.

- Suppression Threshold. Random noise in the spectrum may have phase values over the entire range. This could make the phase display unusable. However, you can set the suppression threshold control to a level in dB. The phase of any complex spectral points with a magnitude below this threshold is set to zero.

- Phase Unwrap Algorithm. The algorithm searches for the largest magnitude in the current span. Phase unwrap is then performed in both directions in frequency from that point. This results in a stable phase unwrap.

- Phase Spectrum dejitter. An instrument acquisition system jitters by one sample interval. Signals at the Nyquist frequency only have two samples per cycle. This would cause 180° of phase jitter if it were not corrected. The instrument phase spectrum is dejittered so that accurate measurements of phase are obtained from DC to the Nyquist frequency.

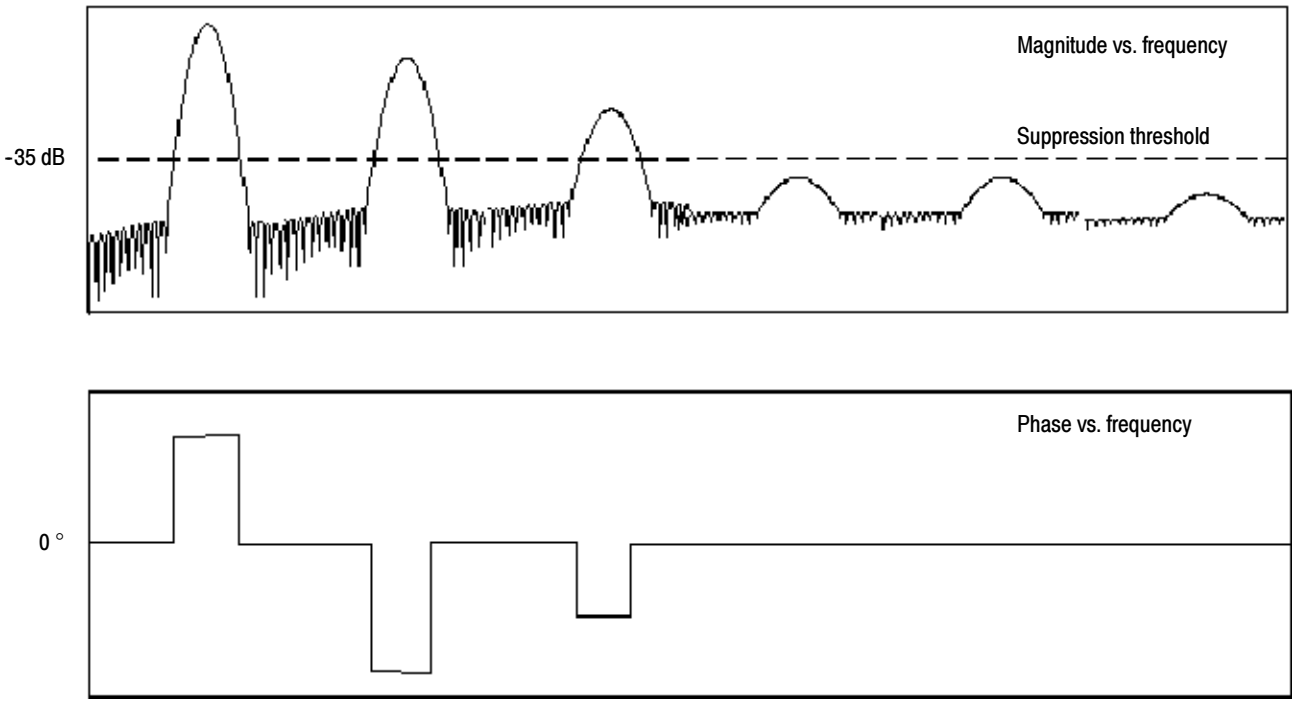


Figure 3- 47: Example of the effects of setting the phase suppression threshold

- Group Delay. When the phase spectrum is a continuous function of frequency, group delay may be computed. This is true of impulse response testing where an impulse is fed into the system and the spectrum of the response of the system output is computed.

  Group delay measures how well a system passes a signal in terms of phase distortion. Group delay is the negative derivative of the phase with respect to frequency.

  This feature is not useful for analysis of harmonic content of signals where the phase response is not continuous.

- Impulse Response Testing. When performing impulse response testing of a system, place the impulse at the zero-phase reference position of the acquisition. This produces a correct phase display. Because the Tek Exponential window has its zero phase reference position at the 20% point, more of the impulse response is captured. All other window functions have their phase reference position at the 50% position in the gated region.

  There are several ways to adjust the position of the zero phase reference point with respect to your input signal:

  - Adjust the spectral analyzer gate position

- Perform fine adjustment using the front-panel trigger level control
- Adjust the front-panel HORIZONTAL POSITION control

Using windows to filter. There are eight different spectral analyzer windows:

- Rectangular
- Hamming
- Hanning
- Kaiser–Bessel
- Gaussian
- Blackman–Harris
- Flattop2
- TekExponential

In the time domain a window is a bell-shaped function equal in length to the gate duration. For most windows this function tapers to zero at both ends of the gate region. Before computation of the spectral transform, the window is multiplied, sample by sample, by the input data in the gate region. The window function affects the shape of the spectral analyzer response in the frequency domain. The window functions affect the ability to resolve frequency in the output spectrum and can affect the accuracy of the magnitude and phase measurements.
Figure 3–48 shows how the time domain record is processed.

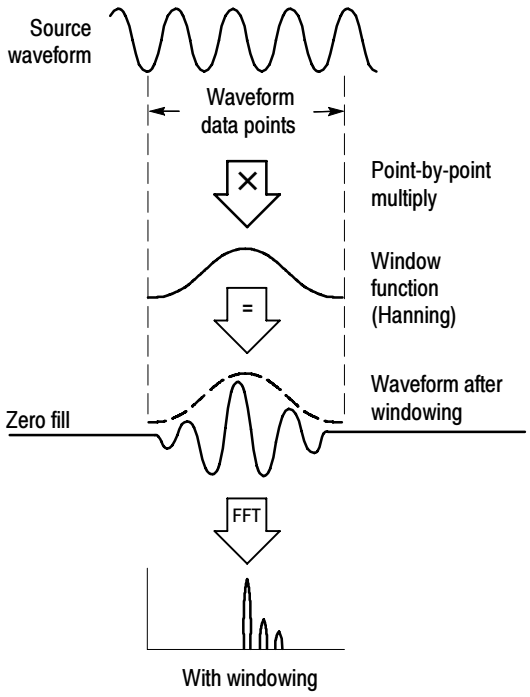


Figure 3- 48: Windowing the time domain record

Accurate magnitude measurements require that the input source waveform be stationary within the gate region. This means that waveform parameters such as frequency and amplitude do not change significantly as a function of time within the gate region that is input to the spectral analyzer. Also, the gate width must be greater than or equal to the period of the start frequency of the span of the spectral analyzer, that is, there must be at least one cycle of the harmonic being measured within the gate region.

- Choice of a window. Your choice of window function will depend on the input source characteristics which you want to observe and the characteristics of the window function. The window characteristics are shown in Table 3–10.
- FFT length. The FFT length is controlled so that the gate width in samples is never more than 0.8 of the FFT length. Thus, zero fill is always in effect. This essentially eliminates scallop loss errors in magnitude that would occur without zero fill.

Table 3-10: Window characteristics

Window	3 dB BW in bins	Scallop loss	Nearest side lobe	Zero phase reference	Coefficients
Rectangular	0.89	3.96 dB	-13 dB	50%	1.0
Hamming	1.3	1.78 dB	-43 dB	50%	0.543478, 0.456522
Hanning	1.44	1.42 dB	-32 dB	50%	0.5, 0.5
Kaiser-Bessel	1.72	1.02 dB	-69 dB	50%	0.40243, 0.49804, 0.09831, 0.00122
Blackman - Harris	1.92	0.81 dB	-92 dB	50%	0.35875, 0.48829, 0.14128, 0.01168
Gaussian	2.0	0.76 dB	-79 dB	50%	a = 3.75 (not cosine series)
Flattop2	3.8	0.0065 dB	-90 dB	50%	0.213348, -0.206985, 0.139512, -0.043084, 0.003745
Tek Exponential	1.42	0.60 dB	-67 dB	20%	na

- 3 dB BW in Bins. This is the bandwidth of the filter response of the spectral analyzer to a sine wave input for a given window function. It is given in units of bins. A bin is the interval between spectral samples when the interpolation ratio due to FFT zero fill is one. The bandwidth is measured between the points on the lobe that are 3 dB down from the peak of the lobe. The bandwidth in Hz may be computed by dividing the BW in bins by the gate duration in seconds. This is also referred to as resolution bandwidth (RBW).
- Coherent gain. The gain factor normally associated with different window functions is correctly scaled into the magnitude spectrum output. Therefore, the magnitudes in the output spectrum do not change as different windows are selected.
- Scallop Loss. This is the magnitude error of an FFT when the frequency of the observed signal is exactly half way between two frequency samples of the spectrum when the interpolation ratio due to zero fill of the FFT is one. The spectral analyzer FFT length is controlled so that zero fill is always in effect. This essentially eliminates scallop loss because zero fill in the time domain causes interpolation in the frequency domain. This results in accurate magnitude measurements for all window functions.

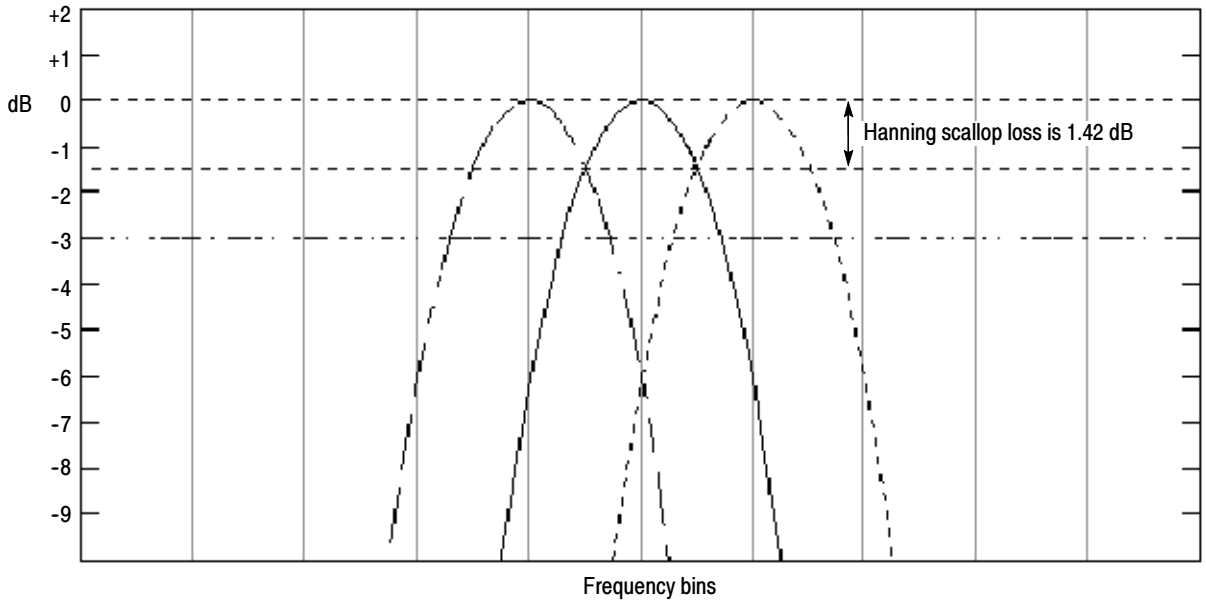


Figure 3- 49: Example of scallop loss for a Hanning window without zero fill

- Nearest Side Lobe. This is the difference in magnitude between the spectral lobe peak in the spectrum and the next side lobe that occurs due to energy leakage. Different windows have different leakage characteristics. The more narrow the resolution bandwidth of the window, the more leakage in the spectrum.
- Zero Phase Reference. This is the position in the time domain gate that is the reference point for phase in the output spectrum. That is, if a sine wave input has its peak at the zero phase reference position, then it reads out as zero phase in the spectrum. If the phase is to be correct when doing impulse response testing, the impulse in the time domain must be located at this position in the gate interval.
- Coefficients. These are used to generate the windows which are constructed from a cosines series. For the Gaussian window the value of "a" is given instead of a set of coefficients. You can find descriptions of cosine series windows in *Handbook of Digital Signal Processing Engineering Applications* by Elliot. ISBN 0-12-237075-9.

- Gaussian Window. This is the default window function (see Figure 3–50). It is unique in that the time-domain shape of an exponential Gaussian function transforms into a Gaussian exponential shape in the frequency domain. This window provides optimal localization in both the time and the frequency domain. This is the filter shape most commonly used in spectrum analyzers.

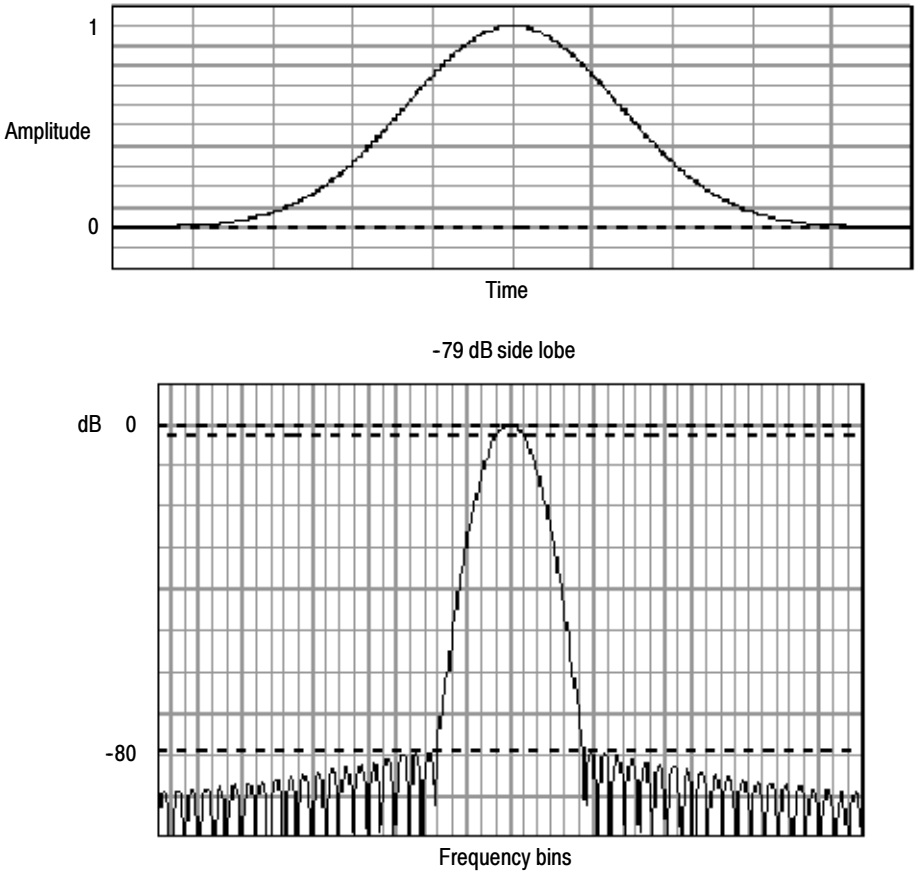


Figure 3-50: Time and frequency graphs for the Gaussian window

- Rectangular Window. This window is equal to unity (see Figure 3–51). This means the data samples in the gate are not modified before input to the spectral analyzer. This window has the narrowest resolution bandwidth of any of the windows, but it also has the most spectral leakage and the highest side lobes.

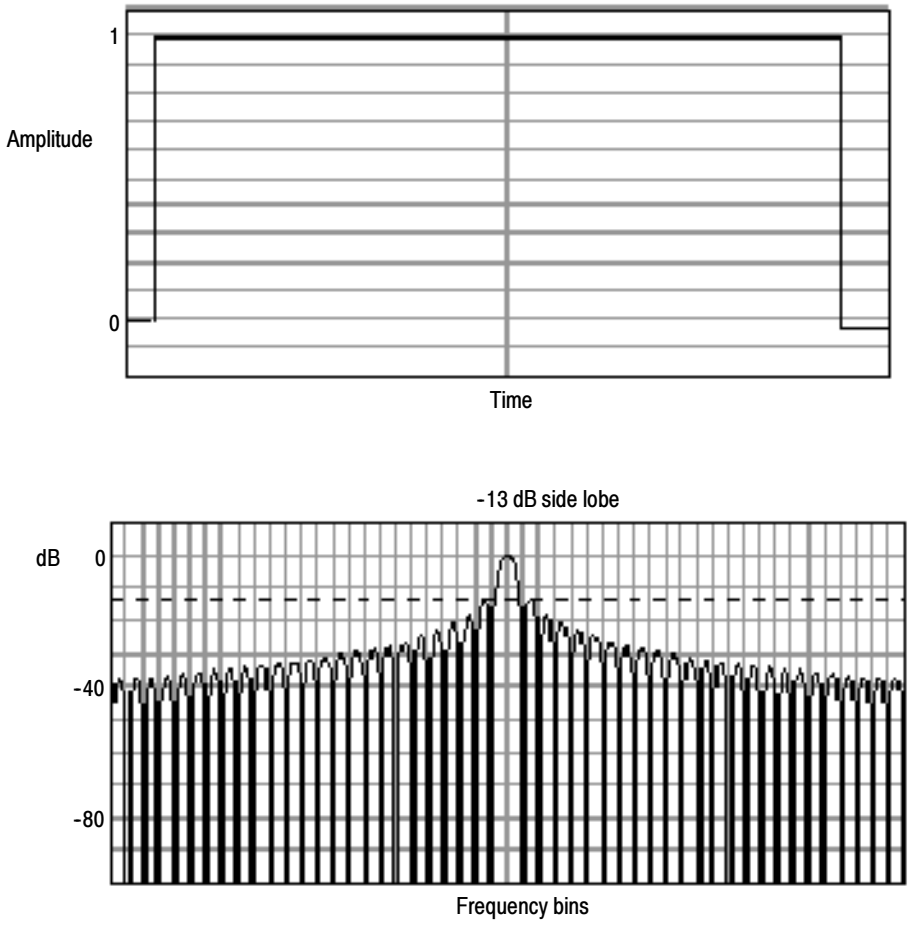


Figure 3-51: Time and frequency domain graphs for the Rectangular window

- Hamming Window. This window is unique in that the time domain shape does not taper all the way to zero at the ends (see Figure 3–52). This makes it a good choice if you wanted to process the real and imaginary parts of the spectrum off line and inverse transform it back to the time domain. Because the data does not taper to zero you could then remove the effect of the window function from the result.

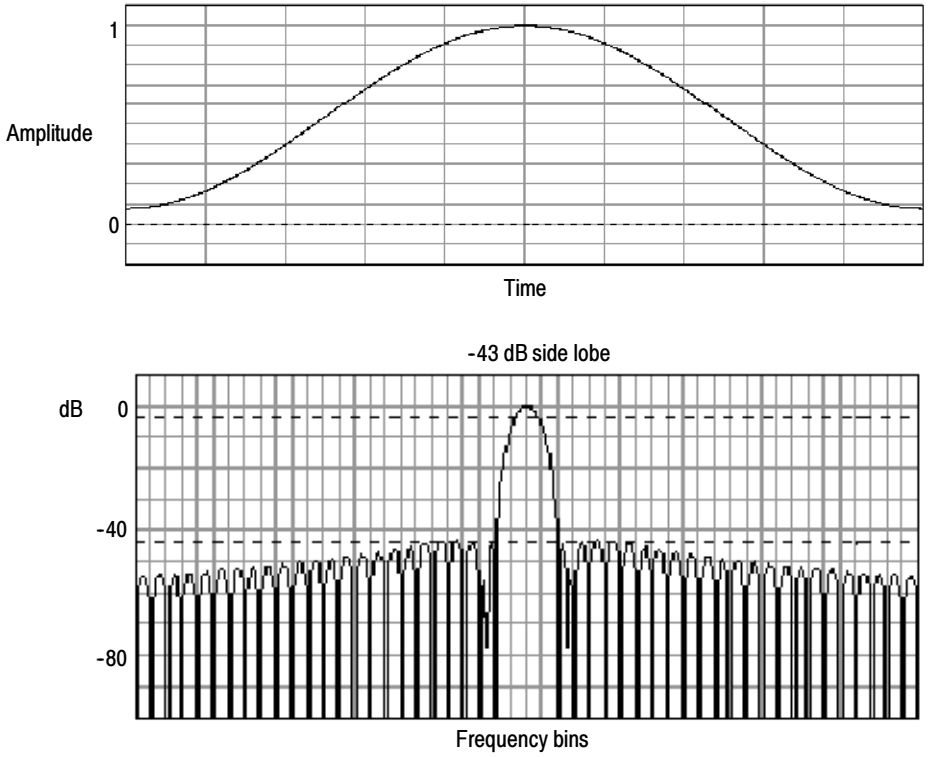


Figure 3- 52: Time and frequency graphs of the Hamming window

- Hanning, Kaiser-Bessel, and Blackman-Harris Windows. These windows have various resolution bandwidths and scallop losses (see figures 3-53, 3-54, and 3-55). Choose the one that best allows you to view the signal characteristics that you are interested in. The Blackman-Harris has a low amount of energy leakage compared to the other windows. The Hanning has the narrowest resolution bandwidth, but higher side lobes.

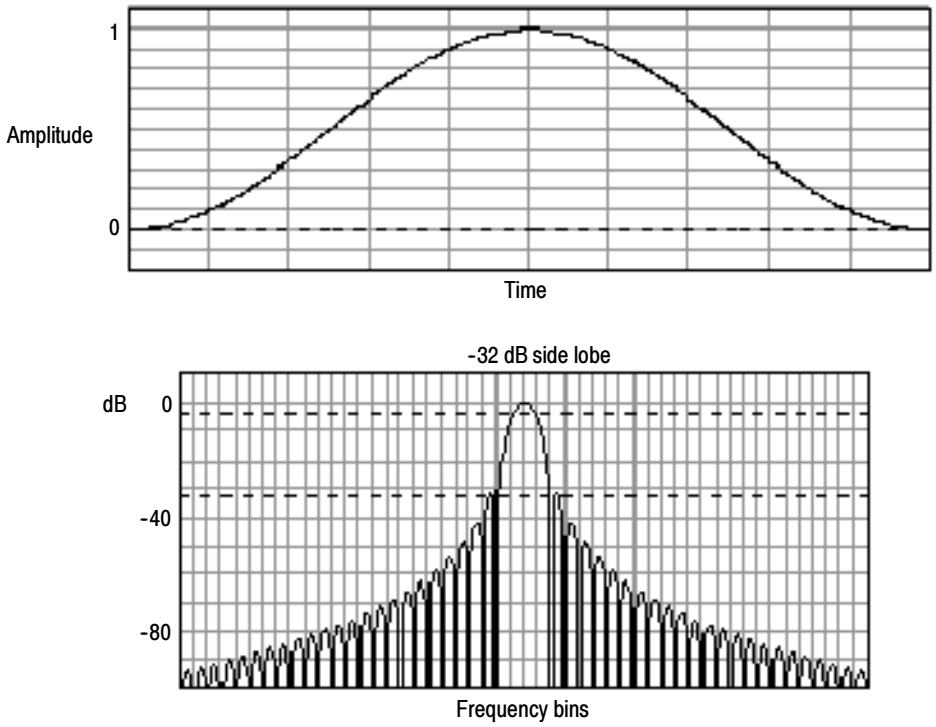


Figure 3-53: Time and frequency graphs for the Hanning window

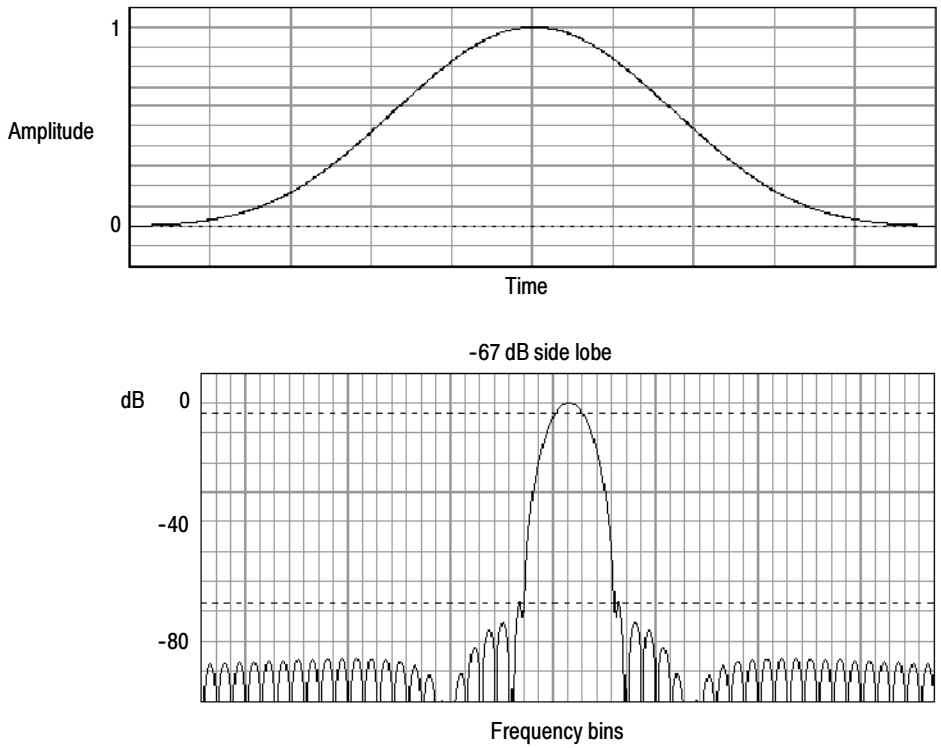


Figure 3- 54: Time and frequency graphs for the Kaiser-Bessel window

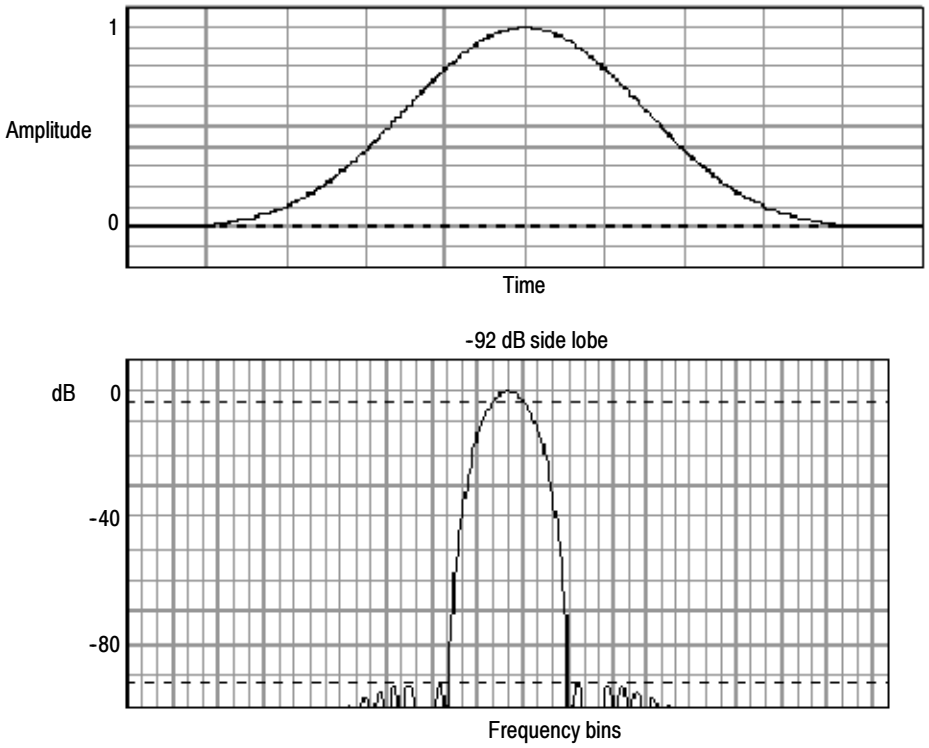


Figure 3-55: Time and frequency graphs of the Blackman-Harris window

- Flattop2 Window. This window has the lowest scallop loss of any of the windows (see Figure 3-56). It also has a wider resolution bandwidth but lower side lobe attenuation. Also, it is unique because the time domain shape has negative values.

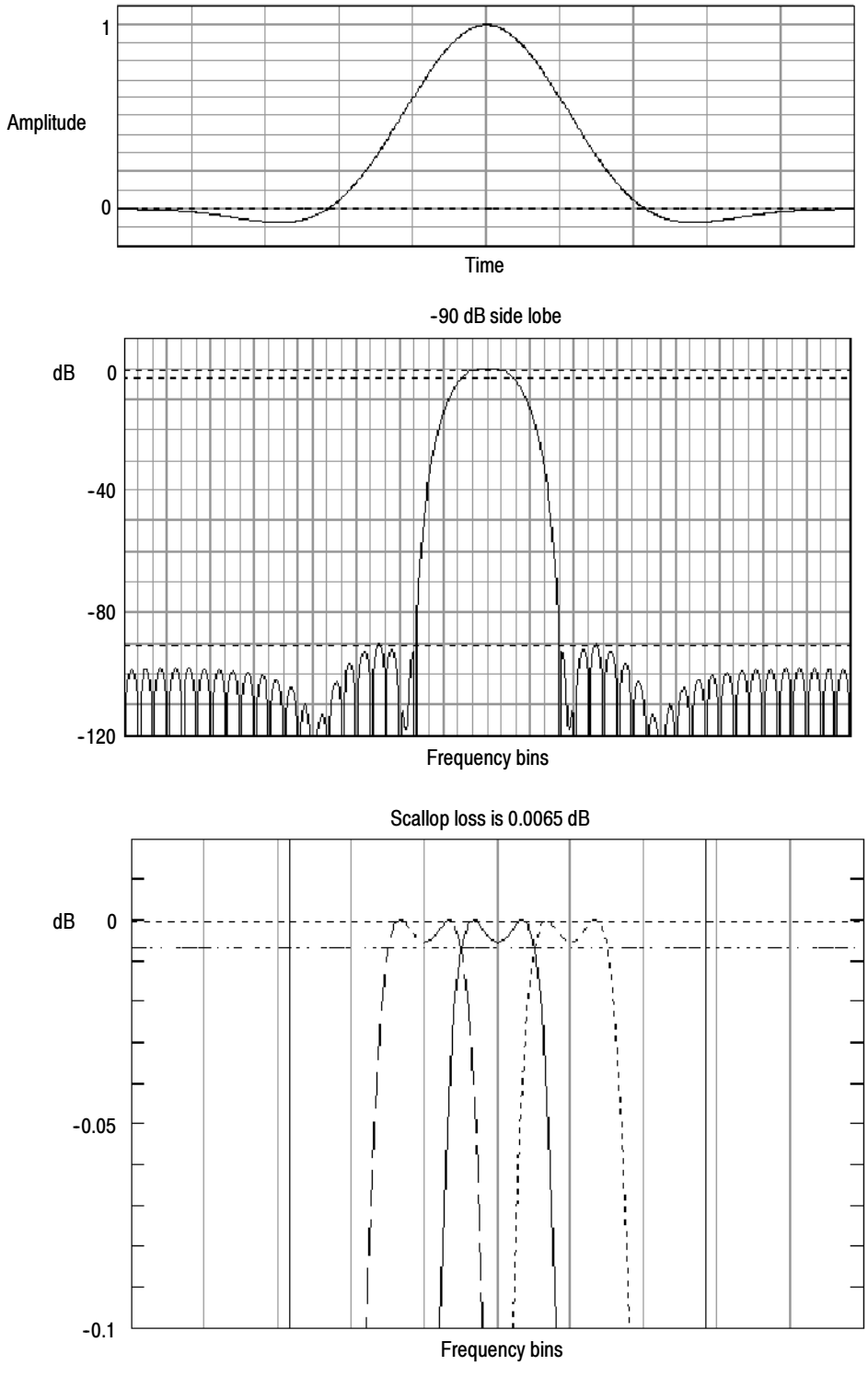


Figure 3- 56: Time and frequency domain graphs for the Flattop2 window

- Tek Exponential Window. The Tek Exponential window (see Figure 3–57) was invented at Tektronix. In the time domain, it is not a symmetrical bell shape as is the case with the other windows (see Figure 3–57). Instead, it is exponential with a peak at the 20% position of the time domain gate. The frequency domain shape is triangular. Use this window for impulse response testing where the 20% position is the zero phase reference point. More of the acquired data record length is used to capture the impulse response. Exact details of how to compute its values were published in the article, "Impulse-response testing lets a single test do the work of thousands" by John Pickerd in *EDN* magazine, April 27, 1995, page 95.

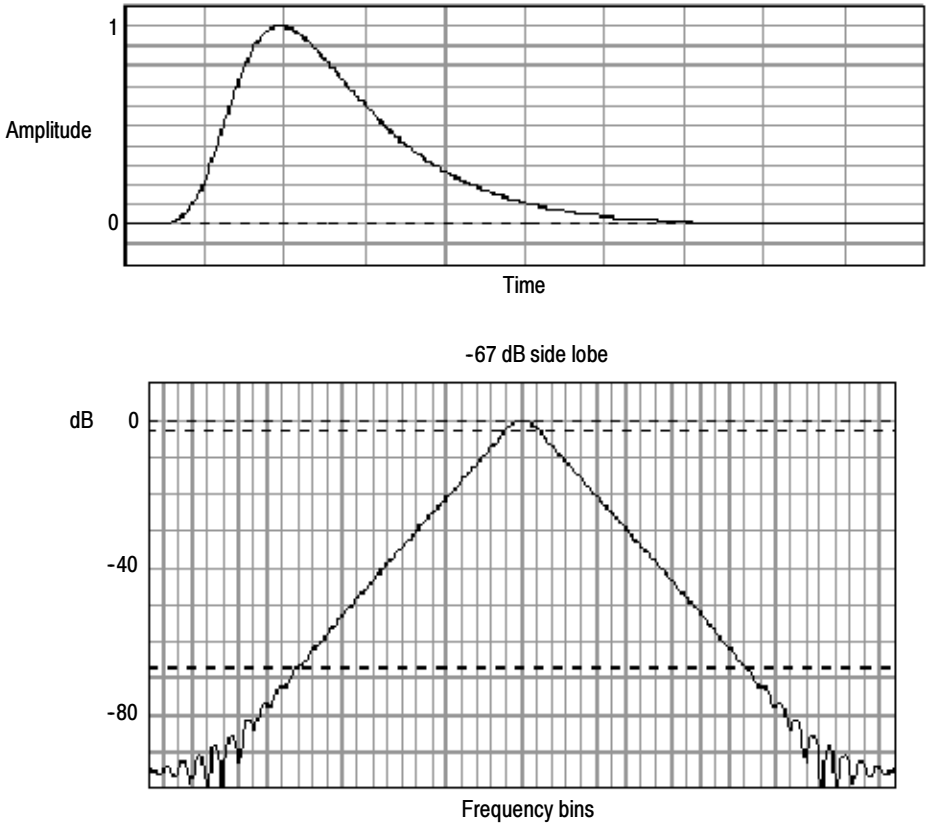


Figure 3-57: Tek Exponential window in the time and the frequency domains

Effects of trigger jitter. The instrument acquisition system has a sample clock that is asynchronous with respect to the input signal. This means that from one acquisition to the next, samples may be in a different position on the waveform with respect to the trigger. Samples may vary in position by up to one sample interval.

There are only two samples per cycle of a signal that have a frequency equal to one half of the sample rate. This is the highest nonaliased signal that can be output from the spectral analyzer. Thus, at this frequency, one sample of acquisition jitter will show up in the spectrum as 180 degree phase variations. The phase spectrum is dejittered by using the fractional trigger value of the instrument to correct all phases in the spectrum. Therefore phase is accurately measured from DC to the Nyquist frequency.

- Effects of Average and High Res acquisition modes. The result of averaging the time domain acquisition using either average mode or Hi Res acquisition mode affects the frequency response of the instrument. This is due to the one sample of jitter in the acquisition system. Both High Res and average acquisition modes have the same affect on the frequency response. These modes cause the response to roll off from a magnitude value of one at DC to a magnitude value of 0.63 at Nyquist which is the frequency equal to one half of the sample rate. This is true regardless of the real time sample rate setting.
- Frequency Domain Averaging. You may turn on average for a math waveform by editing the math expression. Sometimes it is more desirable to average in the spectrum than in the time domain. For example, consider a signal that has time domain components that are asynchronous to the trigger. If you turn on averaging in the time domain, these components may go to zero or produce strange non-deterministic effects on the resultant waveform. Thus, these signal components may end up not appearing in the spectrum. However, if averaging is done in the frequency domain instead, then these components will be present. An example is:

  Math1 = AVG(SpectralMag(Ch1)).

Recognizing Aliasing

Aliasing occurs when the input frequency of a signal is greater than one half of the sampling frequency (the sample rate).

Set the sample rate high enough so that the signals in the spectrum appear at the correct frequencies as opposed to a lower aliased frequency value. Also, complex signal shapes that have many harmonics in them, such as a triangle or square wave, can appear to be OK in the time domain when, in fact, many of the harmonics in that signal are aliased.

One way to check for aliasing is to increase the sample rate and observe whether any of the harmonics unwrap to different frequency locations.

Higher order harmonics usually have decreasing magnitudes compared to lower order harmonics. Thus, if you see a series of increasing harmonic magnitude values as frequency increases, then you can suspect that they may be aliased. In the spectral math waveform, the actual higher frequency components are undersampled, and therefore, they appear as lower frequency aliases that "fold back" around the Nyquist point. (See Figure 3–58.) You can test by increasing the sample rate and observing if aliases unwrap to different frequency positions.

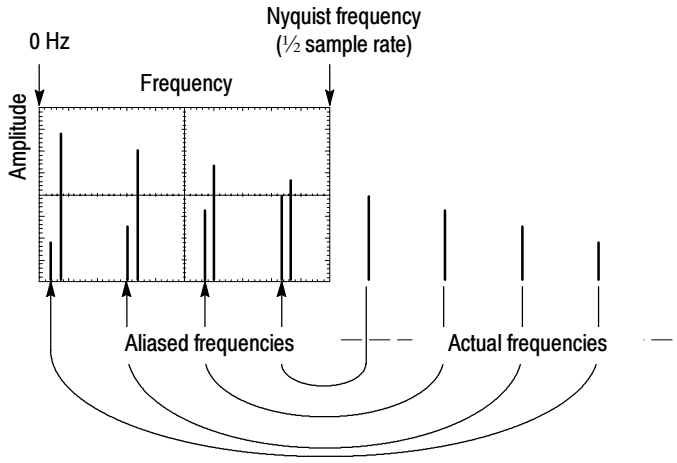


Figure 3- 58: How aliased frequencies appear in a spectral waveform

Another way to observe aliasing, if you have a variable frequency signal source, is to adjust the frequency slowly while watching the spectral display. If some of the harmonics are aliased, you will see the harmonics decreasing in frequency when they should be increasing or vice versa. Using averaging in either the time or frequency domain will make these frequency shifts more sluggish.

To Take Cursor Measurements of a Spectral Math Waveform. Once you have displayed a spectral math waveform, use cursors to measure the frequency amplitude or phase angle. See *Taking Cursor Measurements* on page 3–130.

To Take Automated Measurements of a Spectral Math Waveform. You can use automated measurements to measure spectral math waveforms. Use the procedure *To Take Automated Measurements* on page 3–123.

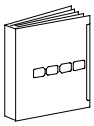
Swept Sine Wave Analysis. Many applications of the spectral analyzer require swept sine wave input. The following equation determines the maximum sweep speed of the sine wave generator for a given span and resolution bandwidth.

$$T = \frac{(freq\ span * K)}{RBW^2}$$

T = minimum time to sweep the sine over the requested span
freq span = frequency span of interest
RBW = resolution bandwidth
K = 2 dB BW in bins for the window function in use as shown in Table 3–10 on page 3–172. K = 2 for a Gaussian window.

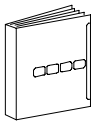
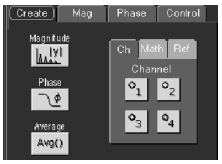
To Select a Predefined Spectral Math Waveform

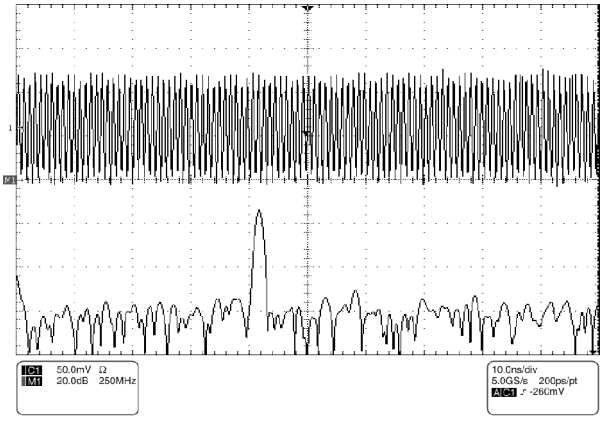
Use the procedure that follows to select a predefined spectral math waveform. Remember, a channel source must be acquiring or have acquired data. This source does not have to be displayed to be used.

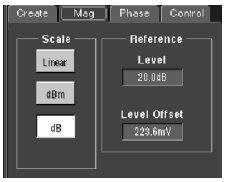
Overview	To select a predefined spectral math waveform	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** All channel and reference Waveforms and automatic measurement scalars that you will use in your math waveform must be available (channels and references contain data, measurement scalars are defined, and so on).	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Display the math control window	**2.** From the toolbar, touch the Math button to display the Define Math control window.	
Select a predefined spectral analysis math waveform	**3.** Touch Mag or Phase to select a predefined magnitude or phase spectral analysis waveform. Selecting a predefined spectral waveform turns on display of the waveform.	

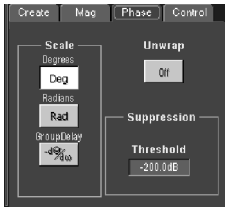
To Define a Spectral Math Waveform

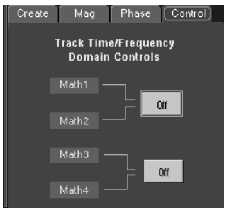
Use the procedure that follows when defining a spectral math waveform. Remember to ensure that the sources you use exist. Channel sources must be acquiring or have acquired data. These sources do not have to be displayed to be used.

Overview	To define a spectral math waveform	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** All channel and reference Waveforms and automatic measurement scalars that you will use in your math waveform must be available (channels and references contain data, measurement scalars are defined, and so on).	 See page 3-24 for acquisition setup and page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Display the math control window	**2.** From the toolbar, touch the Math button to display the Define Math control window.	
Select spectral analysis setup	**3.** Touch Spectral Analysis Setup, and then select the Create tab to display the Spectral Analysis Setup control window.	
Select a spectral waveform	**4.** Touch Math(x) and select the math waveform that you want to create from the list. **5.** Touch Magnitude to create a magnitude spectral waveform, or touch Phase to create a phase spectral waveform. **6.** Touch the channel number that contains input data for the spectral analyzer. **7.** If you want an averaged spectral waveform, touch Average, touch Avgs, and then set the number of averages in the control window. ***Note.*** *If you want to redefine your waveform, touch the Clear button and repeat the above steps.*	 

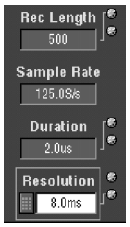
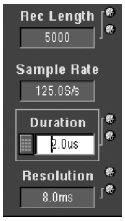
Overview	To define a spectral math waveform (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Display the spectral waveform	**8.** To display your spectral waveform, touch either the Apply or the OK button. 	

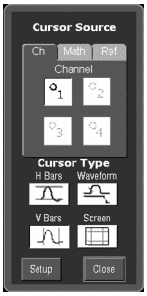
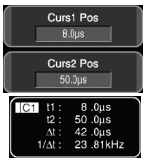
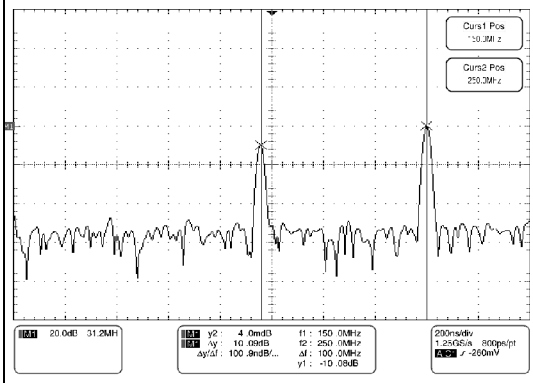
Overview	To define a spectral math waveform (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set the magnitude scale	**9.** Select the Mag tab. **10.** To select the vertical scale factor, touch dB, dBm, or Linear. The units will be dB, W, A, V, or whatever units are attached to the spectral analyzer input waveform. ■ dB — Magnitude is displayed using log scale, expressed in dB relative to the reference level offset. ■ Linear — Magnitude is displayed using units equal to the source units. ■ dBm — Reference level offset is set to predefined values for dBm; see next step. ***Note.*** *You can adjust the scale and position by first touching the waveform handle and then using the multipurpose knobs to adjust the scale and position.* **11.** To set the reference level, touch Level, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the reference level. ***Note.*** *Reference level is the value at the top of the display screen. It only applies to magnitude waveforms. Adjusting the reference level positions the waveform with respect to the top of the display, but does not change the position of the waveform with respect to its ground reference.* **12.** To set the reference level offset, touch Level Offset, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the offset. ***Note.*** *Offset determines where zero dB is in the output waveform. Changing offset moves the waveform with respect to its ground reference. When the input is equal to the offset, it will display as zero dB in the output.*	

Overview	To define a spectral math waveform (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set the phase scale	**13.** Select the Phase tab.	
	14. To select the vertical scale factor, touch Degree, Radian, or GroupDelay: ■ Degree sets the phase units to degrees. Phase is displayed using degrees as the scale, where degrees wrap from -180 °F to +180 °F. ■ Radian sets the phase units to radians. Phase is displayed using radians as the scale, where radians wrap from -π to +π. ■ GroupDelay unwraps the phase spectrum and displays its negative derivative. The topic *Using the Phase Controls,* on page 3-168, provides in depth information on the setup for phase displays.	
	15. To specify whether to unwrap phase in a spectral analysis phase waveform, touch Unwrap to toggle it on or off.	
	16. To set the level in dB that a magnitude in the spectrum must exceed to have its phase computed (to reduce the effect of noise in your phase waveform), touch Suppression Threshold, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the threshold level. If the magnitude is less than the threshold, then its phase is set to zero (for an example, see Figure 3-47 on page 3-169). The *Suppression Threshold* bullet on page 3-168, provides additional information on phase suppression.	

Overview	To define a spectral math waveform (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set time and frequency domain control tracking	**17.** Touch the Control tab. **18.** To allow changing time and frequency domain controls for one math waveform to change the same controls for another math waveform, touch the Track Time/Freq Domain Controls buttons to toggle them on or off.	
Select the window type	**19.** To select the window type, touch Window Type and select from the list. See *Using Windows to Filter* on page 3-170 for a description of the available FFT windows. ■ Rectangular. Best type of window for resolving frequencies that are very close to the same value. Best type for measuring the frequency spectrum of nonrepetitive signals and measuring frequency components near DC. ■ Hamming, Hanning, Blackman-Harris, Kaiser-Bessel, and Flattop2. These window are based on cosine series. Each has a different RBW and spectral leakage characteristics. Use the window which best highlights the features you want to observe in the spectrum. ■ Gaussian. Best localization in both time and frequency. ■ Tek Exponential. Best for impulse testing. It sets the zero-phase reference to the 20% position in the time record allowing the test to use more of the instrument record length. The bullet *Choice of a window,* on page 3-171, provides in depth information on choosing the right window for your application.	

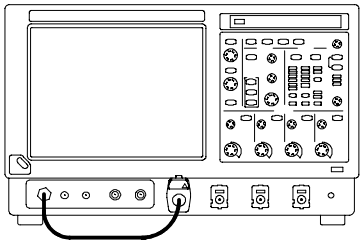
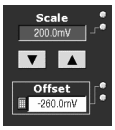
Overview	To define a spectral math waveform (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set the frequency domain controls	The spectral analyzer center frequency and the frequency span must be within the bandwidth setting determined by the sample rate. See Figure 3-44 on page 3-165 to see how a signal consisting of two sine waves looks on screen as the spectral analyzer controls are adjusted. A rectangular window was used. **20.** To set the frequency range over which the spectral analysis is performed, touch Freq Span, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the frequency range. Higher sample rates allow you to set greater frequency spans. To set the frequency span to the maximum allowed by the current sample rate, touch the Full button. **21.** To set the center frequency of the spectral analysis, touch Center Freq and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the center frequency. Resolution bandwidth determines how small of a frequency difference may be resolved in the frequency domain output data. It basically defines the bandwidth of the filters used to do the frequency domain analysis. **22.** To set the resolution bandwidth, touch Res BW, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the resolution bandwidth.	

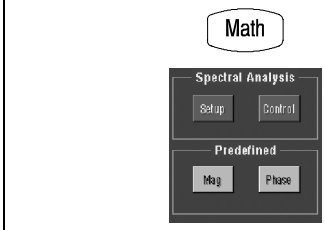
Overview	To define a spectral math waveform (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set the time domain controls	Time domain controls of the spectral analyzer determine the sample rate and record length of the acquisition. Front panel controls also affect the sample rate and record length, but not in the same way. These controls allow you to change the duration on the acquisition without changing the sample rate. This allows you to control the acquisition in a way that is analogous to the frequency domain span and center frequency controls in a spectral analyzer.	
	23. From the Spectral Analysis Setup menu, touch Resolution, and adjust the time interval between data samples of the input waveform. ***Note.*** *Resolution is the inverse of Sample rate. Adjust resolution to adjust sample rate. Resolution will also cause a change in record length such that the duration is kept constant at the value selected by the Duration control.*	
	24. To adjust the number of seconds over the duration of the acquired waveform (record length), touch Duration, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to adjust the duration. ***Note****. Changing duration also changes the record length.*	
	25. To set the gate position, touch Gate Pos, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to adjust the gate position. Gate position is the position of the phase reference point in the gate with respect to the trigger in seconds. The gate position and gate duration must be within the acquisition.	
	26. To set the gate duration, touch Gate Dur, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to adjust the gate duration. Gate duration and resolution bandwidth both control gate duration; gate duration is displayed in seconds and resolution bandwidth in hertz.	

Overview	To define a spectral math waveform (Cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Take cursor measurements	**27.** From the toolbar, touch the Cursor button to display the cursors and the cursor control window.	
	28. Select the Math tab and touch the numbered button for the spectral waveform that you want to measure.	
	29. Select the cursor type by touching either the H Bars, V Bars, Waveform, or Screen buttons (for more information, see *Taking Cursor Measurements* starting on page 3-130).	
	30. Turn the multipurpose knobs to position each cursor on the waveform to measure the feature that interests you.	
	31. Read the results in the cursor readout. The cursor readout is displayed below the graticule as shown here or at the bottom of the graticule area. The figure shows the cursor measurement of a frequency magnitude on an FFT. The readout reads about 0 dB (4.0 mdB) because it is aligned with the reference level offset. The other readout reads -10.08 dB indicating the magnitude of the frequency it is measuring is -10.08 dB relative to reference level offset. Display of the source waveform is turned off. The cursor units will be in dB or volts for magnitude waveforms and in degrees or radians for those measuring phase.	
	32. Select V Bars, and use the multipurpose knobs to align the two vertical cursors to points of interest along the horizontal axis of the waveform.	
	33. Read the frequency difference between the cursors from the **Δ:** readout. Read the frequency of each cursor relative to the zero frequency point from the cursors readout.	
For further assistance	**34.** Touch the Help button in the toolbar to access context-sensitive help on math waveforms.	

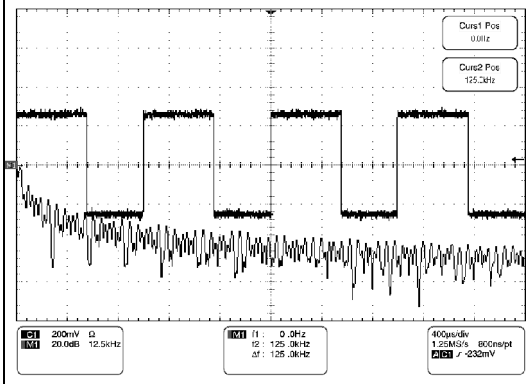
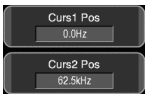
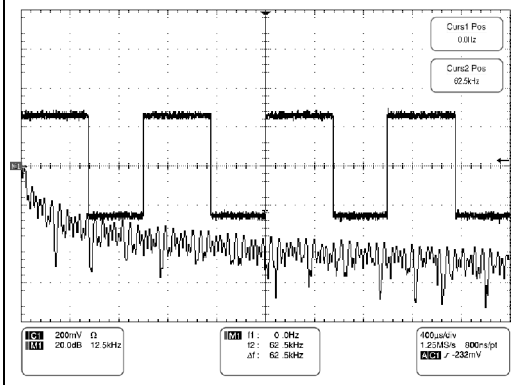
Spectral Math Example

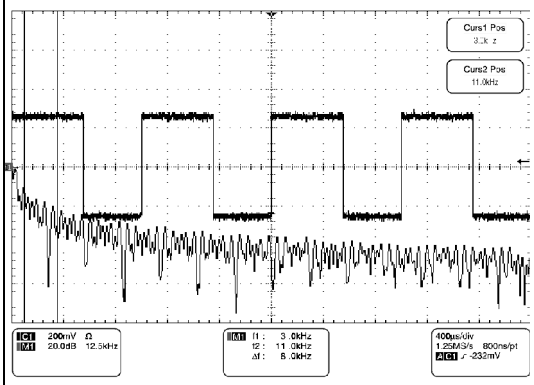
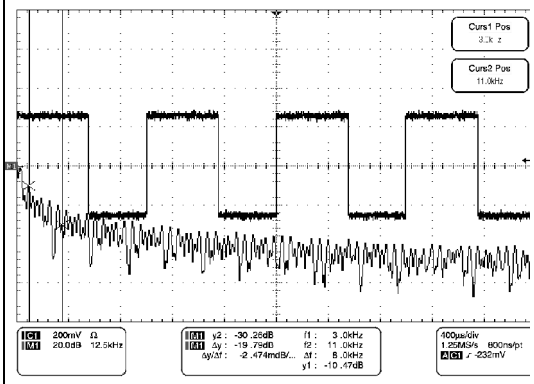
The following procedure is an example of setting up the instrument to perform spectral analysis of a signal. This example uses the FAST EDGE signal available on the front panel of the instrument.

Overview	Spectral math example	Control elements and resources
Install the test hookup	**1.** Connect the FAST EDGE signal to CH 1 through a suitable cable and adapter. **2.** Press DEFAULT SETUP. **3.** Press AUTOSET.	
Display the waveform	**4.** From the toolbar, touch Vert, and select the Chan 1 tab. **5.** Touch Offset, and using the multipurpose knobs or keypad, set the offset to **-260 mV** and the Ch1 Scale to **200 mV.**	 

Overview	Spectral math example (cont.)	Control elements and resources
Display the spectral math waveform	**6.** From the toolbar, touch Math, and select the Math 1 tab. **7.** Touch the Predefined Mag button. The instrument sets up a predefined magnitude spectral analysis waveform. **8.** To see the settings, touch the Spectral Analysis Setup button. ■ Scale sets the vertical scale factor and lets you set the vertical scale. ■ Reference sets the value at the top of the display, and offset sets the waveform position with respect to its ground reference. ■ Rec Length sets the number of samples in the waveform acquisition. ■ Sample rate sets the sample rate. ■ Duration sets the time over the acquired waveform (also changes record length). ■ Resolution controls sample rate and record length to keep the duration constant while changing the time between samples of the acquired waveform.	

Overview	Spectral math example (cont.)	Control elements and resources
Display the spectral math waveform (Cont.)	■ Window Type affects the shape of the spectral analyzer response in the frequency domain; that is, the ability to resolve frequency in the output spectrum. ■ Gate Position sets the position of the gate on the acquired waveform. The data in the gate region is input to the spectral analyzer. The gate position is the time from the trigger to the zero phase reference position in the gate. ■ Gate Duration sets the width of the gate in seconds, and it is inversely proportional to the resolution bandwidth. For narrow band frequency resolution, use a wide gate. ■ Gate Length displays the number of samples over the specified gate duration. ■ Resolution BW sets the bandwidth, in hertz, of the filters used in the spectral analysis. Resolution BW is inversely proportional to the gate duration. **9.** Touch Center Freq, and use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the frequency span to 125 kHz and the center frequency to 62.5 kHz (if necessary, reduce the sample rate).	

Overview	Spectral math example (cont.)	Control elements and resources
Set up the cursors	**10.** From the toolbar, touch **Cursors**. **11.** To assign the cursors to the spectral analysis math waveform, touch the Cursor Source Math tab, and touch the Math 1 button. **12.** Use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the Curs1 Pos to 0.0 Hz and the Curs2 Pos to 125 kHz. The cursor readout now indicates the frequency span set in step 9. **13.** Use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the Curs2 Pos to 62.5 kHz. The cursor readout now indicates the center frequency set in step 9.	   

Overview	Spectral math example (cont.)	Control elements and resources
Measure the test results	**14.** Use the multipurpose knobs or keypad to set the Curs1 Pos to 3.0 kHz and the Curs2 Pos to 11.0 kHz. In this example, the cursors are now on the third and eleventh harmonic of the fast edge signal. Read the frequencies from the cursor readouts.	 
	15. Touch the Cursor Type Waveform button. Touch the Cursor 2 button and then the Math 1 button.	
	Now in addition to the frequency at the cursor locations, the cursor readout displays the amplitude at the cursor locations. The readout also displays the difference in frequency and amplitude between the cursor locations.	
For more information	**16.** For additional information on setting up and using spectral math, see *Defining Spectral Math Waveforms* starting on page 3-160.	

Data Input/Output

This section describes the input and output capabilities of your instrument. Specifically, it covers:

- *Saving and Recalling a Setup*
- *Saving and Recalling Waveforms*
- *Exporting and Copying Waveforms*, including exporting and copying of images, waveforms, measurements, and histograms
- *Printing Waveforms*
- *Remote Communication*

Saving and Recalling a Setup

This instrument can save a number of different instrument setups for later recall, limited only by the space you have to store the setups.

By saving and recalling different setups, you can switch from setup to setup without having to first manually record your settings and then manually set them. This capability is helpful when you want to:

- Save and recall a setup that optimizes the instrument for displaying and analyzing a certain signal.
- Save a series of setups to help automate a procedure through recall of a sequence of saved setups as part of performing the procedure.
- Export a setup for sharing with a second instrument.

The Save-Setup and the Recall-Setup control windows provide for including and viewing comments with your saved setups. You can store information, readable upon recall, that describes each setup you save and its intended application.

If you do not have a keyboard connected, you can still enter comments and name setup files. The Save and Recall Setup windows include the Virtual Keyboard. When you touch or click a setup name, the instrument displays a keyboard on screen that you can use with your mouse or the touch screen to enter the setup-path name, setup-file name, and comment.

The instrument excludes the following items when saving setups:

- Waveforms in Ch1 to Ch4 and references (Ref1-Ref4). Control settings (scale, position, and so on) are saved but not the waveform data. Upon recall of the setup, the settings are applied, but the data is not restored.

- Waveforms in Math Waveforms (Math1-Math4). Control settings and the math expression are retained but not the waveform data. Upon setup recall, however, the recalled math waveform expressions will be applied, but math waveform data is not restored.
- User Options that are stored in the Windows Registry. These include all options accessed by first selecting Utilities (menu bar), and then User Preferences (Utilities menu).

You cannot recall into a channel or a math waveform. The instrument recalls each waveform into one of the reference waveform locations (Ref1-Ref4).

If you want to save a waveform in a useful format for other applications, such as a spreadsheet, use the export function (see *Exporting and Copying Waveforms* on page 3–213).

A few things to remember when saving and recalling setups:

All Settings are Retained. The instrument includes almost all instrument settings, with a few exceptions (such as user options) in the saved setup.

Retaining Current Settings. Recalling a setup replaces the current setup with the recalled setup. If you do not want to lose your current setup, save it to its own setup file for later recall before you recall a setup.

Avoiding Setup/Waveform Mismatches. Saved setups may contain settings inappropriate for waveforms currently in your instrument. For example, if you save a setup that displays a math waveform that is the inverse of reference 1, when you recall the setup, if the reference is empty, the math and reference waveforms are not displayed.

Using Auto-Increment File Name

Auto-increment file name in the Save As and Export dialog boxes enables saving numerous files without entering a file name each time. To auto-increment file names, select Auto-increment file name on the dialog box as shown in Figure 3–59.

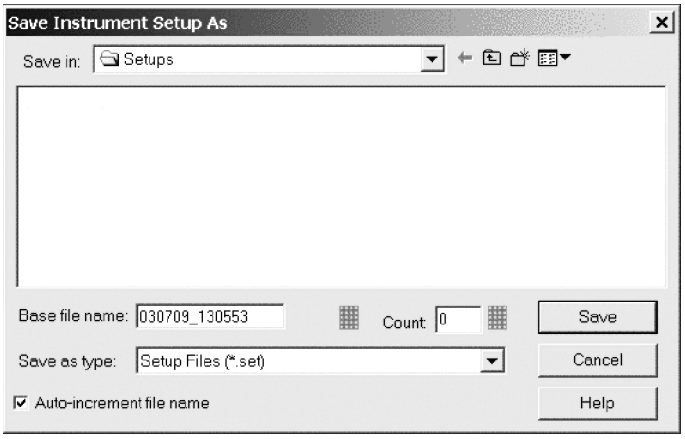


Figure 3- 59: Auto-increment file name feature

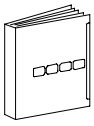
Enter a Base file name and touch Save. For the initial save, the default count is 000. Your first file is saved as [*Basefilename*][*count*].*ext*, where *ext* is the file extension. On subsequent saves, the instrument searches for the highest numbered file name and increases the number by one, as in Basefilename001.*ext*.

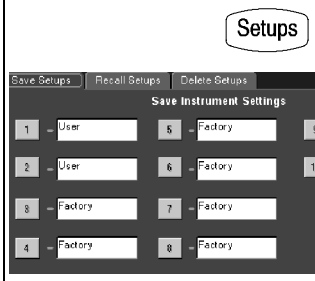
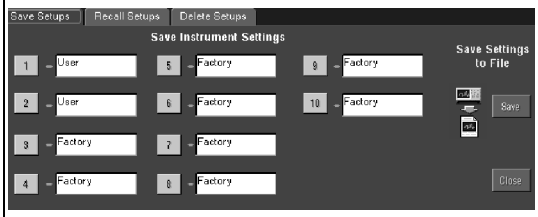
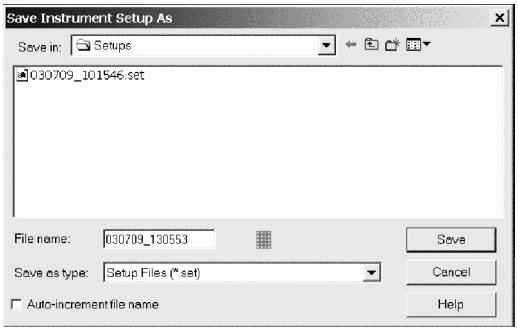
For example, if you save a series of rise time data files, you can use Risetime as the base file name. Your first file is saved as Risetime000.*ext*. The next file will be Risetime001.*ext*, and so on.

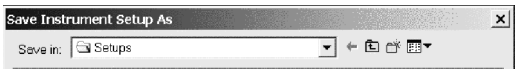
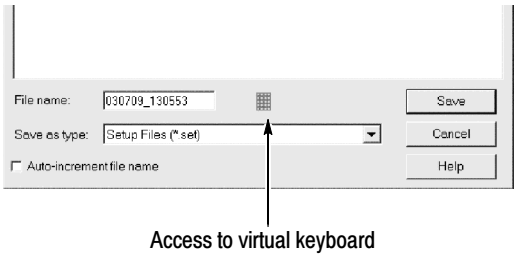
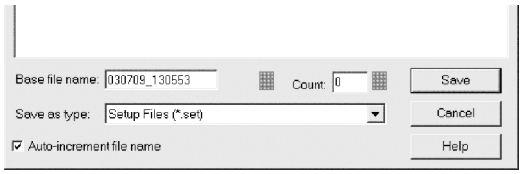
If Count reaches 999, it is suggested that you change the base file name to Basefilename1 (for example, Risetime1) on the next save. Your next file will then be saved as Risetime1000.*ext*.

To Save Your Setup

Use the procedure that follows to save a setup to one of ten internal locations, the instrument hard disk, a CD-RW drive, USB 2.0 memory device, or third-party storage device.

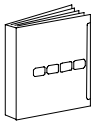
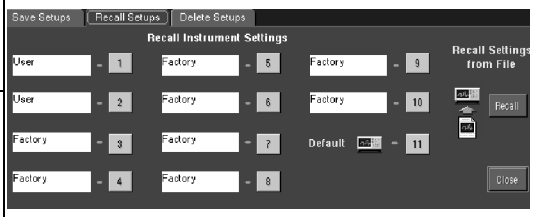
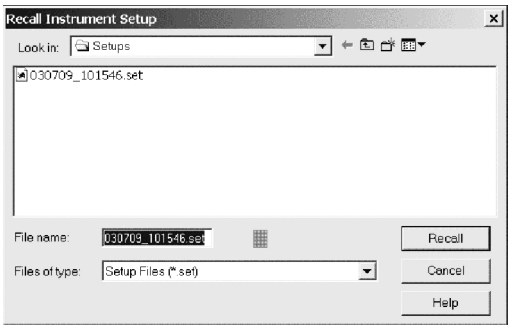
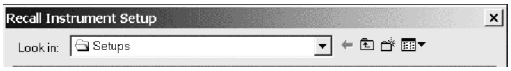
Overview	To save your setup	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be powered up. **2.** Setup the instrument controls as you want them saved as part of a recallable setup. For help in making your setup, check the references at right and other sections in this chapter specific to the setup you wish to make.	 ■ See *Powering On the Instrument* on page 1-8. ■ See page 3-24 for acquisition setup. ■ See page 3-43 for trigger setup.

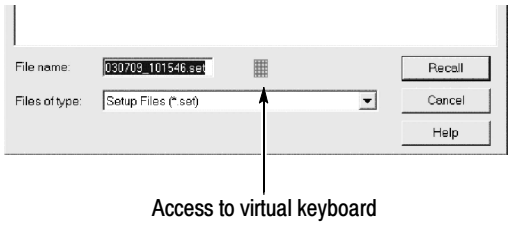
Overview	To save your setup (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Display the setups control window	**3.** From the toolbar, touch Setups and select the Save Setups tab of the Setups control window.	
Save the setup	**4.** Touch the number of the setup in which you want to save your setup. Data in the existing setup will be overwritten.	
Name your setup	**5.** Name your setup file by either: ■ Accepting the name that appears in the name field. ■ Double-clicking in the name field and using the keyboard window to enter a new name, replacing the default file name. ***Note**. You can use the mouse or touch screen with the virtual keyboard to type entries in the name field.* ■ Clicking the existing name and using an attached keyboard to enter a new name.	
To save to a file	**6.** To display the Save Instrument Setup As dialog, from the Setup control window, touch Save. The Save Instrument Setup dialog allows for the entry of a file name, file type, and location.	 

Overview	To save your setup (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Name a destination	**7.** Use the Save in: drop-down list and buttons to navigate to the directory in which to save your setup.	
Name your setup	**8.** Name your setup file by doing one of the following steps: ■ Accepting the default file name that appears in the File name: field. ■ Clicking in the File name field and typing a new name, replacing the default file name. ■ Clicking an existing name in the file list (if any are listed). Data in the existing file will be overwritten. ***Note**. If your instrument lacks a keyboard, touch or click the keyboard icon to display a virtual keyboard. You can use the mouse or touch screen with the virtual keyboard to type entries in the name fields and comments fields.* Select the Auto-increment file name check box to save a series of files without typing in a new name each time. For more information, see *Using Auto-Increment File Name* on page 3-200. **9.** If not selected, select *.set in the Save as type field as the type of file to save. (Setup files are always type *.set.) ***Note**. Only change the type if you want to temporarily see any other types of files in the current directory. Otherwise, leave it set at *.set.*	 
Save your setup	**10.** Touch the Save button to save the setup file. To cancel without saving, touch the Cancel button.	
For further assistance	**11.** For more help on saving setups, touch the Help button in the toolbar to access contextual help on screen.	

To Recall Your Setup

Use the procedure that follows to recall a setup to the instrument. Remember that recalling a setup replaces the existing setup, which is lost.

Overview	To recall your setup	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be powered up. You must have access to a setup saved by the instrument. ***Note.*** *This procedure does not make the setup active.*	 See *Powering On the Instrument* on page 1-8.
Display the setups control window	**2.** From the toolbar, touch Setups and select the Recall Setups tab of the Setups control window.	 
Recall the setup	**3.** Touch the number of the setup that you want to recall. The current instrument setup is overwritten.	
Recall setup from a file	**4.** To display the Recall Instrument Setup dialog, from the Recall Setup control window, touch Recall. The Recall Instrument Setup dialog allows navigation to directories, lists setup files in the directory, and provides for selection of a setup file.	
Find the source directory	**5.** Use the Look in: drop-down list and buttons to navigate to the directory, which contains a setup that you want to recall.	

Overview	To recall your setup (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Select your setup	**6.** If not selected, select *.set in the Save as type of file to include in the file listing. (Setup files are always type *.set.) ***Note**. Only change the type if you want to temporarily see other types of files in the current directory. Otherwise, leave it set at *.set.* **7.** Choose your setup file by either: ■ Clicking an existing name in the file list. ■ Clicking in the File name field and typing a new name, replacing the default file name. ***Note**. If your instrument lacks a keyboard, touch or click on the icons as indicated right to display a virtual keyboard. You can use the mouse or touch screen with the virtual keyboard to type entries in the name fields and comments fields.*	
Recall your setup	**8.** Touch the Recall button to recall the setup file. To cancel without recalling a setup, touch the Cancel button.	
For further assistance	**9.** For more help on recalling setups, touch the Help button in the toolbar to display contextual help on screen.	

Saving and Recalling Waveforms

This instrument can save any number of waveforms, limited only by the space you have to store them.

By saving a waveform, you can recall it at a later time for comparison, evaluation, and documentation. This capability is helpful when you want to:

- Recall a waveform for further evaluation or comparison with other waveforms.

- Extend the waveform carrying capacity of the instrument. The instrument supports four reference, four channel, and four math waveforms. If you want more than four references, you can save the additional reference to disk for recall later.

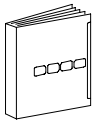
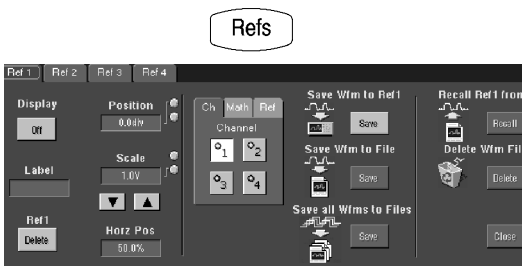
The Reference Waveform control window contains a Label field for including comments with your saved waveforms. Using comments you can store information, readable upon recall, describing each waveform that you save.

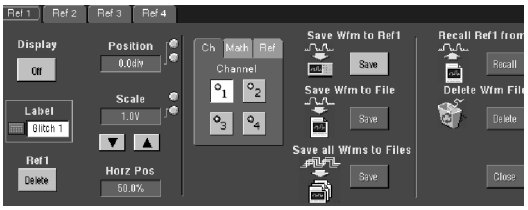
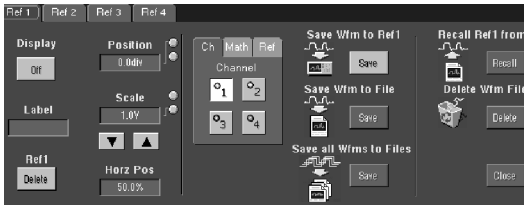
Virtual Keyboarding. If you do not have a keyboard connected, you can still enter comments and name waveform files. The Reference control window includes a Keyboard button. When you touch or click it, the instrument displays a virtual keyboard on screen that you can use with your mouse or the touch screen to enter the waveform-path name, file name, and comment.

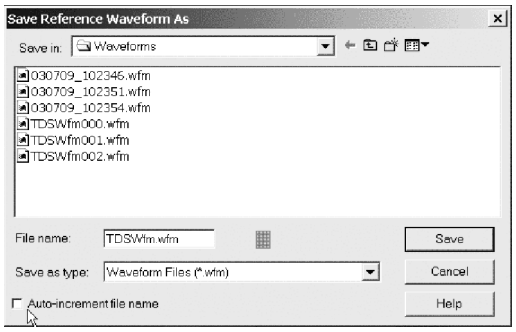
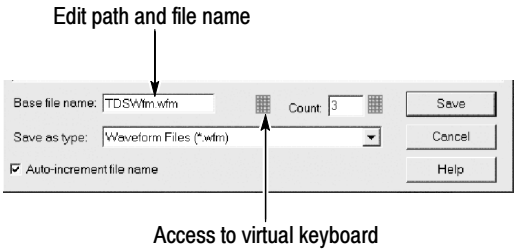
You cannot recall a waveform *into* a channel or a math waveform. The instrument recalls each waveform into one of the reference waveform locations (Ref1-Ref4).

To Save Your Waveform

Use the procedure that follows to save a waveform or waveforms to a reference location, the instrument hard disk, CD-RW drive, USB 2.0 memory device, or third party storage device.

Overview	To save a waveform	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be powered up. **2.** Make sure the waveform to be saved exists; that is, your source must be a channel, an active math waveform, or an active reference. Display the waveform with the setup in which you want to save it. For help in setup and acquiring waveforms, check the references at right.	 ■ See *Powering On the Instrument* on page 1-8. ■ See page 3-24 for acquisition setup. ■ See page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Display the reference control window	**3.** From the toolbar, touch Refs and select the Ref 1 to Ref 4 tab of the reference in which you want to save the waveform.	
Select the waveform to save	**4.** Select the Ch, Math, or Ref tab of the waveform that you want to save, and then touch the number of the channel, math, or reference waveform that you want to save.	

Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Label the waveform	**5.** If you want to label the waveform, touch Label, and use your keyboard or the pop-up keyboard to create a label for your waveform. You can label any channel, math, or reference waveform and position the label relative to the display edge and the vertical position of the waveform using the Label control window: ■ Using the menu bar, select Vertical and then Label ■ From the Label control window, select the waveform that you want to label using the Source buttons ■ From the Label control window, touch Label, and use your keyboard or the pop-up keyboard to create a label for your waveform ■ Position the label relative to the waveform using the multipurpose knobs, your keyboard, or the pop-up keyboard	
Save the waveform to a reference	**6.** Touch the Save Wmf to Ref(x) Save button to save your waveform. Data in the existing reference will be overwritten.	

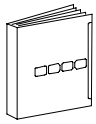
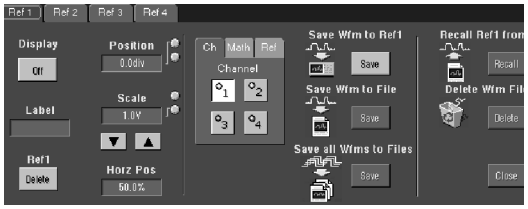
Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Save the waveform to a file	**7.** To save the waveform to a file, touch the Save Wfm to File Save button, or to save all active waveforms to files, touch the Save all Wfms to Files Save button. The Save Reference Waveform As window lists all available waveforms, allows for browsing to a destination directory (saving to file), and allows you to name the waveform file.	 
Select a destination	**8.** Use the Save in: drop-down list and buttons to navigate to the directory in which to save your waveform.	
Select directory and name file	**9.** To specify the file name in which to save your waveform you can: ■ Use the default name and directory appearing in the File Path field. ■ Rename the file by typing a new name into the File name field. ■ Select the Auto-increment file name check box to save a series of files without typing in a new name each time. For more information, see *Using Auto-Increment File Name* on page 3-200.	

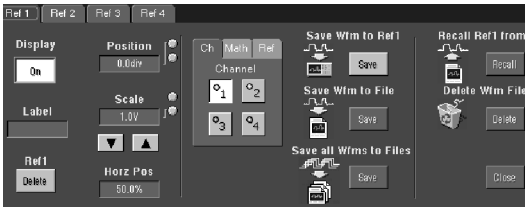
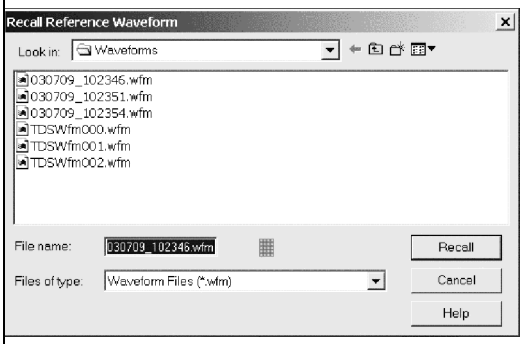
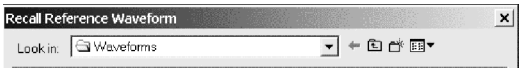
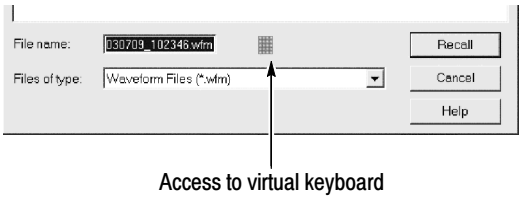
Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Save your waveform	**10.** Touch the Save button to save the waveform file or reference. To cancel without saving, touch the Cancel button.	
For further assistance	**11.** For more help on saving waveforms, touch the Help button in the toolbar to access the contextual online help.	

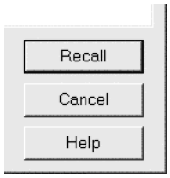
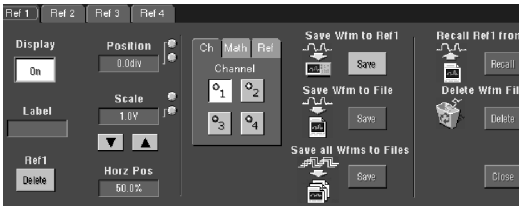
To Recall Your Waveform

Use the procedure that follows to recall a waveform to a reference. You can only recall waveforms into references.

***NOTE**. Reference waveforms do not recall because they are already reside in the instrument. You can copy a reference waveform to another reference: first display the reference to be copied, and then use the Save Waveform procedure to save it to another reference (Ref1-Ref4).*

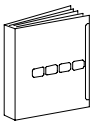
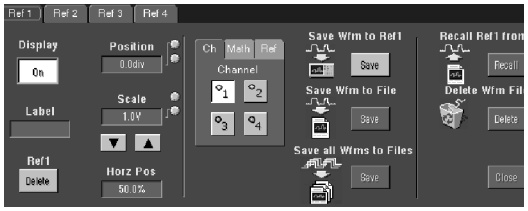
Overview	To recall your waveform	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be powered up. You must have access to a waveform saved by the instrument.	 ■ See *Powering On the Instrument* on page 1-8.
Display the reference control window	**2.** From the toolbar, touch Refs, and then select the Ref 1 to Ref 4 tab of the reference in which you want to recall the waveform.	 
Recall the waveform	**3.** If recalling an internal reference, touch Display to toggle the display of the reference waveform on.	

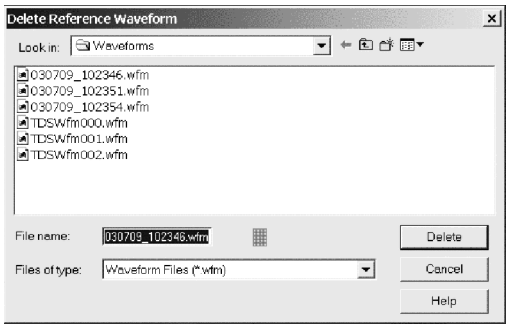
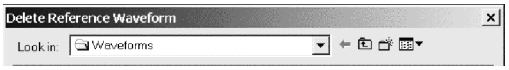
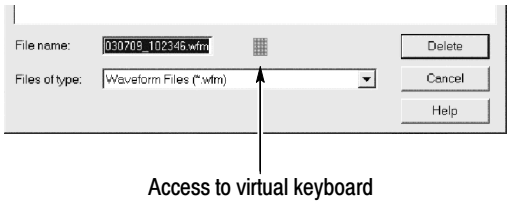
Overview	To recall your waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Recall a reference waveform from a file	**4.** To display the Recall Reference Waveform window, from the Recall Ref(x) from File window, touch Recall. The Recall Reference Waveform window allows navigation to directories, lists waveform files in the directory, and provides for selection of a waveform file.	 
Find the source directory	**5.** Use the Look in: drop-down list and buttons to navigate to the directory, which contains a waveform that you want to recall.	
Select your waveform	**6.** If not selected, select *.wfm in the Files of type field to force the file listing to only include these types. Use *.wfm for waveforms. ***Note**. Only change the type if you want to temporarily see any other types of files in the current directory. Otherwise, leave it set to *.wfm.* **7.** Choose your waveform file by either: ■ Clicking an existing name in the file list. ■ Clicking in the File name field and typing a new name, replacing the default file name. ***Note**. If your instrument lacks a keyboard, touch or click the keyboard icon to display a virtual keyboard. You can use the mouse or touch screen with the virtual keyboard to type entries in the name fields.*	

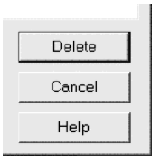
Overview	To recall your waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Recall your waveform	**8.** Touch the Recall button to recall the waveform file. To cancel without recalling a waveform, touch the Cancel button.	
Display your reference waveform	**9.** Touch Display to toggle the display of the reference waveform on.	
For further assistance	**10.** For more help on recalling waveforms, touch the Help button to access contextual online help.	

To Clear References

You can clear individual references of data or delete waveform files. If you are sure you do not want the data a reference waveform contains, use the procedures that follow to clear it. To clear all references and setups, use Tek Secure.

Overview	To clear references	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be powered up. You must have access to a waveform saved by the instrument.	 ■ See *Powering On the Instrument* on page 1-8.
Display the reference control window	**2.** From the toolbar, touch Refs, and select the tab (Ref 1 to Ref 4) of the reference that you want to delete.	 
Delete the reference	**3.** Touch Delete to delete the reference waveform.	

Overview	To clear references (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Delete a reference waveform file	**4.** To display the Delete Reference Waveform window, from the Delete Wfm File window, touch Delete.	
	The Delete Reference Waveform window allows navigation to directories, lists waveform files in the directory, and provides for selection of a waveform file.	
Find the file directory	**5.** Use the Look in: drop-down list and buttons to navigate to the directory of the file to delete.	
Find your file	**6.** Select the file type in the Files of type drop-down list to force the file listing to only include these types. Use *.wfm for waveforms. ***Note**. Only change the type if you want to temporarily see any other types of files in the current directory. Otherwise, leave it set to *.wfm for waveforms.* **7.** Choose your waveform file by clicking an existing name in the file list. ***Note**. If your instrument lacks a keyboard, touch or click the keyboard icon to display a virtual keyboard. You can use the mouse or touch screen with the virtual keyboard to type entries in the name fields.*	

Overview	To clear references (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Delete the file	**8.** Touch the Delete button to Delete the file. To cancel without deleting a file, touch the Cancel button.	
For further assistance	**9.** For more help on deleting files, touch the Help button to access contextual online help.	

Exporting and Copying Waveforms

This instrument also supports export of waveform data to a file. The instrument can export waveforms, images, and measurements in several formats. You can also copy waveform data to the clipboard for use with other applications.

By exporting a waveform, you can use it with other analysis tools, such as spreadsheets or math-analysis applications.

Waveforms export as a series of comma-separated values (CSV), which are amplitudes without units. There is no timing information, but data is placed in the file in sequence from the first sample in the waveform record to the last.

Because the waveforms are exported as CSV, without timing and scaling information, the instrument does not import these waveforms directly. If you intend to recall a waveform later, save it (see the procedure *To Save Your Waveform* on page 3–206) instead of exporting it.

You may also choose to copy a waveform and paste it directly into an application such as Microsoft Word or Excel. If so, select your waveform, and then select Copy in the Edit menu.

File Formats. To make exported files more useful, you may select a file format usable by your analysis tools:

- Numeric creates files (.txt) in a numeric format usable by text and word processors.
- Text creates files (.txt) in a text format usable by text and word processors.
- Bitmap creates files (.bmp) in a bitmap file format usable by many graphic programs.
- JPEG creates files (.jpg) in a compressed image format usable by many graphic programs.
- PNG creates files (.png) in a compressed image format that is nonlossy.
- Spreadsheet creates files (.CSV) in a format usable by spreadsheets (Excel, Lotus 1-2-3, and Quattro Pro).
- MatLab creates files (.DAT) in a format usable by MatLab.
- MathCad creates files (.DAT) in a format usable by MathCad.

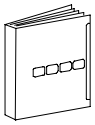
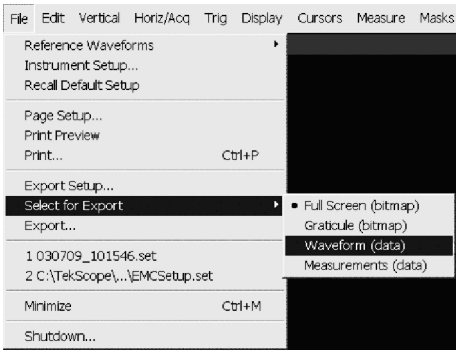
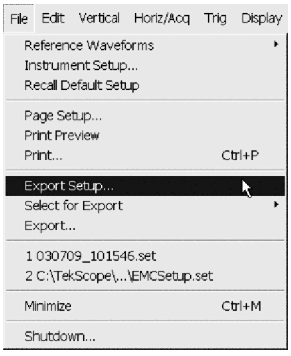
Note that the MathCad file is an ASCII file, the first four values of which contain header information:

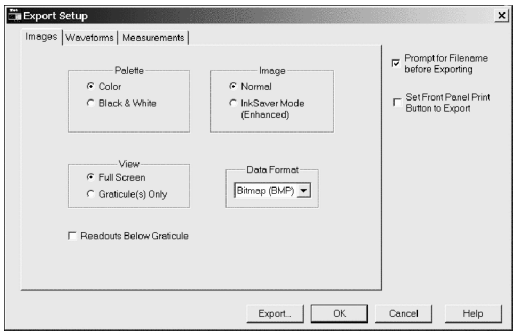
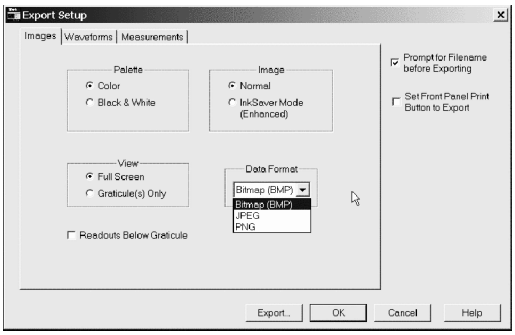
- The first header value holds the record length.
- The second header value holds time, in seconds, between samples.
- The third header value holds the trigger position (expressed as an index in the data position).
- The fourth header value refers to the fractional trigger position.

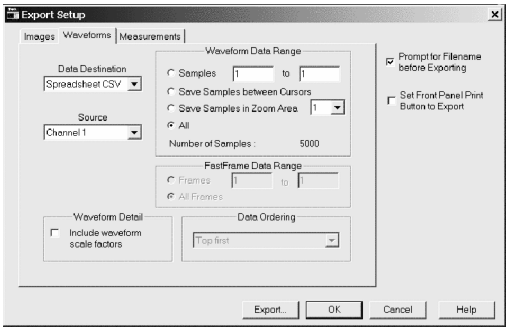
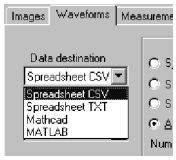
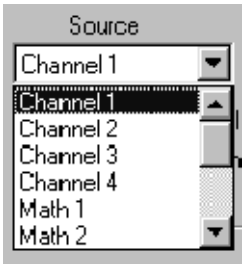
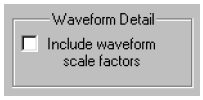
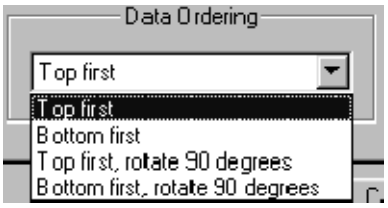
Also note that the delimiters are carriage returns.

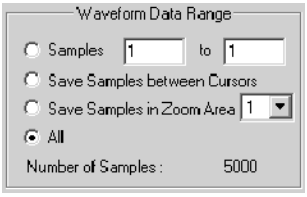
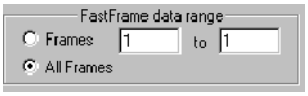
To Export Your Waveform

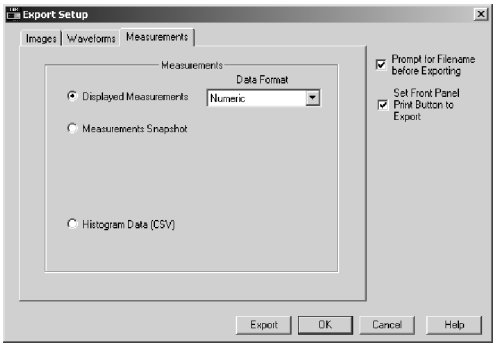
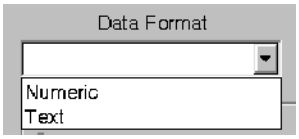
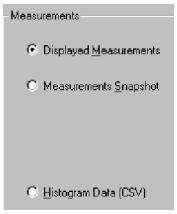
Use the procedure that follows to export a waveform or waveforms to the instrument hard disk, a CD-RW drive, USB 2.0 memory device, or third party storage device.

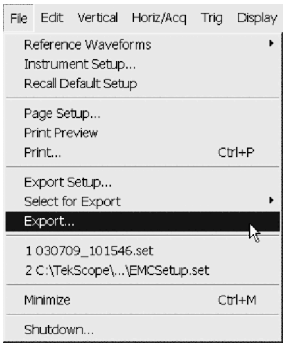
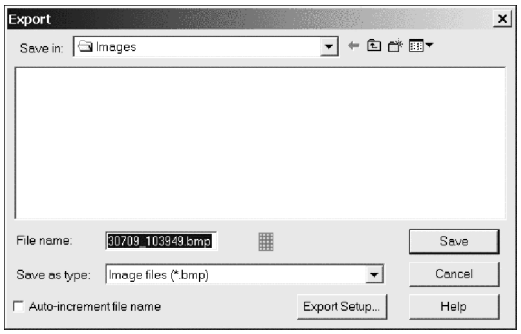
Overview	To save a waveform	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be powered up. **2.** Make sure the waveform, image, or measurement to be exported exists; that is, your source must be a channel, an active math waveform, an active reference, and so forth.	 ■ See *Powering On the Instrument* on page 1-8. ■ See page 3-24 for acquisition setup. ■ See page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Select for export	**3.** From the menu bar, select File, and then select Select for Export. The menu lists all available waveform, image, and measurement types available for export: ■ Full Screen to export a bitmap of all screen contents ■ Graticule to export a bitmap of only the graticule area ■ Waveform to export waveform data ■ Measurements to export measurement data	
Select setup for export	**4.** From the menu bar, select File, and then select Export Setup to display the Export Setup control window.	

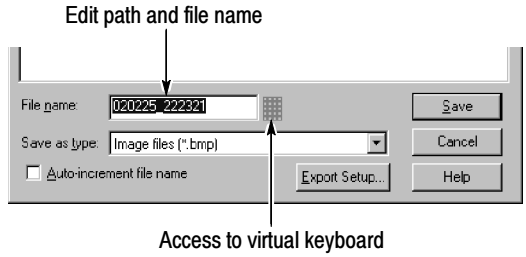
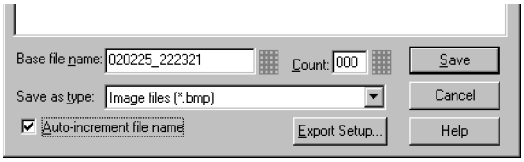
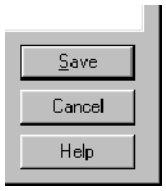
Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Setup to export images	**5.** Select the Images tab to display the Images control window. **6.** In the Palette window, select Color or Black & White for the color palette of your exported images. **7.** In the View window, select whether you want to export the Full Screen or Graticules Only. **8.** In the Image window, select whether you want to export using Normal or InkSaver with Enhanced Waveform Color Mode. ■ Normal exports the image exactly as it appears on-screen ■ InkSaver with Enhanced Waveform Color exports the image with colors designed to print with the white background **9.** Touch Data Format, and select the data format from the drop-down list.	 

Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Setup to export waveforms	**10.** Select the Waveforms tab to display the Waveforms control window.	
	11. Touch Data Destination, and select the destination (format) of your exported waveform file (see *File Formats* on page 3-214 for information on the available formats).	
	12. Touch Source Waveform, and select the source of the waveform (a channel, math, or reference waveform) to export from the list.	
	13. If you want waveform scale factors and time values included in your MathCad/Mathlab files, touch Include waveform scale factors; if not checked, only voltage (vertical) values are exported.	
	14. Touch Data Ordering, and select the data order (top first, bottom first, or rotate) from the list.	

Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
	15. In the Waveform data range window, select the data to include in the exported files: ■ Samples to enter the data range of the data to include in the exported files ■ Save Samples between Cursors to include data between the cursors in the exported files ■ Save Samples in Zoom Area to include data in zoom area 1, 2, 3, or 4 in the exported files ■ All to include all data in the exported files **16.** If using FastFrame, select the frame range to include in the exported files: ■ All Frames to include all frames in the exported files ■ Frames to enter a range of frames to include in the exported files	 

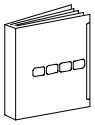
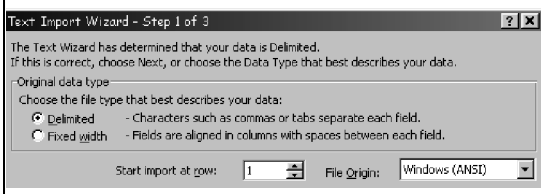
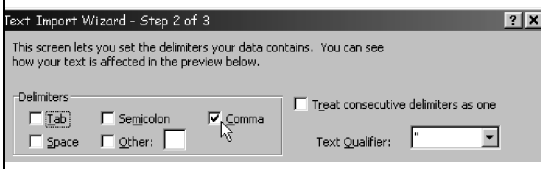
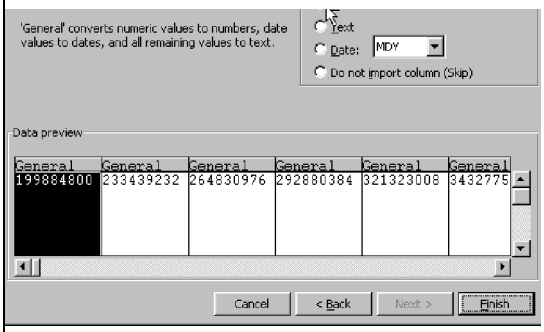
Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Setup to export measurements	**17.** Select the Measurements tab to display the Measurements control window.	
	18. Touch Data Format, and select the data format (text or numeric) from the list.	
	19. Select the Measurements that you want to export: ■ Displayed Measurements exports measurements that are displayed on screen ■ Measurements Snapshot exports a snapshot of all measurements ■ Histogram Data exports current histogram data	
	20. Touch OK to accept your changes, Cancel to close the window without making changes, or Help to access more information.	

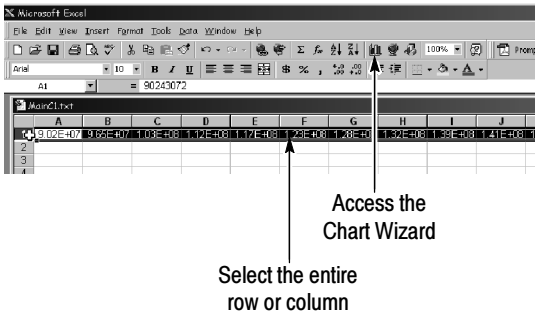
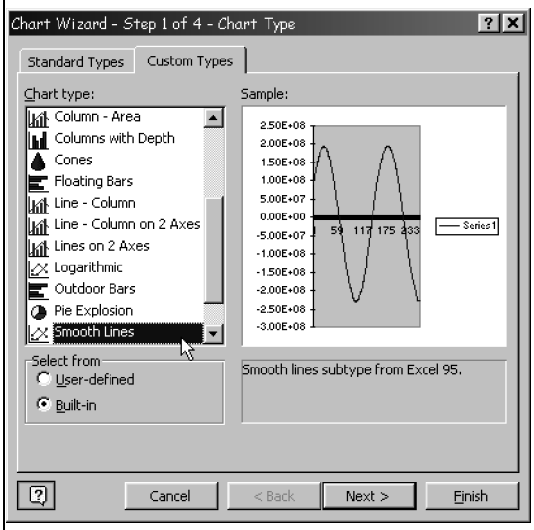
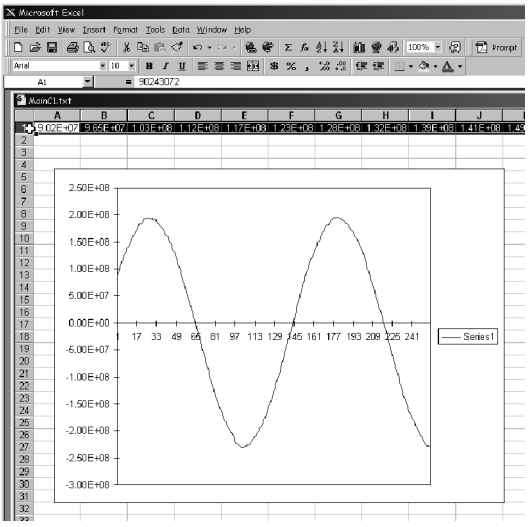
Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Export your file	**21.** To export the file, from the menu bar, select Export. You can also attach the front-panel PRINT button to Export. Then, pressing the PRINT button will export your file. Do the following to attach the PRINT button to Export: ■ From the menu bar, select File, and then select Export Setup to display the Export Setup control window ■ Touch Set Print button to Export **22.** The Export window lists all available waveforms, allows for browsing to the destination directory, naming the file, and selecting the file format.	 
Select a destination	**23.** Use the Save in: drop-down list and buttons to navigate to the directory in which you want to save the file.	

Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Name the file	**24.** Select the file type in the Save as type drop-down list to force the file listing to only include these types. Use *.dat for waveforms. ***Note**. Only change the type if you want to temporarily see any other types of files in the current directory. Otherwise, leave it as set by the Export Setup control window.* **25.** Specify the filename in which to save your waveform. You can: ■ Use the default name and directory appearing in the File name field. ■ Rename the file by typing a new name into the File name field. ■ Select the Auto-increment file name check box to save a series of files without typing in a new name each time. For more information, see *Using Auto-Increment File Name* on page 3-200. ***Note**. If your instrument lacks a keyboard, touch or click the keyboard icon buttons to display a virtual keyboard. You can use the mouse or touch screen with the virtual keyboard to type entries in the name fields.*	 
Save the file	**26.** Touch the Save button to save the file. To cancel without saving a file, touch the Cancel button.	
For further assistance	**27.** For more help on exporting files, touch the Help button to access contextual online help.	

To Use an Exported Waveform

How you use the exported waveform depends on your application. The following example is a simple application; the procedure is general and may require adapting for your spreadsheet or other data-analysis tool.

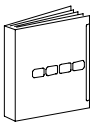
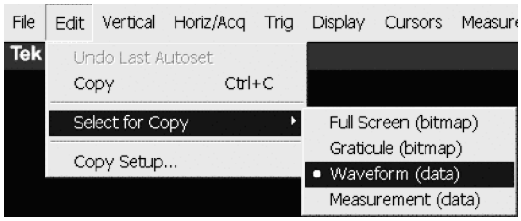
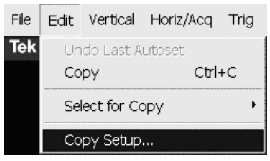
Overview	To use exported waveforms	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** MS Excel 97, 2000, or 2002 running on a PC or on the instrument. **2.** Access to a waveform exported by the instrument.	 ■ See *To Save Your Waveform* on page 3-206.
Import the waveform data	**3.** In Excel, select Open from the File menu. Use the window that pops up to navigate to the directory containing the file. ***Note.*** *If using MS Excel 2000 or 2002, skip the next step.* **4.** In the dialog that displays, make the selections as shown at the right as you navigate through the Text Import Wizard. You must select **delimiter** as your data type, **comma** as the delimiter type, and **General** as your Column data format. ***Note.*** *This step assumes MS Excel 97; your tool may have similar import features for comma-separated data. Check its documentation.* ***Note.*** *To plot 2 channels, export the first channel with scale factors and time values. Export the second channel as voltages only.*	  

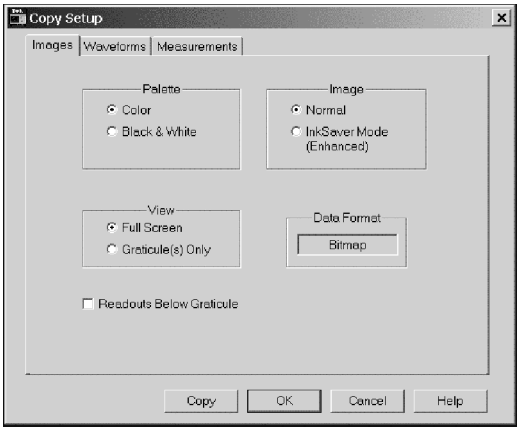
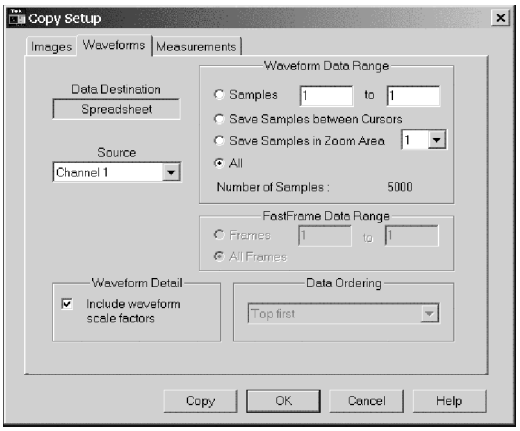
Overview	To use exported waveforms (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Begin your chart	**5.** Touch the row or column number to select the entire row or column containing your imported waveform values (see right). **6.** Select the Chart button from the toolbar or from the Insert menu.	
Specify a line-graph chart	**7.** From the Chart Wizard, make sure **Built In** is selected. Then select either of the following: ■ Lines in the Standards Types tab ■ Smooth lines in the Custom Types tab	
Finish the chart	**8.** Click Next to step through the next two steps accepting the defaults setting at each step. Click the Finish button in step 4. You should have a waveform display similar to that shown at the right. ***Note.*** *This procedure assumes MS Excel 97. You can likely specify titles, customize the treatment and labeling of the x and y axes, and so forth in your data-analysis application—either as you create the chart or afterward. Use the help for your data-analysis application to determine if it has these capabilities and for instructions in using them.*	

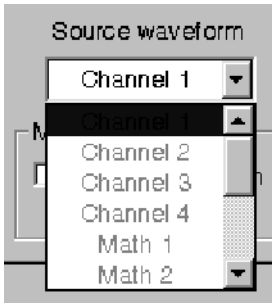
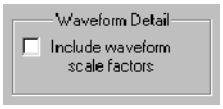
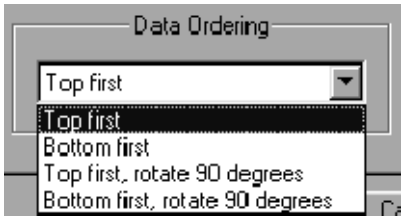
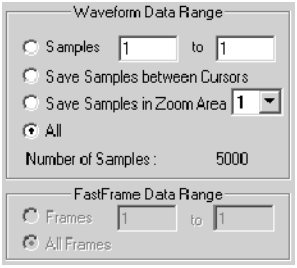
Overview	To use exported waveforms (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
For further assistance	**9.** For more help on exporting waveforms, touch the Help button in the window to access contextual online help.	

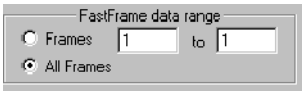
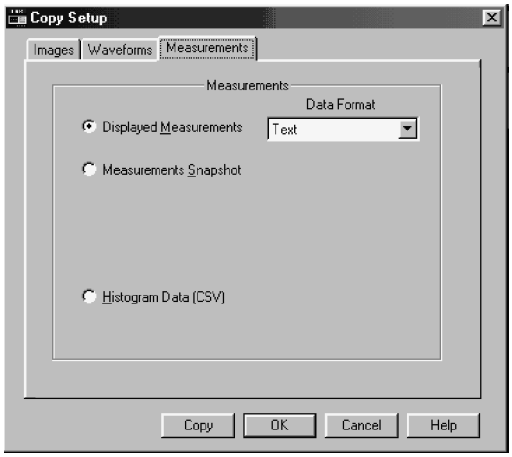
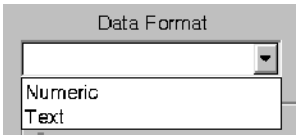
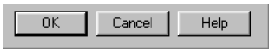
To Copy Your Waveform

Use the procedure that follows to copy a waveform to the clipboard.

Overview	To save a waveform	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Make sure the waveform, image, or measurement to be copied exists; that is, your source must be a channel, an active math waveform, an active reference, and so forth.	 ■ See *Powering On the Instrument* on page 1-8. ■ See page 3-24 for acquisition setup. ■ See page 3-43 for trigger setup.
Select for copy	**2.** From the menu bar, select Edit, and then select Select for Copy. The menu lists all available waveform, image, and measurement types available for export: ■ Full Screen to export a bitmap of all screen contents ■ Graticule to export a bitmap of only the graticule area ■ Waveform to export waveform data ■ Measurements to export measurement data	
Select setup for copy	**3.** From the menu bar, select Edit, and then select Copy Setup to display the Copy Setup control window.	

Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Setup to copy images	**4.** Select the Images tab to display the Images control window. **5.** In the Palette window, select Color or Black & White for the color palette of your copied images. **6.** In the View window, select whether you want to copy the Full Screen or Graticules Only. **7.** In the Image window, select whether you want to copy using Normal or InkSaver Mode.	
Setup to copy waveforms	**8.** Select the Waveforms tab to display the Waveforms control window.	

Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Setup to copy waveforms (Cont.)	**9.** Touch Source Waveform, and select the source of the waveform (a channel, math, or reference waveform) to copy from the list.	
	10. If you want waveform scale factors included in your Mathcad files, touch Include waveform scale factors.	
	11. Touch Data Ordering, and select the data order (top first; bottom first; top first, rotate 90 degrees; or bottom first, rotate 90 degrees) from the list.	
	12. In the Waveform data range window, select the data to include in the exported files: ■ Samples to enter the data range of the data to include in the exported files ■ Save Samples between Cursors to include data between the cursors in the exported files ■ Save Samples in Zoom Area to include data in zoom area 1, 2, 3, or 4 in the exported files ■ All to include all data in the exported files	

Overview	To save a waveform (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
	13. If using FastFrame, select the frame range to include in the copied files: ■ All Frames to include all frames in the copied files ■ Frames to enter a range of frames to include in the copied files	
Setup to copy measurements	**14.** Select the Measurements tab to display the Measurements control window. **15.** Select Displayed Measurements to copy measurements that are displayed on screen, select Measurements Snapshot to copy a snapshot of all measurements, or select Histogram Data to copy histogram data in comma separated values format.	
	16. Touch Data Format and select the data format (text or numeric) from the list.	
Copy your file	**17.** Touch OK to accept your changes and copy the file to the clipboard, Cancel to close the window without making changes, or Help to access more information.	
For further assistance	**18.** For more help on copying files, touch the Help button to access contextual online help.	

Printing Waveforms

You can print the display screen, including any waveforms displayed. Before you can print, you must install and set up your printer. Consult the instructions that come with your printer. Also for printer setup instructions, you can display Windows help and access its section on printers.

To Print from Front Panel

To print a waveform from the front panel, push the front-panel PRINT button. The display screen will print on the default printer. For additional print options, see the topics that follow.

To Print from Menu Bar

To print a waveform, from the application menu bar, select the File menu, and then select Print. The instrument displays the standard MS Windows xp Print window shown in Figure 3–60. Access the Windows help system for more information.

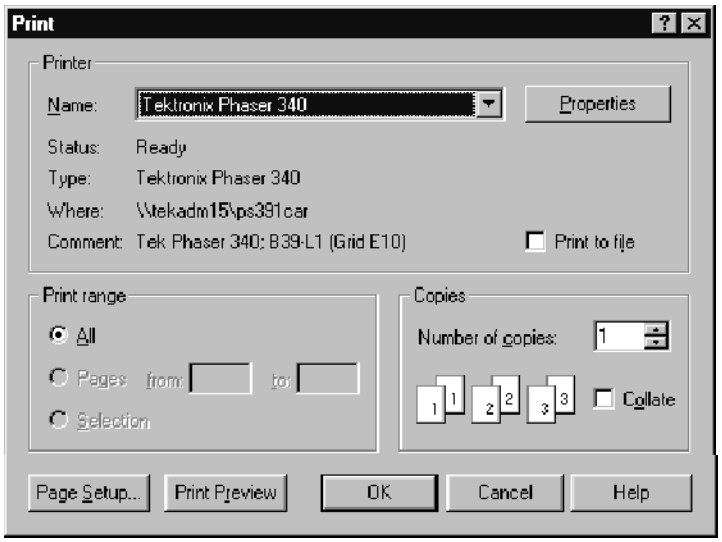


Figure 3- 60: Print window

To Set Up the Page

To set the format of the printed page, from the menu bar select the File menu, and then select Page Setup. The instrument displays the Page Setup window shown in Figure 3–62.

- **Paper:** select the paper size and source from the drop-down lists.
- **Orientation:** select either Portrait or Landscape (see Figure 3–61).
- **Margins:** set the margins you want for your page.

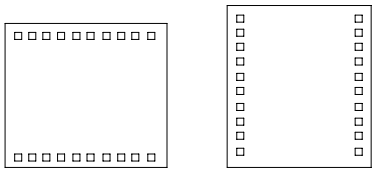


Figure 3-61: Hardcopy formats

- **Palette:** select either Color or Black & White.
- **View:** select either Full-Screen or Graticule(s) Only:
  - Full-Screen displays both the graticule and menu areas of the screen
  - Graticule(s) displays only the graticule area of the display
- **Image:** select either Normal or InkSaver with Enhanced Waveform Color Mode.
  - Normal exports the image exactly as it appears on-screen
  - InkSaver with Enhanced Waveform Color exports the image with colors designed to print with the white background

Touch Help for more information.

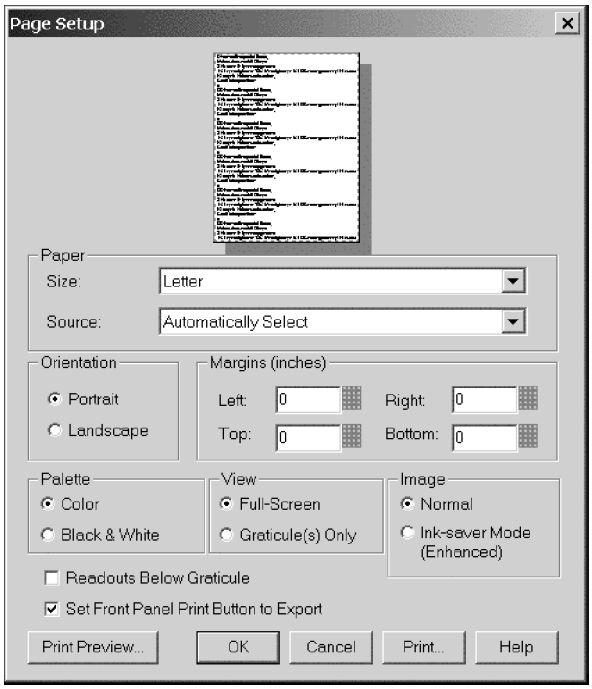


Figure 3- 62: Page setup window

To Preview the Page

To preview your printout, from the menu bar select the File menu, and then select Print Preview. The instrument displays the standard MS Windows 2000 Print Preview window shown in Figure 3–63. Access the Windows help system for more information.

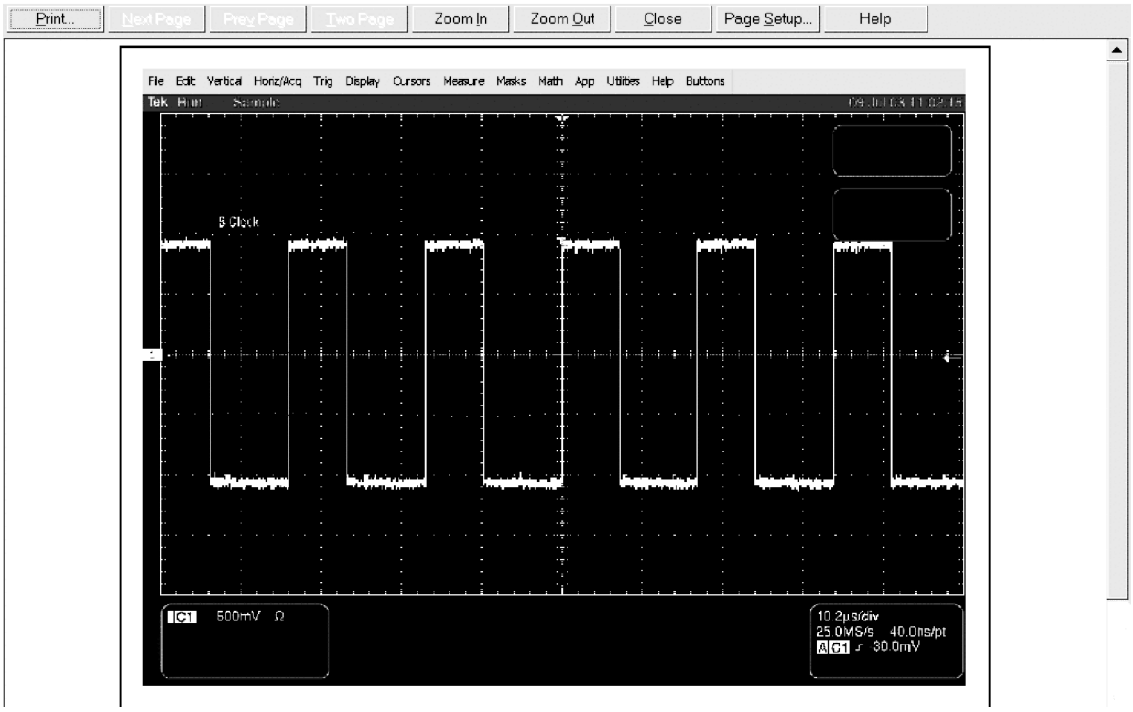


Figure 3- 63: Print preview window

To Print Using Print Screen

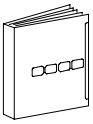
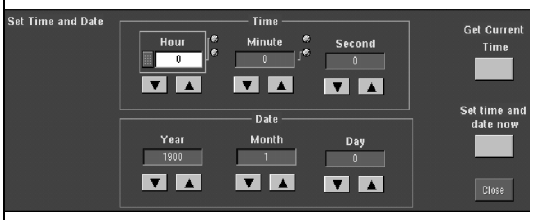
Pressing the Windows Print Screen key copies the currently displayed bitmap to the clipboard. This bitmap does not include the instrument waveforms or graticule. The waveforms and graticule are displayed by the graphics adapter outside of normal Windows mechanisms.

The graphics adapter uses a technique similar to that used by TV weathermen. They stand in front of a blank (blue) screen that is electronically replaced by a weather map. The instrument uses a blank (dark gray) image that is electronically replaced by the graticule and the waveforms that are currently being displayed. If you load the bitmap into a program such as Paint, the graticule and waveforms are not part of the bitmap, and, although they are visible on Paint's window, they will not be saved or printed.

To capture the instrument screen with its graticule and waveform, either use Copy in the Edit menu after selecting Image in the Copy Setup menu, or if you want to build a bitmap file, select Export in the File menu after selecting Full Screen (bitmap) in the Select for Export menu. For additional information see *Exporting and Copying Waveforms* on page 3–213.

To Date/Time Stamp Hardcopies

You can display the current date and time on screen so that they appear on hardcopies that you print. To date and time stamp your hardcopy, do the following steps:

Overview	To date/time stamp hardcopies	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** The instrument must be powered on.	 See *Powering On the Instrument* on page 1-8.
To display the date and time	**2.** From the toolbar, touch Disp and select the Objects tab. **3.** Touch Display Date/Time to toggle it on.	
To set the date and time	**4.** From the menu bar, touch Utilities and select Set Time & Date to display the Set Time and Date control window. **5.** Touch Hour, Minute, or Second and use the multipurpose knobs, keypad, or arrow buttons to enter the time. **6.** Touch Year, Month, or Day and use the multipurpose knobs, keypad, or arrow buttons to enter the date. **7.** Touch Set time and date now to set the time and date.	 
To get the current time	**8.** Touch Get Current Time to get the current time from the Windows operating system.	

Remote Communication

Remote communication is performed through the GPIB interface. Consult the online Programmer Guide for help with establishing remote communication and control of the instrument.

To access the Programmer Guide, locate the Product Software CD that was shipped with the instrument. Install the CD in the personal computer that you want to use, typically your instrument controller. Follow the directions in the CD booklet.

You can install the guide in the instrument, but that may not be convenient because it will cover the instrument screen.

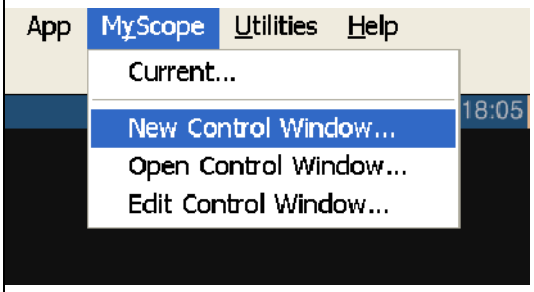
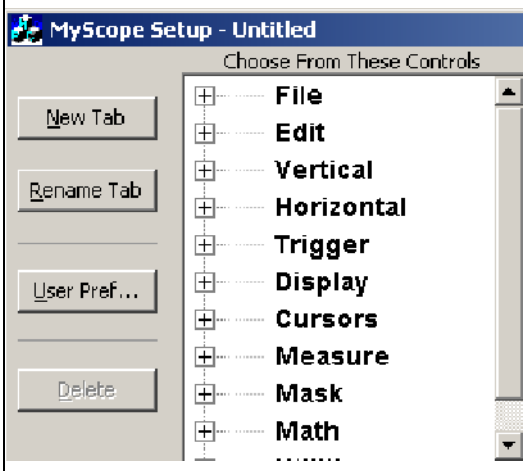
For information on connecting the instrument to a network to enable printing, file sharing, internet access, and other communications functions, see *Connecting to a Network* on page 1–15.

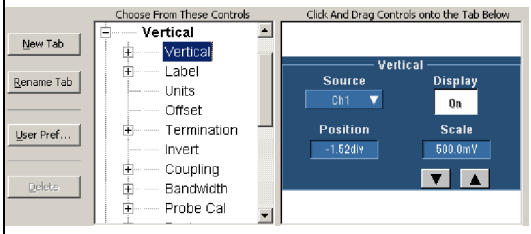
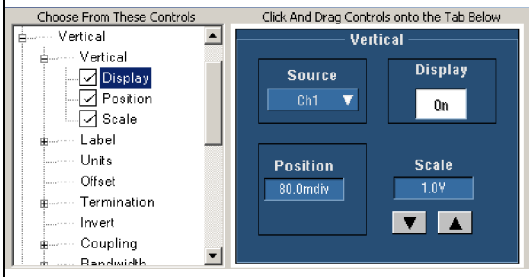
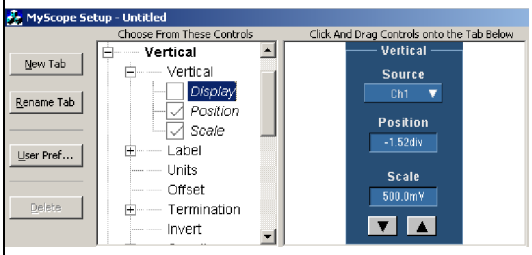
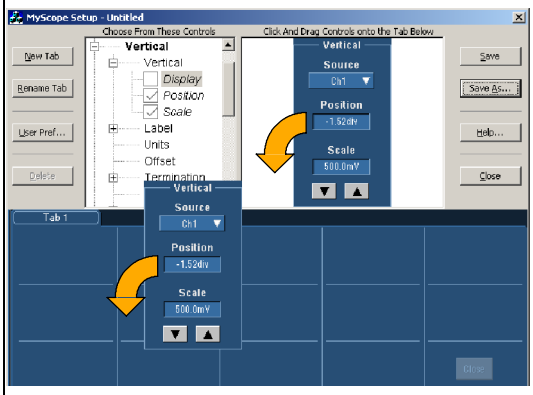
MyScope

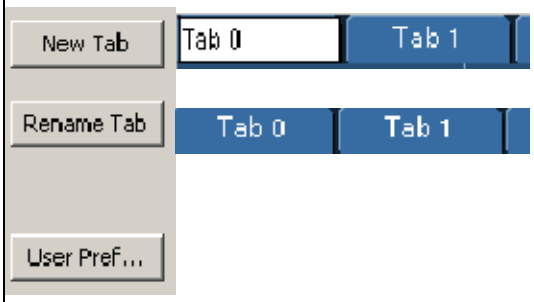
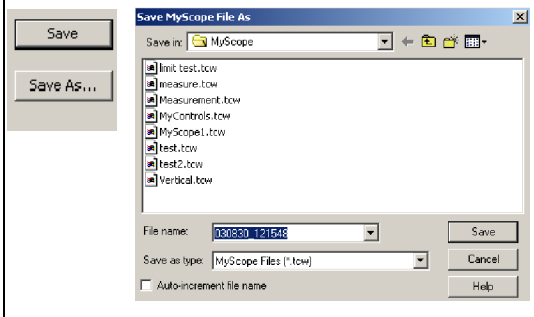
MyScope allows you to create custom control windows that include only the controls that you use regularly. Instead of switching between several control windows, you can put the controls that you use into a custom control window.

Creating MyScope Control Windows

This section contains procedures for creating MyScope control windows. Detailed information is available in the online help.

Overview	To create a new MyScope control window	Control elements and resources
Select from menu	1. Select **MyScope > New Control Window...**. 2. Click + to expand a category. Controls that can be added to your MyScope control window are contained within each category. The categories match the menu bar to aid you in finding the controls that you normally use.	 

Overview	To create a new MyScope control window (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Make control selections	**3.** Click a control to preview it.	
	4. Double-click the control or click the + to expand the control list. (If there is no +, then the control cannot be customized further.)	
	5. Clear the check boxes to remove any components that you do not want included in the control.	
Create a control window	**6.** Click and drag the control to your MyScope control window. The control will snap to the nearest grid location when you release the mouse. You can change the placement of the control in your MyScope control window by clicking and dragging. To reconfigure a control, click and drag it back to the preview window. Then select or clear the check boxes to include or remove components in the control.	

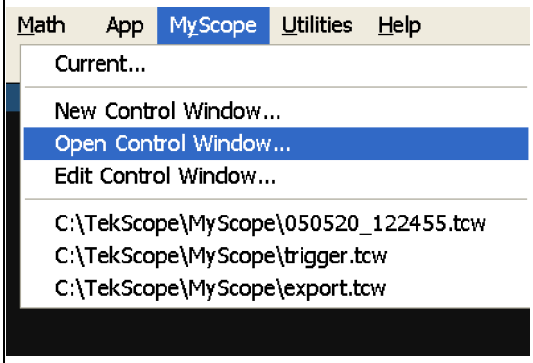
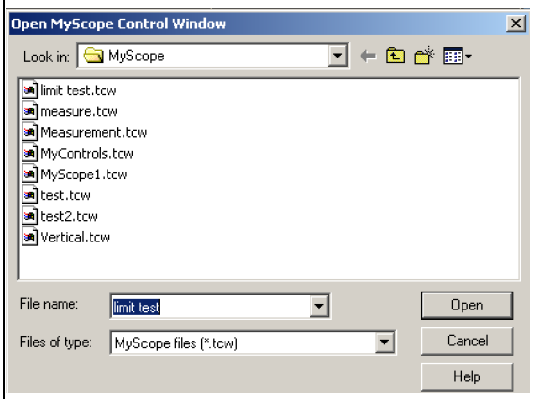
Overview	To create a new MyScope control window (Cont.)	Control elements and resources
Add tabs	7. Click **New Tab** to add a tab to your MyScope control window. You can have up to eight tabs. 8. To rename a tab do one of the following: ■ Click **Rename Tab** ■ Double-click the tab Then type the new name. 9. To change the tab order, click and drag a tab to a new location.	
Set user preferences	10. Click **User Pref...** to specify user preferences that are loaded with your MyScope control window.	
Delete controls	11. To delete controls do one of the following: ■ Select a tab, and then click **Delete**. The tab and all of the controls are deleted. ■ Select a control, and then click **Delete.** Just the selected control is deleted. ■ Click and drag the control to the upper half of the screen (off your MyScope control window).	
Save MyScope control window	12. Click **Save**, and then enter a name for your MyScope control window, or use the default name.	

Using MyScope Control Windows

The following section describes how to use MyScope control windows after you have created them.

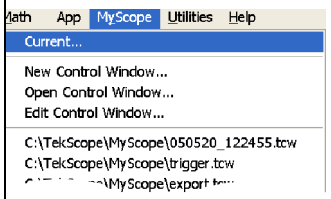
To Open a MyScope Control Window

Use the following procedure to open an existing MyScope control window.

Overview	To open a MyScope control window	Control elements and resources
Select from menu	1. Select **MyScope > Open Control Window...** or one of the five most recently used MyScope windows.	
Select a control window	2. Select the MyScope control window that you want to use, and then click **Open**.	

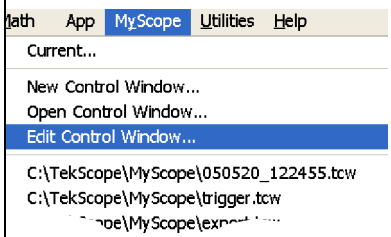
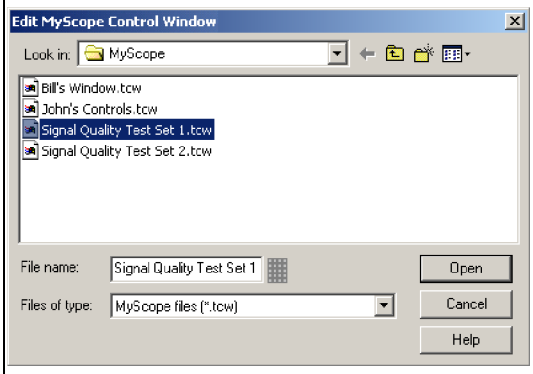
To Display the Active Myscope Control Window

Use the following procedure to display the active MyScope control window.

Overview	To display the active MyScope control window	Control elements and resources
Select from menu	1. Select **MyScope > Current...** (Your MyScope control window remains active even when it is not displayed.)	

To Edit a MyScope Control Window

Use the following procedure to edit a MyScope control window.

Overview	To edit a MyScope control window	Control elements and resources
Select from menu	1. Select **MyScope > Edit Control Window...**.	
Select a control window	2. Select the control window that you want to edit, and then click **Open**.	

Quick Tips

- Some controls function differently in a MyScope control window than they do in the standard control window. For details, see the online help.
- You can copy MyScope control windows (.tcw files) to other TDS6000B or TDS6000C Series instruments.

Appendices

Appendix A: Automatic Measurements Supported

This appendix provides a list of all supported measurements and their definitions. An illustration showing the levels used to take measurements is also included.

Table A-1: Supported measurements and their definition

Name	Definition
Amplitude	Voltage measurement. The high value less the low value measured over the entire waveform or gated region. *Amplitude = High-Low*
Area	Area measurement (Voltage over time measurement). The area over the entire waveform or gated region in volt-seconds. Area measured above ground is positive; area below ground is negative.
Cycle Area	Voltage over time measurement. The area over the first cycle in the waveform, or the first cycle in the gated region, in volt-seconds. Area measured above ground is positive; area below ground is negative.
Burst Width	Timing measurement. The duration of a burst. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region.
Cycle Mean	Voltage measurement. The arithmetic mean over the first cycle in the waveform or the first cycle in the gated region.
Cycle RMS	Voltage measurement. The true Root Mean Square voltage over the first cycle in the waveform or the first cycle in the gated region.
Delay	Timing measurement. The time between the MidRef crossings of two different traces or the gated region of the traces.
Fall Time	Timing measurement. Time taken for the falling edge of the first pulse in the waveform or gated region to fall from a High Ref value (default = 90%) to a Low Ref value (default =10%) of its final value.
Frequency	Timing measurement for the first cycle in the waveform or gated region. The reciprocal of the period. Measured in Hertz (Hz) where 1 Hz = 1 cycle per second.
High	The value used as 100% whenever High Ref, Mid Ref, and Low Ref values are needed (as in fall time and rise time measurements). Calculated using either the min/max or the histogram method. The *min/max* method uses the maximum value found. The *histogram* method uses the most common value found above the mid point. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region.

Table A-1: Supported measurements and their definition (Cont.)

Name	Definition
Low	The value used as 0% whenever High Ref, Mid Ref, and Low Ref values are needed (as in fall time and rise time measurements). May be calculated using either the min/max or the histogram method. With the min/max method it is the minimum value found. With the histogram method, it refers to the most common value found below the midpoint. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region.
Maximum	Voltage measurement. The maximum amplitude. Typically the most positive peak voltage. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region.
Mean	Voltage measurement. The arithmetic mean over the entire waveform or gated region.
Minimum	Voltage measurement. The minimum amplitude. Typically the most negative peak voltage. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region.
Negative Duty Cycle	Timing measurement of the first cycle in the waveform or gated region. The ratio of the negative pulse width to the signal period expressed as a percentage. $NegativeDutyCycle = \frac{NegativeWidth}{Period} \times 100\%$
Negative Overshoot	Voltage measurement. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region. $NegativeOvershoot = \frac{Low–Min}{Amplitude} \times 100\%$
Negative Width	Timing measurement of the first pulse in the waveform or gated region. The distance (time) between MidRef (default 50%) amplitude points of a negative pulse.
Peak to Peak	Voltage measurement. The absolute difference between the maximum and minimum amplitude in the entire waveform or gated region.
Phase	Timing measurement. The amount one waveform leads or lags another in time. Expressed in degrees, where 360° comprise one waveform cycle.
Period	Timing measurement. Time it takes for the first complete signal cycle to happen in the waveform or gated region. The reciprocal of frequency. Measured in seconds.
Positive Duty Cycle	Timing measurement of the first cycle in the waveform or gated region. The ratio of the positive pulse width to the signal period expressed as a percentage. $PositiveDutyCycle = \frac{PositiveWidth}{Period} \times 100\%$

Table A-1: Supported measurements and their definition (Cont.)

Name	Definition
Positive Overshoot	Voltage measurement over the entire waveform or gated region. $PositiveOvershoot = \frac{Max - High}{Amplitude} \times 100\%$
Positive Width	Timing measurement of the first pulse in the waveform or gated region. The distance (time) between MidRef (default 50%) amplitude points of a positive pulse.
Rise time	Timing measurement. Time taken for the leading edge of the first pulse in the waveform or gated region to rise from a Low Ref value (default = 10%) to a High Ref value (default = 90%) of its final value.
RMS	Voltage measurement. The true Root Mean Square voltage over the entire waveform or gated region.
Mean	The average of all acquired points within (or on) the histogram box.
Median	Half of all acquired points within (or on) the histogram box are less than and half are greater than this value.
StdDev	The standard deviation (Root Mean Square (RMS) deviation) of all acquired points within (or on) the histogram box.
Hits in Box	Displays the number of points in the histogram box or on the box boundary.
Waveform Count	Displays the number of waveforms that have contributed to the histogram.
Peak Hits	Displays the number of points in the largest bin of the histogram.
Pk-Pk	Displays the peak-to-peak value of the histogram. Vertical histograms display the “voltage” of the highest nonzero bin minus the “voltage” of the lowest nonzero bin. Horizontal histograms display the “time” of the rightmost nonzero bin minus the “time” of the leftmost nonzero bin (Max - Min).
Max	Displays the maximum voltage or time.
Min	Displays the minimum voltage or time.
Mean ± 1 StdDev	The percentage of points in the histogram that are within 1 standard deviation of the histogram mean.
Mean ± 2 StdDev	The percentage of points in the histogram that are within 2 standard deviations of the histogram mean.
Mean ± 3 StdDev	The percentage of points in the histogram that are within 3 standard deviations of the histogram mean.

Table A-1: Comm measurements and their definition

Name	Definition
Ext Ratio	The ratio of eye top to base. *Ext Ratio = $PTop_{mean}/PBase_{mean}$*
Extinction Ratio %	The ratio of eye base to top in %. *Ext Ratio % = $100*(PBase_{mean}/PTop_{mean})$*
Extinction Ratio dB	The ratio of eye top to base in dB. *Ext Ratio dB = $10*Log(PTop_{mean}/PBase_{mean})$*
Eye Height	The eye height in watts or volts. *Eye Height = $(PTop_{mean} - 3*PTop_{sigma}) - (PBase_{mean} + 3*PBase_{sigma})$*
Eye Width	The eye width in seconds. *Eye Width = $(TCross2_{mean} - 3*TCross2_{sigma}) - (TCross1_{mean} + 3*TCross1_{sigma})$*
Crossing %	The eye crossing point as a percentage of eye height. *Crossing % = $100*[(PCross1_{mean} - PBase_{mean})/(PTop_{mean} - PBase_{mean})]$*
Eye Top	The top of the eye.
Eye Base	The base of the eye.
Jitter Pk-Pk	The peak-to-peak value for the edge jitter in the current horizontal units. *Jitter PP = $TCross1_{PP}$*
Jitter RMS	The RMS value of the edge jitter in the current horizontal units. *Jitter RMS = $TCross1_{sigma}$*
Jitter 6σ	*6 x (Jitter RMS)*
Noise Pk-Pk	The peak-to-peak value of the noise of the top or base of the signal as specified by the user. *Noise Pk-Pk = $PTop_{pk-pk\ or}\ PBase_{pk-pk}$*
Noise RMS	The RMS value of the noise of the top or base of the signal as specified by the user. *Noise RMS = $PTop_{sigma\ or}\ PBase_{sigma}$*

Table A-1: Comm measurements and their definition (Cont.)

Name	Definition
S/N Ratio	Ratio of the signal amplitude to the noise of the top or base of the signal as specified by the user. *S/N Ratio = (PTop - PBase)/($PTop_{sigma}$ or $PBase_{sigma}$)*
Duty Cycle Distortion	The peak-to-peak time variation of the first eye crossing measured at the MidRef as a percent of the eye period. *DCD (%) = 100% x $TDCD_{p-p}$/($TCross2_{mean}$ - $TCross1_{mean}$)*
Quality Factor	Ratio of eye size to noise. *Quality Factor = ($PTop_{mean}$ - $PBase_{mean}$)/($PTop_{sigma}$ + $PBase_{sigma}$)*

Levels Used in Taking Amplitude, Timing, and Area Measurements

Refer to Figure A–1 and the descriptions that follow to interpret the definitions of waveforms in categories Amplitude, Timing, and Area. Low reference, mid reference, and high reference are the default reference levels and are adjustable.

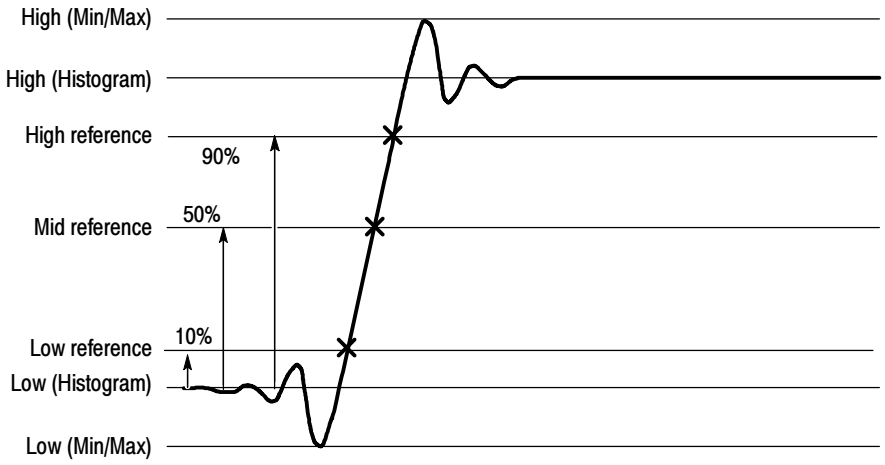


Figure A-1: Levels used to determine measurements

High. The value used as the 100% level in amplitude measurements, such as Peak and +Overshoot. High is also used to help derive the HighRef, MidRef, MidRef2, and LowRef values.

Low. The value used as the 0% level in amplitude measurements, such as Peak and –Overshoot. Low is also used to help derive the HighRef, MidRef, MidRef2, and LowRef values.

HighRef. The waveform high reference level, used in such measurements as fall time and rise time. Typically set to 90%. You can choose how this level is set; see *Reference Levels Method* on page 3–122.

MidRef. The waveform middle reference level used in such measurements as Period and Duty Cycle. Typically set to 50%. You can choose how this level is set; see *Reference Levels Method* on page 3–122.

LowRef. The waveform low reference level. Used in fall and rise time calculations. Typically set to 10%. You can choose how this level is set; see *Reference Levels Method* on page 3–122.

Mid2Ref. The middle reference level for a second waveform (or the second middle reference of the same waveform). Used in two-waveform time measurements, such as the Delay and Phase measurements. You can choose how this level is set; see *Reference Levels Method* on page 3–122.

Levels Used in Taking Eye Measurements (Optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series)

All eye-diagram measurements are based on the power level, the voltage level, or the time locations of edges within each acquisition.

Figure A–2 shows an eye-diagram and the areas from which values are taken that are used to calculate measurements.

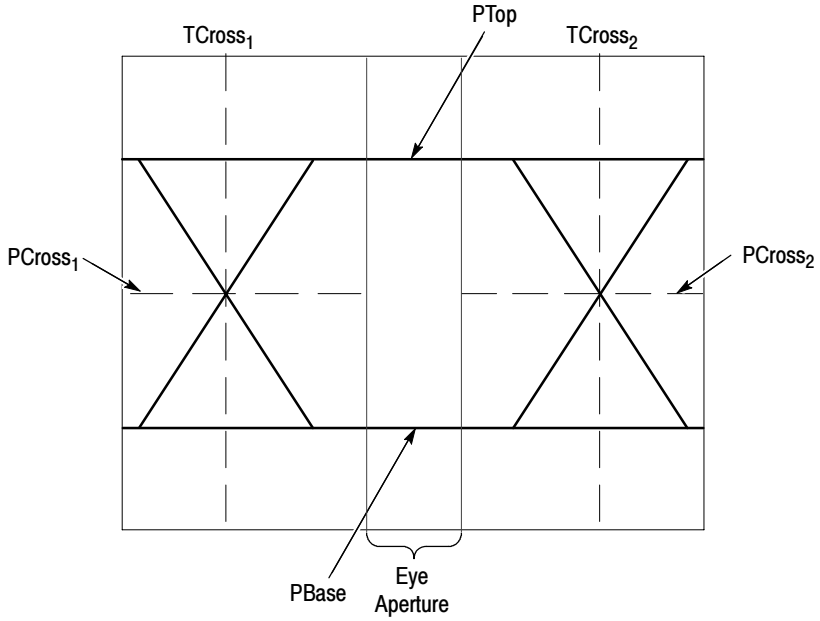


Figure A-2: Eye-diagram values

P Values

The P values include the mean and standard deviation of the vertical location of PTop and PBase. These areas are used with a specified sample size to statistically measure the following values:

- $PTop_{mean}$, the mean value of PTop
- $PTop_{sigma}$, the standard deviation of PTop
- $PTop_{pk\text{-}pk}$, The vertical peak-to-peak deviation of PTop
- $PBase_{mean}$, the mean value of PBase within the Eye Aperture[1]
- $PBase_{sigma}$, the standard deviation of PBase within the Eye Aperture[1]
- $PBase_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the vertical peak-to-peak deviation of PBase

[1]The Eye Aperture defaults to the center 20% of the interval from $TCross_1$ to $TCross_2$.

T1 Values

The T1 values are vertical and horizontal values associated with the leftmost crossing point. These areas are used to establish the following directions:

- $TCross1_{mean}$, the horizontal mean of the left crossing point at $TCross_1$
- $TCross1_{sigma}$, the horizontal standard deviation of the left crossing point at $TCross_1$
- $TCross1_{p\text{-}p}$, the horizontal peak-to-peak deviation of the left crossing point at $TCross_1$
- $PCross1_{mean}$, the vertical mean of the left crossing point at $PCross_1$

T2 Values

The T2 values are vertical and horizontal values associated with the rightmost crossing point. These areas are used to establish the following directions:

- $TCross2_{mean}$, the horizontal mean of the right crossing point at $TCross_2$
- $TCross2_{sigma}$, the horizontal standard deviation of the right crossing point at $TCross_2$
- $TCross2_{p\text{-}p}$, the horizontal peak-to-peak deviation of the right crossing point at $TCross_2$

DCD Values

The duty cycle distortion (DCD) values are horizontal values associated with the rightmost crossing point at 50% of the eye height. These areas are used to establish the $DCD_{p\text{-}p}$, the horizontal peak-to-peak deviation of the left crossing point at half the height of the eye.

Measurements Annotations

Table A–2 describes the annotations for each measurement.

Table A-2: Supported measurements and their definition

Measurements	Annotation descriptions	
Amplitude measurement annotations	Amplitude	2 horizontal bars indicating the amplitude value.
	High	1 horizontal bar indicating the high value.
	Low	1 horizontal bar indicating the low value.
	RMS	1 horizontal bar indicating the RMS value.
	Max	1 horizontal bar indicating the Max value. 1 vertical arrow indicating the time of the Max.
	Min	1 horizontal bar indicating the Min value. 1 vertical arrow indicating the time of the Min.
	Pk-Pk	2 horizontal bars indicating the Max and Min. 2 vertical arrows indicating the time of the Max and Min.
	Cycle RMS	3 horizontal bars indicating the High, the Low, and the RMS value. 2 horizontal arrows facing each other at the mid ref indicating the cycle time.
	+Overshoot	3 horizontal bars indicating the Max, High, and the Low. 1 vertical arrow indicating the time of the Max.
	-Overshoot	3 horizontal bars indicating the High, Low, land the Min. 1 vertical arrow indicating the time of the Min.
	Mean	1 horizontal bar indicating the Mean value.
	Cycle Mean	3 horizontal bars indicating the High, Low, and the Cycle Mean. 2 horizontal arrows facing each other at the mid ref indicating the cycle time.

Table A-2: Supported measurements and their definition (Cont.)

Measurements	Annotation descriptions	
Time measurement annotations	These annotations are not visible when the reference level units are absolute instead of a percentage.	
	Rise Time	2 horizontal arrows facing each other at the high and low ref indicating the start and end time. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the high and low.
	Fall Time	2 horizontal arrows facing each other at the high and low ref indicating the start and end time. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the high and low.
	+Duty Cyc	3 horizontal arrows on the mid ref indicating the start, mid, and end time. End arrows point toward each other and the mid arrow points toward the positive part of the cycle. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the high and low.
	-Duty Cyc	3 horizontal arrows on the mid ref indicating the start, mid, and end time. End arrows point toward each other and the mid arrow points toward the negative part of the cycle. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the high and low.
	Pos Width	2 horizontal arrows facing each other at the mid ref indicating the start and end time. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the high and low.
	Neg Width	2 horizontal arrows facing each other at the mid ref indicating the start and end time. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the high and low.
	Period	2 horizontal arrows facing each other at the mid ref indicating the start and end time. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the high and low.
	Freq	2 horizontal arrows facing each other at the mid ref indicating the start and end time. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the high and low.
	Delay	2 horizontal arrows pointing toward each other at their own mid refs indicating the start and end time. In detailed mode there are 4 horizontal bars indicating the highs and lows.
More measurement annotations	Area	None
	Cyc Area	2 horizontal arrows facing each other at the mid ref indicating the start and end time. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the high and low.
	Phase	3 horizontal arrows indicating the crossing positions and 4 horizontal bars indicating the highs and lows.
	Burst Wid	2 horizontal arrows at the mid ref indicating the start and end time. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the high and low.

Table A-2: Supported measurements and their definition (Cont.)

Measurements	Annotation descriptions	
Histogram measurement annotations	Wfm Ct	None
	Hts in Box	None
	Peak Hits	1 vertical or horizontal bar indicating the peak hits.
	Median	1 vertical or horizontal bar indicating the median bin.
	Max	1 vertical or horizontal bar indicating the max bin.
	Min	1 vertical or horizontal bar indicating the min bin.
	Pk-Pk	2 vertical or horizontal bars indicating the min and max bins.
	Mean	1 vertical or horizontal bar indicating the mean bin.
	Std Dev	3 vertical or horizontal bars indicating the mean and mean ± 1 standard deviation.
	U+/-1	3 vertical or horizontal bars indicating the mean and mean ± 1 standard deviation.
	U+/-2	3 vertical or horizontal bars indicating the mean and mean ± 2 standard deviation.
	U+/-3	3 vertical or horizontal bars indicating the mean and mean ± 3 standard deviation.

Table A-2: Supported measurements and their definition (Cont.)

Measurements	Annotation descriptions	
Comm measurement annotations (Cont.)	Ext Ratio	4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye top, and eye base.
	Ext Ratio %	4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye top, and eye base.
	Ext Ratio (dB)	4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye top, and eye base.
	Eye Height	4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye window top, right, bottom, and left. In detailed mode there are 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye top and base.
	Eye Width	2 horizontal arrows indicating the eye width at the crossing level. In detailed mode there are 2 vertical bars indicating the crossing times.
	Crossing %	In Detailed mode 4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye window left, right, top, and base. 1 horizontal arrow indicating the crossing position. In standard mode 1 horizontal arrow indicating the crossing position.
	Eye Top	2 horizontal arrows and 1 horizontal bar indicating the eye window left, the eye window right, and the eye top.
	Eye Base	2 horizontal arrows and 1 horizontal bar indicating the eye window left, the eye window right, and the eye base.
	Jitter P-P	1 box indicating the histogram boundaries. In detailed mode, 4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye window left, right, top, and base.
	Jitter RMS	1 box indicating the histogram boundaries. In detailed mode, 4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye window left, right, top, and base.
	Jitter 6	1 box indicating the histogram boundaries. In detailed mode, 4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye window left, right, top, and base.

Table A-2: Supported measurements and their definition (Cont.)

Measurements	Annotation descriptions	
Comm measurement annotations	Noise P-P	1 box indicating the histogram boundaries. In detailed mode, 4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye window left, right, top, and base.
	Noise RMS	1 box indicating the histogram boundaries. In detailed mode, 4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye window left, right, top, and base.
	S/N Ratio	1 box indicating the histogram boundaries. In detailed mode, 4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye window left, right, top, and base.
	Cyc Distortion	2 horizontal arrows indicating the time of the rise, time of the fall, and the reference level. In detailed mode, 4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye window left, right, top, and base. In detailed mode, 2 horizontal arrows indicating the position of the crossings.
	Q-Factor	4 horizontal arrows and 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye window left, right, top, and base. In detailed mode, 2 horizontal bars indicating the eye top and base.

Appendix B: Menu Bar Commands

Both the instrument menu bar and a toolbar allow you to control instrument operation. Where possible, this manual describes operation using first, the front panel and then, the toolbar. This appendix describes functions available from the menu bar. For more information about these commands, see the online help.

File Commands

Table B–1 lists the commands available from the File menu on the menu bar.

Table B-1: File menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Reference Waveforms	Reference Setup	Displays the Reference Setup window that you use to set up and control reference waveforms
	Display On/Off	Displays the Waveform Display control window that you can use to turn the display of waveforms on and off
	Position/Scale	Displays the control window that you use to position the waveform and set the vertical scale
	Label	Displays a control window that you use to label your waveforms
	Save Wfm	Displays the Reference Setup window that you use to save and control reference waveforms
	Save All Wfm	Displays the window that you use to save all reference waveforms
	Recall Wfm	Displays the Reference Setup window that you use to recall and control reference waveforms
	Delete All Refs	Deletes all reference waveforms
Instrument Setup		Displays the Instrument Setup window that you use to save instrument setups to nonvolatile memory or to a file, recall saved setups, or delete saved setups
Recall Default Setup		Recalls the factory default instrument setup

Table B-1: File menu commands (Cont.)

Menu	Submenu	Function
Run Application	(depends on installed applications)	Allows you to start an optional application
Page Setup		Displays the Page Setup dialog box that you use to define the page before sending data to a printer
Print Preview		Shows you a preview of the page before you print the page
Print		Displays the Print dialog box that you use to send data to your printer
Export Setup		Displays the Export Setup window that you use to set up and export images, waveforms, and measurements: Images: Select the Palette (Color, GrayScale, or Black & White), View (Full Screen or Graticules Only), Image (Normal or InkSaver Mode), or Data Format used when exporting images Waveforms: Select the Data Destination, channel Source, data range, Waveform Detail, and Data Ordering used when exporting waveforms Measurements: Select the Data Format and type of Measurements used when exporting measurements
Select for Export	Full Screen (bitmap) Graticule (bitmap) Waveform (data) Measurements (data)	Select from the list what you want to export to a file or use with other applications
Export		Exports the full screen, graticule, waveform, or measurement to a file or other application
1 Recent Setup File 1		Recalls (loads) a recent setup file (menu name is replace by the names of setup files)
Minimize		Minimizes the instrument application, displaying the Windows desktop
Shutdown		Shutdowns the instrument

Edit Commands

Table B–2 lists the commands available from the Edit menu on the menu bar.

Table B-2: Edit menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Undo Last Autoset		Undoes the last autoset
Copy		Copies the full screen, graticule, waveform, or measurement to the clipboard for use with other applications
Select for Copy	Full Screen (bitmap) Graticule (bitmap) Waveform (data) Measurement (data)	Select from the list what you want to copy to the clipboard
Copy Setup		Displays the Copy Setup window that you use to set up and copy images, waveforms, and measurements: Images: Select the Palette (Color, GrayScale, or Black & White), View (Full Screen or Graticules Only), Image (Normal or InkSaver Mode), or Data Format used when copying images Waveforms: Select the Data Destination, channel Source, data range, Waveform Detail, and Data Ordering used when copying waveforms Measurements: Select the Data Format and type of Measurements used when copying measurements

Vertical Commands

Table B–3 lists the commands available from the Vertical menu.

Table B-3: Vertical menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Vertical Setup		Displays the Vertical Setup window that you use to set the position, scale, offset, termination, coupling, and bandwidth of a channel. You can also calibrate, deskew, and set the external attenuation of attached probes.
Zoom Controls		Displays the Zoom control window that you use to set the position and scale of zoomed waveforms
Display On/Off		Displays the Waveform Display control window that you can use to turn the display of waveforms on and off
Position/Scale		Displays the control window that you use to position the waveform and set the vertical scale
Label		Displays a control window that you use to label your waveforms. Vertical labels move if the waveform position changes (also see display screen text on page B-9).
Offset		Displays the Vertical Offset control window you use to set the vertical offset and scale of a waveform
Termination		Displays the Termination control window you use to select input termination for a channel
Coupling		Displays the Coupling control window you use to select input coupling for a channel
Bandwidth		Displays the Bandwidth control window you use to set the bandwidth of a channel
Probe Cal		Displays the Probe Cal control window you use to check a probe status and compensate the entire signal path from the probe tip to digitized signal
Deskew		Displays the Deskew control window you use to compensate for propagation delays of input channels
Attenuation		Displays the Attenuation control window you use to inform the instrument of the external attenuation or gain between the signal and the input channels

Table B-3: Vertical menu commands (Cont.)

Menu	Submenu	Function
Zoom Setup		Displays the Zoom Setup window you use to set up the horizontal and vertical zoom controls
Zoom Graticule Size	50/50%	Sets the zoom graticule split mode to 50/50%
	80%/20%	Sets the zoom graticule split mode to 80/20%
	100%	Sets the zoom graticule split mode to 100%
	Size	Displays the Zoom control window you use to select the zoom graticule size

Horizontal and Acquisition Commands

Table B–4 lists the commands available from the Horiz/Acq menu.

Table B-4: Horiz/Acq menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Horizontal/Acquisition Setup		Displays the Horizontal and Acquisition Setup window you use to set up the Horizontal and Vertical subsystems: *Horizontal:* You can set the record length, scale, resolution, sample rate, duration delay, reference point, and zoom *Acquisition:* You can set the acquisition mode, enable roll mode, equivalent time, interpolated real time, equivalent time, and FastFrame on instruments with these features
Zoom Controls		Displays the Zoom control window you use to set the position and scale of zoomed waveforms
Autoset		Automatically sets up the front-panel controls based on the characteristics of the input signal and default selections
Undo Last Autoset		Undoes the last autoset

Table B-4: Horiz/Acq menu commands (Cont.)

Menu	Submenu	Function
Run/Stop		Displays the Run/Stop control window that you can use to start and stop acquisitions, control a single sequence of acquisitions, and display the acquisition status
Delay Mode On		Toggles horizontal delay mode on and off
Roll Mode Auto		Toggles roll mode on and off on instruments with this feature. When on, the instrument automatically enters roll mode at slower horizontal scale settings
Sampling Modes	Real Time Only	Sets the sampling mode to real time
	Interpolated Real Time	Sets the sampling mode to real time. The instrument automatically uses interpolated real time sampling when the sample rate is too fast to acquire enough samples using real-time sampling
	Equivalent Time	The instrument automatically uses equivalent time sampling when the sample rate is too fast to acquire enough samples using real-time sampling
Position/Scale		Displays the Horizontal control window that you use to turn on and off delay mode, position the waveform, and set the horizontal scale
Resolution		Displays the Resolution control window that you use to set the record length and view the duration, sample rate, and resolution
Acquisition Mode	Sample, Pk Detect, Hi-Res, Average, Envelope, Wfm DB, Mode	Allows you to select the acquisition mode, or displays the Acquisition Mode control window that you use to select the acquisition mode
FastFrame Setup		Displays the FastFrame Setup window that you use to set up FastFrame acquisitions on instruments with this feature
FastFrame Controls		Displays the FastFrame control window that you use to select the frame to view and the reference frame used by time stamps on instruments with this feature
Zoom Setup		Displays the Zoom Setup window that you use to set up the horizontal and vertical zoom controls

Table B-4: Horiz/Acq menu commands (Cont.)

Menu	Submenu	Function
Zoom Graticule Size	50/50%	Sets the zoom graticule split mode to 50/50%
	80%/20%	Sets the zoom graticule split mode to 80/20%
	100%	Sets the zoom graticule split mode to 100%
	Size	Displays the Zoom Display Area control window that you use to set the zoom graticule size

Trigger Commands

Table B–5 lists the commands available from the Trig menu on the menu bar.

Table B-5: Trig menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
A Event (Main) Trigger Setup		Displays the Trigger Setup window you use to set up the A Event triggers
Quick Select	Edge, Glitch, Width, Runt, Window, Timeout, Transition, Setup/Hold, Logic Pattern, Logic State, Comm, Serial Pattern	Sets up the selected trigger type

Table B-5: Trig menu commands (Cont.)

Menu	Submenu	Function
Edge Setup		Displays the Trigger Setup window and sets up the selected trigger type
Glitch Setup		
Width Setup		
Runt Setup		
Window Setup		
Timeout Setup		
Transition Setup		
Setup/Hold Setup		
Logic Pattern Setup		
Logic State Setup		
Comm Setup (optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series)		
Serial Pattern Setup (optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series)		
A-B Trigger Sequence		
B Event (Delayed) Trigger Setup		
Holdoff		Displays the trigger Holdoff control window you use to set trigger holdoff
Mode		Displays the Trigger Mode control window you can use to select the trigger mode, force a trigger, and set the trigger level to 50%
Run/Stop		Displays the Run/Stop control window you can use to start and stop acquisitions, control a single sequence of acquisitions, and display the acquisition status

Display Commands

Table B–6 lists the commands available from the Display menu.

Table B-6: Display menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Display Setup		Displays the Display Setup window (select the display appearance, display screen text, display screen objects, and select colors)
Appearance		Displays the Appearance tab of the Display Setup window (select the display style, persistence, intensity, format, and interpolation)
Screen Text		Displays the Screen Text tab of the Display Setup window. You can enter text that you can display and position on screen. Changing the waveform position does not move screen text (also see label Table B–3 on page B–4).
Objects		Displays the Objects tab of the Display Setup window (select the graticule style, trigger level marker, and date and time display)
Colors		Displays the Colors tab of the Display Setup window (select the color of screen objects)
Display Style	Dots, Vectors, Intensified Samples	Choose Dots to display each waveform as a series of dots Choose Vectors to display vectors or lines between the dots Chose Intensified Samples to display actual samples as bright dots; interpolated dots are blacked out
Display Persistence	Reset All	Resets the display persistence
	No Persistence, Infinite Persistence, Variable Persistence	Choose from No Persistence, Infinite Persistence, and Variable Persistence Modes
	Persistence Controls	Displays the Persistence Controls window that you use to control display persistence
Waveform Interpolation	Sin(x)/x, Linear	Choose from Sin(x)/x or Linear interpolation
Graticule Style	Full, Grid, Cross-Hair, Frame	Choose from: Full, Grid, Cross-hair, and Frame styles

Table B-6: Display menu commands (Cont.)

Menu	Submenu	Function
Record View Palette	Normal, Monochrome Gray, Monochrome Green, Temperature Grading, Spectral Grading User	Choose Normal to use system colors for best viewing Choose Green to display waveforms in shades of green Choose Gray to display waveforms in shades of gray Choose Temp (temperature) to display waveforms with the highest sample density points appearing in warmer colors (reds) Choose Spectral to display waveforms with the highest sample density points appearing in blue shades Choose User to display a control window to design your own colors
User Palette		Displays a window that you use to set hue, lightness, and saturation for the selected object. The Reset button allows you to reset the palette to factory defaults. The Setup button displays the Color Setup window.
Display Trigger T		Toggle on and off the display of a T at the trigger point
Waveform Display On		Toggle on and off the waveform display
Display Date and Time		Toggle on and off the display of the system date and time
Display Remote		Toggle on and off remote display support. VNC or pcAnywhere must be installed on the instrument and on the remote PC. When Display Remote is enabled, display updates, control window accessing and menu items are slow.

Cursors Commands

Table B–7 lists the commands available from the Cursors menu.

Table B-7: Cursor menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Cursor Controls		Displays the Cursor Controls window that you use to set up and control cursors
Cursors On		Toggles cursors on and off
Cursor Type	H-bars, V-bars, Waveform, Screen	Enables the selected cursor type
Cursor Mode	Independent, Track	Sets the selected cursor tracking mode
Cursor Position		Displays the Cursor Position control window that you use to position the cursors
Cursor Setup		Displays the Cursor Setup control window that you use to set up and control cursors

Measure Commands

Table B–8 lists the commands available from the Measure menu.

Table B-8: Measure menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Measurement Setup		Displays the Math Setup control window you use to display measurements, setup measurement reference levels, gating, statistics, and histograms
Snapshot		Displays a snapshot of all single waveform measurements of the selected waveform
Amplitude	High Level, Low Level, Amplitude, Maximum, Minimum, Peak to Peak, Pos Overshoot, Neg Overshoot, Mean, RMS, Cycle Mean, Cycle RMS	Displays the selected measurement of the selected waveform

Table B-8: Measure menu commands (Cont.)

Menu	Submenu	Function
Time	Rise Time, Fall Time, Positive Width, Negative Width, Period, Frequency, Delay, Pos Duty Cycle, Neg Duty Cycle	Displays the selected measurement of the selected waveform
Comm	Ext Ratio, Ext Ratio %, Ext Ratio (dB), Eye Height, Eye Width, Eye Top, Eye Base, Crossing %, Jitter Pk-Pk, Jitter Rms, Jitter 6 Sigma, Noise Pk-Pk, Noise RMS, S/N Ratio, Cycle Distortion, Quality factor	Displays the selected measurement of the selected waveform
More	Area, Cycle Area, Phase, Burst Width	Displays the selected measurement of the selected waveform
Histogram Measurements	Waveform Count, Hits in Box, Peak Hits, Median, Maximum, Minimum, Peak to Peak, Mean, Standard Deviation, Mean ±1 StdDev, Mean ±2 StdDev, Mean ±3 StdDev	Displays the selected measurement of the histogram
Statistics	Reset Statistics	Resets measurement statistics
	Off, Mean, All	Displays the selected measurement statistics of current measurements
	Statistics Controls	Displays the Statistics Controls window
Reference Levels		Displays the Reference Levels setup window you use to set the reference levels used by your measurements
Gating	Cursor, Zoom 1, Zoom 2, Zoom 3, Zoom 4, Off, Gating	Allows you to select the gating method, turn off gating, or displays the Measurement Gating control window you use to define the portion of the waveform you want your measurements taken between
Waveform Histograms	Reset Histograms	Resets histogram counting
	Horiz, Vert, Off,	Enables a horizontal histogram Enables a vertical histogram Turns off histograms
	Setup. . .	Displays the Waveform Histogram setup window you use to set histograms on your waveforms

Table B-8: Measure menu commands (Cont.)

Menu	Submenu	Function
Annotation	Standard, Detailed, Off, Meas 1, Meas 2, Meas 3, Meas 4, Meas 5, Meas 6, Meas 7, Meas 8	Allows you to select the type of measurement annotations, turn measurement annotations off, or to select the measurement that you want to annotate.

Masks Commands

Table B–9 lists the commands available from the Masks menu (optional on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series) on the menu bar.

Table B-9: Masks menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Mask Setup		Displays the Mask Setup window that you use to create mask waveforms
Mask Type		Displays the Type tab of the Mask Setup window that you use to select the type of mask
Source		Displays the Source tab of the Mask Setup window that you use to select the source of mask
Tolerance Setup		Displays the Tolerance Setup tab of the Mask Setup window that you use to set up the mask margin tolerance
Pass/Fail Setup		Displays the Pass/Fail Setup tab of the Mask Setup window that you use to set up pass/fail testing
Pass/Fail Results		Displays the Pass/Fail Results tab of the Mask Setup window that you use to view test results
Mask On		Toggles the mask on or off
Mask Controls		Displays the Mask control window that you use to control mask pass/fail testing and display test results
Mask Configure	Display, AutoSet, Autofit . . .	Displays the Mask Configuration setup window that you use to configure the display, autoset, and autofit features of mask testing
Mask Edit Setup		Displays the Mask Edit Setup window that you use to create user masks
Mask Edit Controls		Displays the Mask Edit control window that you use to edit user masks

Math Commands

Table B–10 lists the commands available from the Math menu on the menu bar.

Table B-10: Math menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Math Setup		Displays the Math Setup control window that you use to create math waveforms
Display On/Off		Toggles the display of math waveforms on and off
Position/Scale		Displays the vertical Position and Scale control window that you can use to change the vertical position and scale of waveforms
Label		Displays a control window that you use to label your waveforms
Ch1-Ch2		Creates a predefined math waveform
Ch3-Ch4		Creates a predefined math waveform
Ch1*Ch2		Creates a predefined math waveform
Ch3*Ch4		Creates a predefined math waveform
Spectral Setup		Displays the Spectral Math Setup control window that you use to create spectral math waveforms
Magnitude Spectrum		Creates a predefined magnitude spectral math waveform
Phase Spectrum		Creates a predefined phase spectral math waveform
Spectral Controls		Displays the Spectral Math controls window that you can use to control your spectral math waveform
Set Math Averages		Displays the Math Averaging controls window that you use to set up averaging in math waveforms
Equation Editor		Displays the Math Equation Editor setup window that you use to create math waveforms

Application Commands

Table B–11 lists the commands available from the applications menu.

Table B-11: Application menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Restore Application		Restores the minimized window of the currently running application
Installed application 1		Starts an installed application
Installed application 2		

Utilities Commands

Table B–12 lists the commands available from the Utilities menu.

Table B-12: Utilities menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Tek Secure Erase		Erases all setup and reference memory
Set Time & Date		Displays a menu that you use to set the instrument date and time
GPIB Configuration		Displays a control window that you use to set the GPIB talk/listen mode and the bus address
LAN Server Status		Displays the server status window that allows you to turn the server on and off
External Signals		Choose the source and polarity of the AUX OUT signal Choose the internal or an external clock reference. Whenever you change the reference, you must perform a signal path compensation, see page 3–139.
Instrument Calibration		Displays a window that you use to perform signal path compensation and, if in service mode, instrument calibration
Instrument Diagnostics		Displays a window that you use to run instrument diagnostics and view the diagnostic status and error log. If errors are displayed, refer the instrument to qualified service personnel[1].

Table B-12: Utilities menu commands (Cont.)

Menu	Submenu	Function
Multipurpose Knobs	Deassign Multipurpose Knobs	Deassigns the multipurpose knobs from their current function
	Momentary Readouts Always Show Readouts Never Show Readouts	Set the multipurpose knob readouts to display momentarily, always, or never
	Readout Setup. . .	Displays and allows you to set the time the momentary readouts are displayed
User Preferences		Displays a window that you use to enable prompts before the instrument performs requested actions (autoset, autoset undo, default/recall setup, overwrite/delete setup, or delete reference waveform), set keypad trigger level defaults, select whether horizontal scale or sample rate is held constant when you change record length, and select the type of measurement annotations
Option Installation		Displays a window that you use to enable optional features and external applications

[1] **If error code 351 is displayed, from the Utilities/Instrument Calibration menu run Signal Path Compensation, and then from the Utilities/Instrument Diagnostics menu run the diagnostics.**

Help Commands

Table B–13 lists the commands available from the Help menu on the menu bar.

Table B-13: Help menu commands

Menu	Submenu	Function
Help on Window		Displays online help on the current window
Contents and Index		Displays the contents and index dialog of the online help
Restore Help		If the help window is minimized, help is redisplayed
Technical Support		Displays how to obtain technical support
Customer Feedback		Displays how to supply customer feedback
About TekScope		Displays the instrument version number, serial number, instrument id, copyright, installed option list, and option installation key

Buttons

Touch Buttons to switch to toolbar mode.

Appendix C: Serial Mask Testing and Serial Triggering

This section of the user manual provides a high-level description of the Serial Mask Testing and Serial Triggering functions.

These functions are standard with CSA7000B Series instruments. Some of these functions are standard and some of the functions are options for the TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series Digital Storage Oscilloscope and CSA7000B Series Communications Signal Analyzers.

This section also describes how to install the optional Serial Mask Testing and Serial Triggering functions on TDS6000B & TDS6000C Series instruments.

Product Description

The following text is an overview of the Serial Mask Testing and Serial Triggering features.

Serial Mask Testing

The Serial Mask Testing feature provides optical and electrical mask testing, communication triggering, and automatic communication signal measurements.

Mask testing consists of two tasks: signal violation detection and pass/fail testing. Signal violation detection lets you test communications signals for time or amplitude violations against a predefined mask. Each mask consists of one or more polygonal regions called segments. The signal waveform data should stay outside of the segments defined by the mask. Any signal data that occurs inside a mask segment is called a mask segment violation or "hit."

You can select from any of the included telecommunications masks (optional on TDS6000B Series instruments) or you can define your own custom masks. Selecting a mask automatically sets the instrument communications triggers to properly display most communication signals in the mask.

Pass/Fail testing defines the mask testing parameters, including the number of waveforms to test, how many mask hits are allowed before failing a test, setting a mask margin tolerance value, and what action to perform at the completion of a test.

Communication triggering enables you to trigger on and display waveforms for industry-standard communications signals. Appendix B lists the supported standards on which you can trigger.

Automatic communication signal measurements enable you to make automatic measurements on communications signals. Appendix C lists the available measurements.

The Serial Mask Testing key features are:

- Predefined masks for testing or triggering on industry-standard signals, such as ITU-T G.703, ANSI T1.102, Fibre Channel, Ethernet, InfiniBand, SONET, Serial ATA, USB, IEEE 1394b, RapidIO, OIF, PCI-Express, and their subsets
- On CSA7000B instruments, optical mask standards have calibrated digital filters, enabling operation as an optical reference receiver
- Autoset, which quickly adjusts the instrument vertical and horizontal parameters to display a waveform in a mask
- Autofit, which positions the signal on each acquisition to minimize mask segment hits
- Mask margins, which allow you to adjust the default mask margin tolerances
- Pass/Fail testing to continuously test a specified number of waveforms against a mask
- A mask editor for creating, saving, and recalling user-defined masks
- Waveform database technology to do mask testing based on waveforms accumulated in a database, rather than a single waveform stored in acquisition memory
- Communications triggers to trigger the instrument on industry-standard communications signals
- Automatic measurements on communications signals
- Clock recovery from the serial data stream

NOTE. *If a standard or function listed in this manual is not available on your instrument, it is because it is optional or the configuration or bandwidth of your instrument cannot test that standard.*

Although the TDS6000B Series instruments are not calibrated optical reference receivers, you can use them with mask testing to evaluate general optical signal characteristics and waveshape, using an external O/E converter.

Serial Pattern Trigger

Serial Pattern Trigger lets you define a serial data pattern on which to trigger the instrument.

The Serial Pattern Trigger key features are:

- User-defined serial data pattern of up to 64 bits on NRZ data streams up to 3.125 GBaud
- Clock recovery from the serial data stream

Installing Optional Serial Mask Testing and Serial Pattern Trigger Functions

To enable the optional Serial Mask Testing and/or Serial Triggering functions on TDS6000B instruments, you must have a valid Option Installation Key. Do the following steps:

1. From the oscilloscope menu bar, touch the **Utilities** menu, select **Option Installation**, and then touch **Continue**.
2. Enter the authorization key using the instrument keyboard.
3. Touch **Continue**.
4. Reboot your instrument to enable the new option(s).
5. Attach the option configuration label(s) on the rear panel of the instrument to indicate that the option(s) is installed on this instrument.

Serial Mask Testing Functions

Serial Mask Testing provides three sets of functions: optical and electrical serial mask testing, communications triggering, and automatic communication signal measurements. This section describes how to access these functions.

Accessing Serial Mask Testing Functions

To access the Serial Mask Test functions, touch the **Masks** tool bar button. The instrument displays the Masks control window, as shown in Figure C–1.

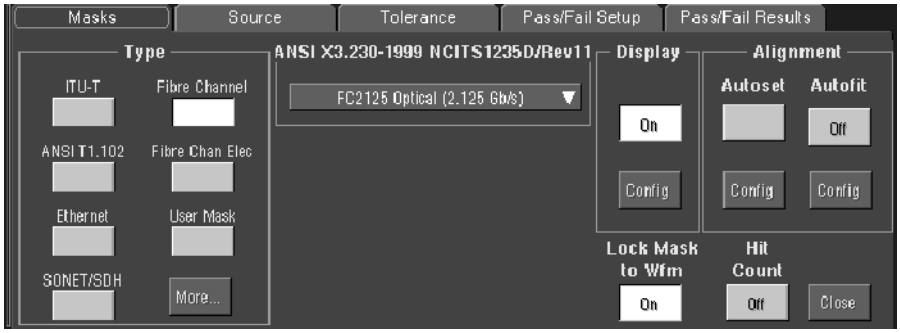


Figure C–1: Masks control window

Table C–1 describes the Masks control window tab functions. Refer to the *Mask Testing* beginning on page C–8 of this manual, as well as the online help, for more information about these functions.

Table C–1: Masks control window functions

Tab	Function
Mask	Set the mask type, communications standard, polarity, mask on/off, and autofit/autoset alignment parameters
Source	Set the input waveform source
Tolerance	Set the mask margin tolerance values
Pass/Fail Setup	Set the mask test pass/fail parameters
Pass/Fail Results	Display the pass/fail test results

Accessing Serial Mask Testing Communications Trigger Functions

To access the Serial Mask Testing communication trigger functions, do the following steps:

1. Touch the **Trig** tool bar button. The instrument displays the Trigger control window.
2. Select the **A Event** tab.

3. Touch either of the Trigger Type buttons. Select the **Comm** Trigger Type. The instrument displays the communication signal trigger functions, as shown in Figure C–2.

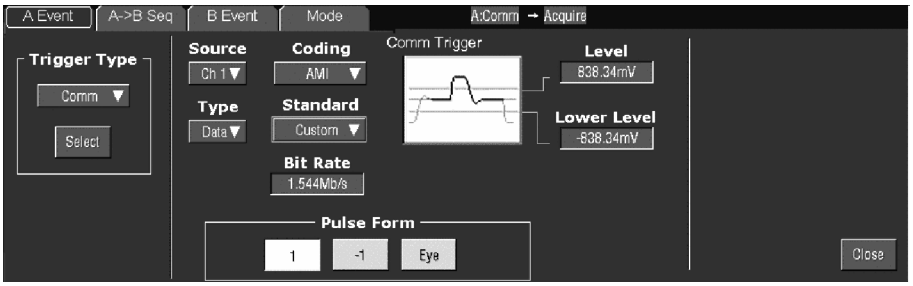


Figure C–2: Communication signal trigger functions

Table C–2 describes the communication trigger functions. Refer to the *Mask Testing* beginning on page C–8 of this manual, as well as the online help, for more information about these functions.

Table C–2: Communication trigger functions

Menu	Function
Source	Sets the waveform data source (Ch1–Ch4)
Type	Sets the waveform source type (Data, Clock, or Recovered Clock); the recovered clock function is only available for NRZ coded signals
Polarity	Sets the edge (positive or negative) on which to trigger; this function is only available when Type is set to Clock
Coding	Sets the communications code type from a drop-down menu (AMI, BZ3S, B6ZS, B8ZS, CMI, HDB3, MLT3, NRZ)
Standard	Sets the signal standard for the selected code from a drop-down menu
Bit Rate	Sets or displays the bit rate for the selected standard; if you change the default bit rate, the signal standard changes to Custom
Comm Trigger Upper/Lower Level	Sets the source signal threshold levels for the selected code; this function displays a single level field or upper/lower level fields depending on the selected code and standard
Pulse Form	Sets the comm signal pulse format on which to trigger; this function is displayed when required by a selected standard

Accessing Serial Mask Testing Automatic Measurement Functions

Serial Mask Testing also provides a number of communications-related automatic measurements.

To access the communications signal automatic measurements, do the following steps:

1. Touch the **Meas** tool bar button. The instrument displays the Measurement control window.
2. Select the **Comm** tab. The instrument displays the communication measurement functions, as shown in Figure C–3.

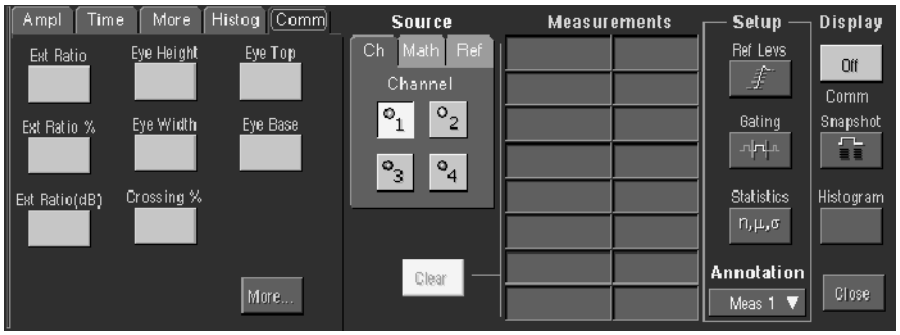


Figure C-3: Communication measurement functions

Refer to the user manual for your instrument for information on setting up and taking automatic measurements. Refer to Appendix C of this manual for a list and description of the communication measurements.

Accessing Serial Pattern Trigger Functions

To access the Serial Pattern Trigger functions, do the following steps:

1. Touch the **Trig** tool bar button. The instrument displays the Trigger control window.
2. Select the **A Event** tab.
3. Touch either of the Trigger Type buttons. Select the **Serial** Trigger Type. The instrument displays the serial pattern trigger functions, as shown in Figure C–4.

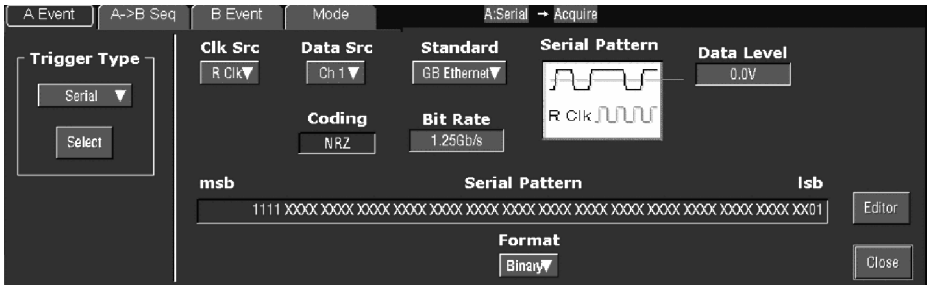


Figure C-4: Serial pattern trigger control window

Table C–3 describes the Serial Pattern Trigger functions. Refer to the *Mask Testing* beginning on page C–8 of this manual, as well as the online help, for more information about these functions.

Table C-3: Serial trigger functions

Menu	Function
Data Src	Sets the serial trigger waveform data source (Ch1-Ch4)
Clk Src	Sets the serial trigger clock source (Ch1-Ch4, Recovered Clock); the recovered clock function is only available for NRZ coded signals
Clk Polarity	Sets the source waveform polarity (positive or negative); this function is available only when Clk Src is set to a different value than Data Src
Coding	Shows the serial trigger communications code type, which is always NRZ
Standard	Sets the serial trigger signal standard
Bit Rate	Sets or displays the bit rate for the selected standard
Data Level Clk Level	Sets the data and clock source threshold levels for the selected code
Editor	Opens the serial pattern data editor which lets you define the serial pattern on which to trigger
Format	Displays the serial trigger pattern data in binary or hexadecimal format

Mask Testing

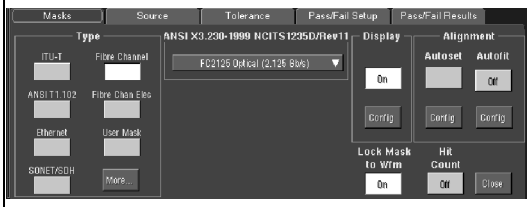
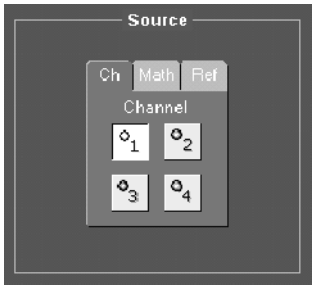
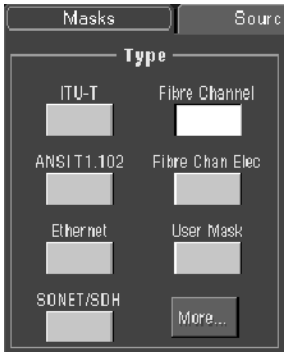
Mask testing sets the instrument to test communications signals against industry-standard or user defined masks to verify the timing, amplitude, and waveform shape of the signal. This section provides step-by-step instructions on how to access and operate the mask test features.

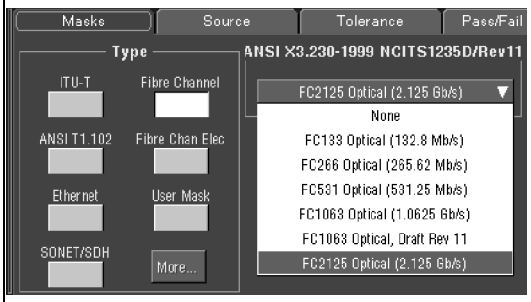
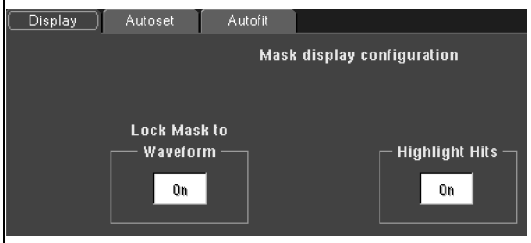
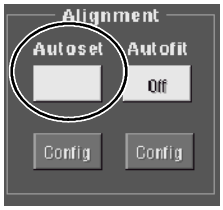
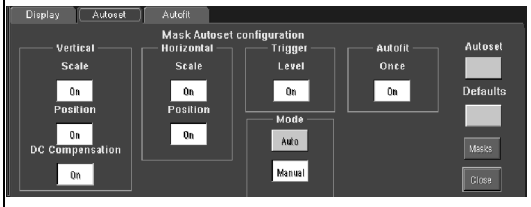
The mask testing instructions cover the following subjects:

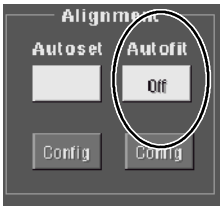
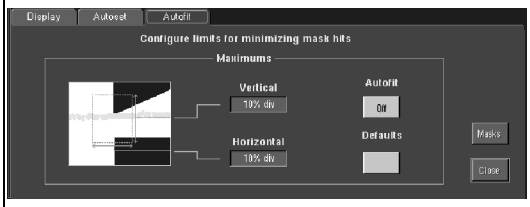
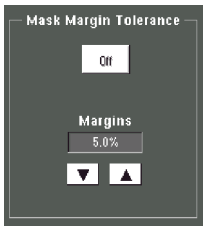
- Mask test setup
- Running a mask test
- Creating a user mask from a defined mask
- Saving a user mask to disk
- Recalling a user mask from disk
- Editing a user mask
- Creating a new user mask
- Mask testing key points (general and optical)

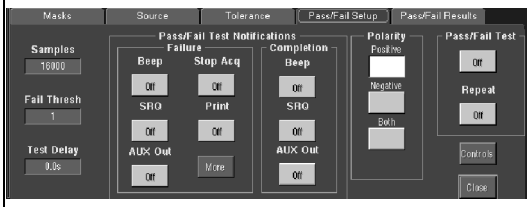
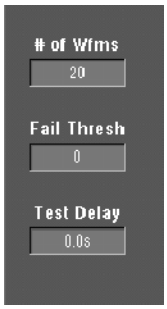
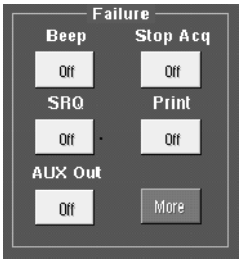
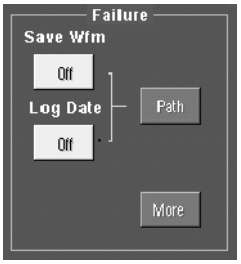
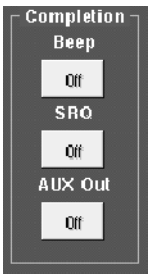
Mask Test Setup

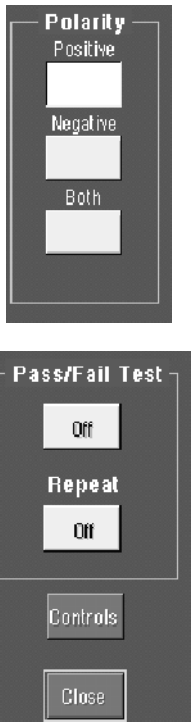
To set the instrument to perform mask tests, do the following procedure.

Overview	To mask test a waveform	Related control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** Connect the instrument to the source signal, or save the source signal to a math or reference waveform memory location.	
Access the Mask Setup window	**2.** From the button bar, touch Masks. The instrument displays the Mask control window.	 
Select a mask test signal source	**3.** Select the Source tab and then the channel, math, or reference tab and then select the waveform source to use as the mask test source. You can only mask test one waveform at a time.	
Select the mask type	**4.** To specify the mask Type, select the Masks tab. Touch the appropriate button in the Type field. Touch the More button to display further selections. The window lists mask types and standards that are available on your instrument, which depends on the bandwidth, options, and configuration of your instrument. Selecting a mask type and standard adjusts the instrument horizontal, vertical, and trigger settings to those appropriate for displaying a waveform of the specified type. If the signal is not within the mask, touch the Autoset button to center the waveform in a mask. If Autoset did not align the signal in the mask, adjust the instrument vertical and horizontal controls. If you touch the Autoset button and the Autoset Undo preference is On, the instrument will display an Autoset Undo window. Touch the Undo button to return to the previous settings, or touch the Close button to remove the window.	

Overview	To mask test a waveform (cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Select the mask standard	**5.** To specify the mask standard, select a standard from the drop-down list. (CSA7000B Series only) Optical mask type/standard combinations also display an optical Bessel-Thompson Filter button that lets you turn on or off the fourth-order Bessel-Thompson frequency filter (default is On). When the filter is On.	
Select display parameters	**6.** In the Masks tab, touch the Display button to toggle mask display on or off. The mask must be turned on to do mask testing. **7.** Touch the Hit Count button to turn on or off hit counting. The hit count is shown in the Pass/Fail Results tab. **8.** Touch the Display Config button to set mask hit highlighting and to lock the mask to the waveform. Lock Mask to Waveform resizes the mask to reflect changes in the horizontal or vertical settings of the instrument. This control is also on the main mask setup window.	 
Autoset the signal	**9.** In the Masks tab, touch the Autoset button to have the instrument automatically adjust instrument settings to align the waveform to the mask based on the characteristics of the input signal. Autoset is done on the first waveform acquired after touching the Autoset button. If the Autoset Undo preference is On, the instrument will display an Autoset Undo window. Touch the Undo button to return to the previous settings, or touch the Close button to remove the window. The Autoset Config button opens a configuration window that lets you set the vertical, horizontal, and trigger autoset parameters, activate autofit or autoset, choose the autoset mode, return to the default autoset configuration, or return to the Mask Setup control window.	 

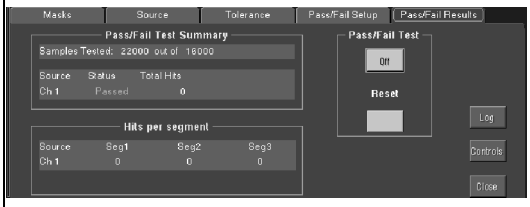
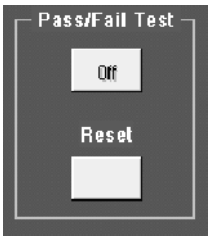
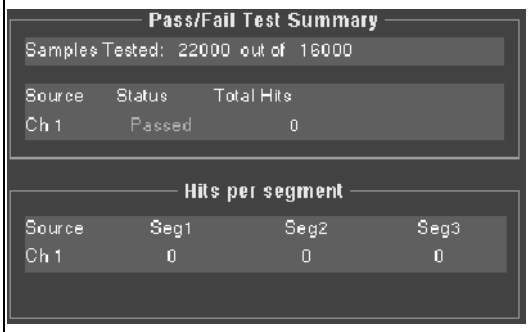
Overview	To mask test a waveform (cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Enable and set waveform autofit parameters	**10.** In the Masks tab, touch the Autofit button to enable the waveform autofit function. Autofit checks each waveform for any mask hits. If there are hits, autofit repositions the waveform to minimize hits. The number of hits reported is the number after autofit has minimized hits. The Autofit Config button lets you set the autofit maximum waveform repositioning parameters (as a percentage of the horizontal and vertical divisions), return to default settings, or return to the Mask Setup control window. Use the keypad to change the vertical or horizontal autofit parameters. **11.** Touch the Masks button to return to the Mask control window.	 
Set mask test tolerance margins	**12.** Touch the Masks Setup window Tolerance tab to set the percentage of margin used in the mask test. Use the control knob, keypad, pop-up keypad, or up and down arrow buttons to enter the mask margin tolerance percentage. The range of values is -50% to 50%. Margin tolerance settings greater than 0% expand the size of the segments, making the mask test harder to pass; margin tolerance settings less than 0% (negative percent) reduces the size of the segments, making the mask test easier to pass.	

Overview	To mask test a waveform (cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set mask test pass and fail parameters	**13.** Select the Pass/Fail Setup tab of the Masks control window.	
	14. Use the control knob, keypad, or pop-up keypad to enter the number of waveforms to test (number of samples in some modes), the failure threshold (the number of waveforms that must fail to fail the test), and the delay time (the time from when mask test starts to when the instrument begins sampling).	
	15. Use the Failure field buttons to set what the instrument does when a mask test fails; have the instrument beep (BEEP), send an SRQ out on the GPIB bus (SRQ), send a trigger pulse out on the AUX OUT connector (AUX Out), stop signal acquisition immediately (Stop Acq), and/or print the instrument screen image to a printer (Print).	
	16. Touching the More button displays more failure functions. Save Wfm saves the waveform data of the first waveform that causes the test to fail to a .wfm file. Log Date saves time, date, and basic test information of the first waveform that causes the test to fail to an ASCII text (.txt) file. Both files are saved to the location specified by the Path button. The file name format is YYMMDD-HHMMSS, where YY is year, MM is month, DD is day, HH is hour, MM is minutes, and SS is seconds.	
	17. Use the Completion field buttons to set what the instrument does at the completion of a mask test.	

Overview	To mask test a waveform (cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Set mask test pass and fail parameters (cont.)	**18.** Use the Polarity buttons to set mask and waveform polarity. Positive tests the positive waveform pulses. Negative inverts the mask and tests the negative waveform pulses. Both tests the first half of the tested waveforms in positive polarity mode, then tests the remaining waveforms in negative polarity mode. **19.** Toggle the Repeat button to On to set the instrument to repeat (continue) mask testing on the completion of each test.	

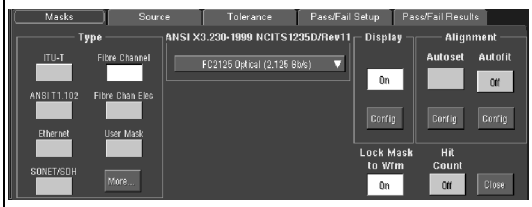
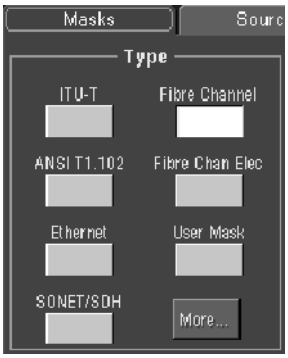
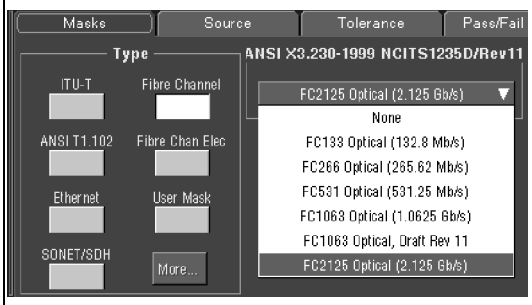
Running a Mask Test

To start and stop mask tests, do the following procedure.

Overview	Running a mask test	Control elements and resources
Prerequisites	**1.** You must have set up the instrument to perform mask testing as described in *Mask Test Setup* on page C-9.	
Start the mask pass/fail test	**2.** From the button bar, touch Masks and select the Pass/Fail Results tab. The instrument opens the Pass/Fail Results control window.	
	3. Touch the Pass/Fail Test On/Off button to turn on mask pass/fail testing. You can touch Reset prior to running tests to clear the Pass/Fail Test Summary fields. You can also use the Pass/Fail Test button in the Pass/Fail Setup control window.	
	The instrument begins mask testing and displays the test summary information in the Pass/Fail Test Summary fields. If a mask has more than three segments, the window displays a horizontal scroll bar below the Hits per Segment field that lets you scroll the field to view other segment hit data.	
Stop the mask pass/fail test	**4.** Touch the Pass/Fail test button to turn off mask pass/fail testing. Testing will also stop when the testing meets the parameters in the Pass/Fail Setup control window.	

Creating a User Mask from a Defined Mask

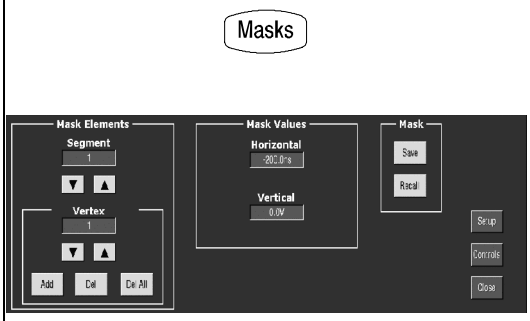
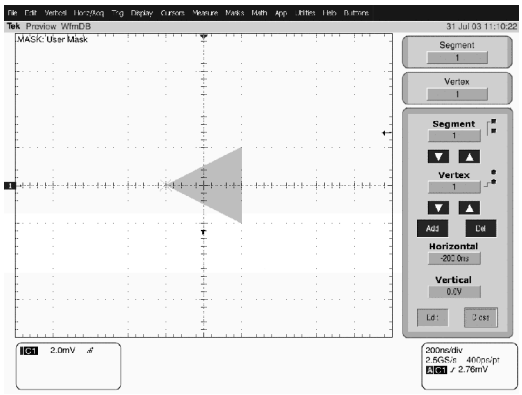
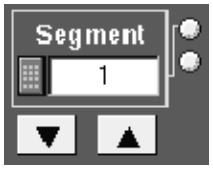
Refer to *Mask Key Points* on page C–26 before creating or editing a mask. To create a user mask from a defined mask, do the following procedure.

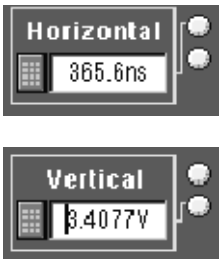
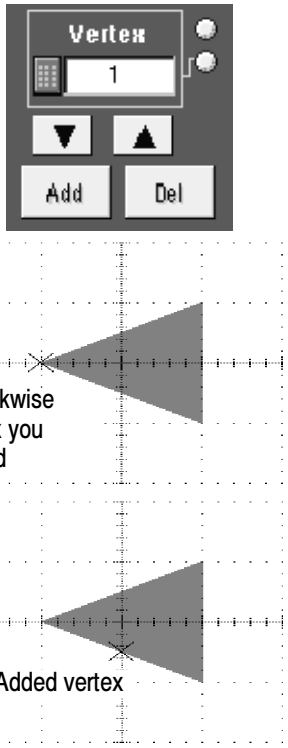
Overview	Creating a user mask from a defined mask	Control elements and resources
Access the mask setup window	**1.** From the button bar, touch Masks and select the Masks tab. The instrument displays the Mask control window.	 
Select the mask type and standard	**2.** Touch the appropriate button in the Type field to select a mask type. Touch the More button to display further selections. **3.** Select a standard from the drop-down list. The control window lists mask types and standards that are available on your instrument, which depend on the bandwidth, options, and configuration of your instrument.	 

Overview	Creating a user mask from a defined mask (cont.)	Control elements and resources
Copy the current mask	**4.** Touch the User Mask button. **5.** Touch the Copy Current Mask to User Mask button. The instrument copies the current mask to the user mask memory.	
Edit the user mask	**6.** Refer to *Editing a User Mask* on page C-17.	
Save the user mask to disk	**7.** Refer to *Saving a User Mask to Disk* on page C-19. You do not need to save the edited user mask to disk, as the instrument retains the current user mask in nonvolatile memory. However, if you plan on creating a number of user masks, you will need to store the user masks on disk, as the instrument can only load one user mask at a time.	

Editing a User Mask

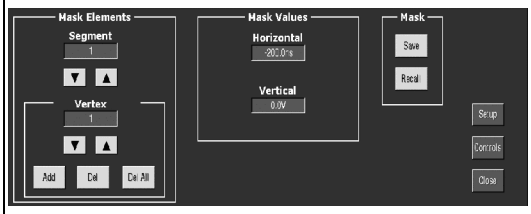
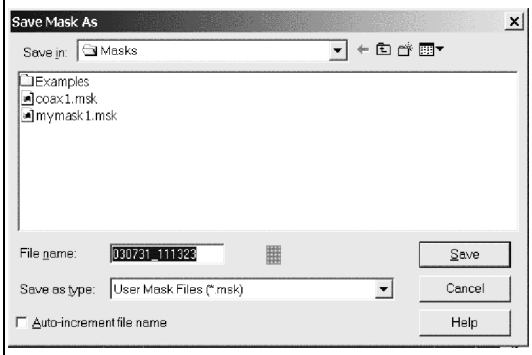
To edit a user mask, do the following procedure.

Overview	Editing a user mask	Control elements and resources
Access the mask edit window	**1.** From the button bar, touch Masks and select the Masks tab. **2.** Touch the User Mask button. **3.** Touch the Edit User Mask button. The instrument displays the Mask Edit control window.	
Enable the mask edit controls	**4.** Touch the Controls button to open the mask edit controls window on the right side of the screen. This provides the maximum area to display the mask, making editing easier.	
Select a segment	**5.** Touch the Segment field and use the arrow buttons, multipurpose knob, or keypad to select a segment to edit. The selected (active) segment is highlighted. Each mask can have up to 16 segments.	
Select a vertex	**6.** Touch the Vertex field and use the arrow buttons, multipurpose knob, or keypad to select the vertex to edit. The active vertex is indicated with an X on the template segment. Each segment can have up to 50 vertices.	

Overview	Editing a user mask (cont.)	Control elements and resources
Move a vertex	**7.** Touch the Horizontal field and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to change the selected vertex horizontal position. **8.** Touch the Vertical field and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to change the selected vertex vertical position.	
Add or delete a vertex	**9.** To add a vertex, select the closest vertex that is clockwise from where you want to place a new vertex. Touch Add to add a vertex midway between the selected vertex and the next counter-clockwise vertex. **10.** To delete a vertex, enter or select the vertex number. Then touch Delete to delete the selected vertex. The remaining vertices located counter-clockwise from the deleted vertex are renumbered.	
Save the user mask to disk	**11.** Refer to *Saving a User Mask to Disk* on page C-19.	

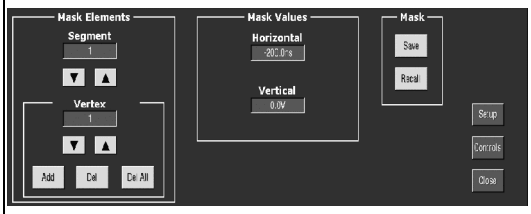
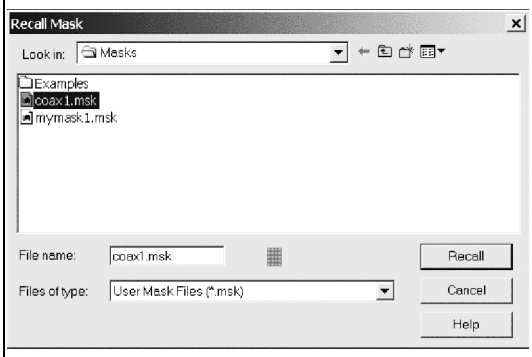
Saving a User Mask to Disk

To save a mask to a folder on the instrument disk, do the following procedure.

Overview	Saving a user mask to disk	Control elements and resources
Access the Mask Setup window	**1.** From the button bar, touch Masks and select the Masks tab. **2.** Touch the User Mask button. **3.** Touch the Edit User Mask button. The instrument displays the Mask Edit control window.	 
Save the user mask to disk	**4.** Touch the Mask Save button. The instrument opens the Save Mask As dialog. The default save location is in the TekScope/Masks folder. **5.** Enter the mask name in the File Name field. The default save type is User Mask Files (*.msk). **6.** Touch Save to save the mask to disk.	 

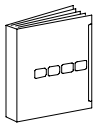
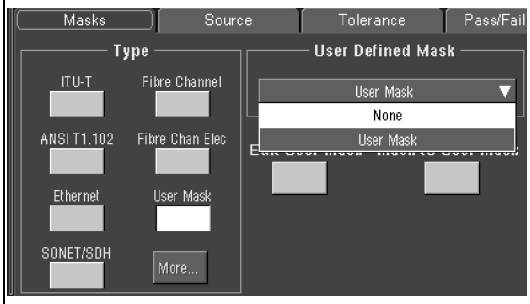
Recalling a User Mask From Disk

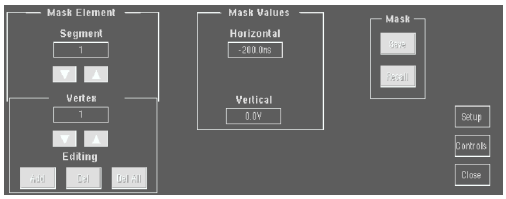
To recall a mask that was stored on disk, do the following procedure.

Overview	Recalling a user mask	Control elements and resources
Access the Mask Setup window	**1.** From the button bar, touch Masks and select the Masks tab. **2.** Touch the User Mask button. **3.** Touch the Edit User Mask button. The instrument displays the Mask Edit control window.	 
Recall the user mask from disk	**4.** Touch the Mask Recall button. The instrument opens the Recall Mask dialog. The default recall location is the TekScope/Masks folder. If the mask files are in another folder, use the navigation controls to access the appropriate folder. **5.** Select the mask name. **6.** Touch Recall to load the user mask into user mask memory on the instrument.	 

Creating a New User Mask

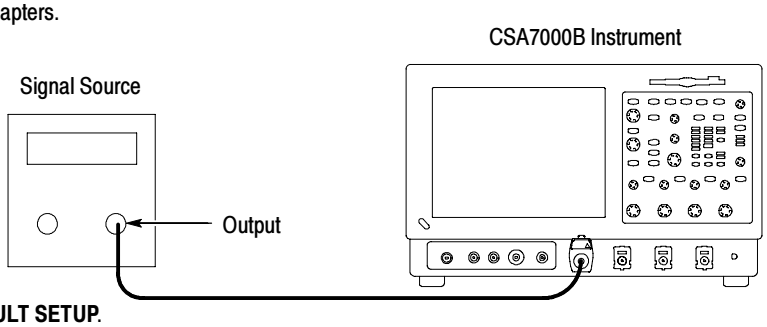
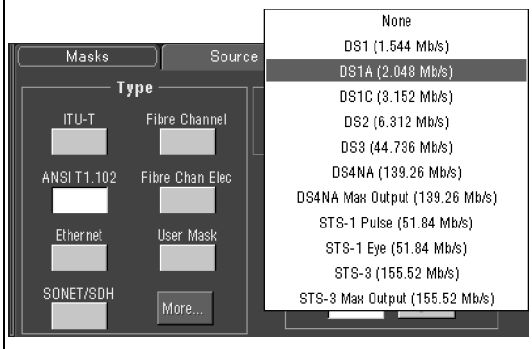
To create a new user mask that is not based on an existing mask, do the following procedure.

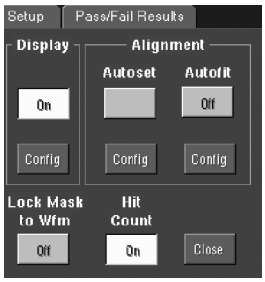
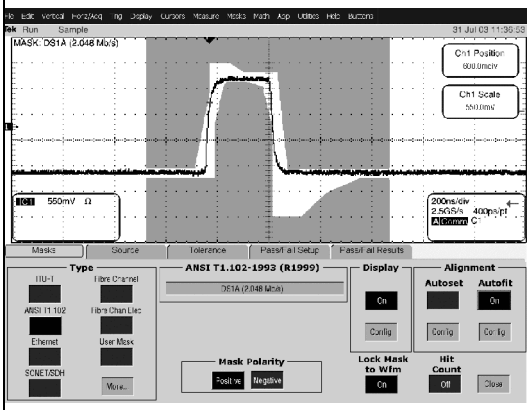
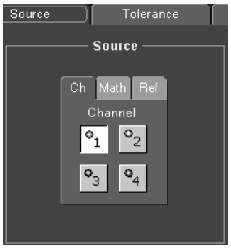
Overview	Creating a new mask	Control elements and resources
Set instrument settings	**1.** Use the communications trigger features to trigger the instrument on a signal. The instrument saves these settings with the mask information.	 See the instrument user manual for information on displaying waveforms.
Create an empty user mask	**2.** From the button bar, touch Masks and select the Masks tab. **3.** Touch the User Mask button. **4.** Touch the mask standard field to display the drop-down list. **5.** Select None from the list. **6.** Touch the Copy Current Mask to User Mask button. If you are asked if you want to overwrite the current user mask, touch the Yes button.	 

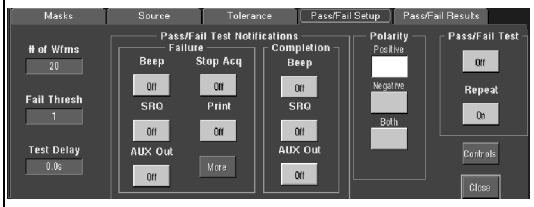
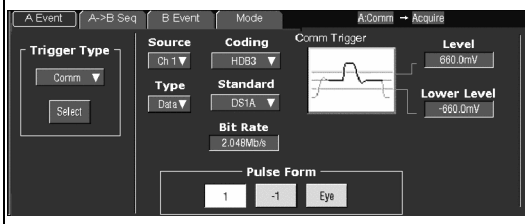
Overview	Creating a new mask (cont.)	Control elements and resources
Create and edit new mask segments	**7.** Touch the Edit User Mask button to display the user mask edit functions. **8.** Touch the Segment field and use the arrow buttons, multipurpose knob, or keypad to enter or select segment 1. **9.** Touch the Vertex Add button. The instrument draws the default new segment shape, a triangle. **10.** Use the instructions in *Editing a User Mask*, starting at step 5 on page C-17, to edit a segment. **11.** Repeat steps 8 through 10, selecting an unused and sequential segment number, to create and edit more segments.	
Save the user mask to disk	**12.** Refer to *Saving a User Mask to Disk* on page C-19.	

Mask Testing Example

The following procedure is an example of setting up the instrument to perform mask testing on a DS1A signal. This example uses a DS1A signal and a CSA7000B Instrument, but the example can easily be modified for other communications signals and other instruments.

Overview	Creating a new mask	Control elements and resources
Install the test hookup	**1.** Connect your DS1A signal to CH 1 through suitable cables, probes, or adapters.  **2.** Press **DEFAULT SETUP**.	
Set instrument settings	**3.** From the button bar, touch **Masks** and select the Masks tab. **4.** Touch the **ANSI T1.102** button. If not using an DS1A signal, touch the button appropriate for the signal that you are using. **5.** Touch the mask standard field to display the drop-down list. **6.** Select **DS1A (2.048 Mb/s)** from the list (if not using a DS1A signal, select the standard appropriate for the signal that you are using). The mask is displayed, but may not be aligned with the signal.	 

Overview	Creating a new mask (cont.)	Control elements and resources
Align the mask and the signal6	**7.** To align the signal with the mask, touch the Alignment **Autoset** button. The signal is aligned with the mask. If you need to minimize the number of mask hits on each acquisition, touch **Autofit**. This display assumes that the autoset undo preference is off or that you touch Close to close the Autoset Undo control window.	 
Select the source	**8.** In this example, we are using the default source, Ch 1.	
Change the tolerance	**9.** Set the Mask Margin Tolerance to the percentage of margin used in the mask test (this example uses the default OFF): ■ *OFF* to test the signal to the selected mask standard ■ On with greater than 0% to expand the size of the mask segments, making the test harder to pass ■ On with less than 0% to reduce the size of the mask segments, making the test easier to pass	

Overview	Creating a new mask (cont.)	Control elements and resources
Setup pass/fail testing	**10.** Select the pass/fail test controls (this example uses the defaults, except Pass/Fail Test Repeat is selected): ■ The number of samples or waveforms to test, the minimum number of waveforms to test, and the delay before the test begins ■ Notifications/actions when the test fails or completes ■ Polarity of the signal to test ■ Start the test and cause the test to repeat	
View the test results	**11.** View the results of the pass/fail test (in this example there have been no hits, and the current test is passing): ■ Pass/Fail Test Summary displays the number of samples/waveforms tested, the total number of hits (failures), and settings that you selected for the test ■ Hits per segment displays the number of hits in each segment of the mask ■ Pass/Fail Test allows you to reset the test and to turn the test on and off	
Triggers set automatically	**12.** When you turn on masks, the instrument automatically sets up the triggers. To see the trigger settings used by this example, do the following step: From the button bar, touch Trig. The instrument selected Comm triggers, the Ch 1 source, HDB3 coding, the Data type, and the DS1A standard, and set the bit rate and pulse form.	
For more information	**13.** For additional information on setting up and using serial mask testing, refer to other sections of this user manual and the instrument online help.	

Mask Key Points

There are a number of mask test key points to be aware of prior to using, editing, or creating a mask.

Mask Testing. Only one mask standard is active at any time. If you have a mask selected/enabled and then select a new mask, the new mask replaces the previous mask. You cannot test to multiple standards simultaneously.

Autofit and Persistence Interaction. The Autofit function moves the waveform vertically and horizontally in a mask to reduce the number of segment hits within a mask. If persistence is set to infinite or variable, each Autofit waveform movement clears existing persistence data. If Autofit makes frequent waveform movements, there may be little or no displayed waveform persistence data.

Segments and Mask Hits. Each mask can have a maximum of 16 segments. Segments can overlap. The number of mask hits is the sum of all hits in all segments, regardless of whether or not segments overlap. For example, if a waveform crosses over an area where two segments overlap, both segments will count the waveform hit.

Vertices. Each segment can have a maximum of 50 vertices. Vertices are numbered counterclockwise, with vertex one generally located at the bottom left of each segment. The active (selected) vertex is indicated by an X. The instrument automatically assigns numbers to vertices during mask creation or editing.

Mask Margin Tolerance. Mask margin tolerance moves the mask segment boundaries by the specified percentage. Negative margins reduce the size of the segment, making it easier to pass a mask test. Turning mask margin tolerance off redraws the mask segment margins to their default values, but leaves the numeric value as it is, allowing you to quickly toggle between default and user-set margin values.

Standards and Bandwidth. When the instrument system bandwidth (which includes the instrument, attached probes, and/or cabling) falls into the range of 1.5 to 1.8 (0.8 for optical signals) times the data signal bit rate, the third harmonic of the data signal is significantly attenuated. The instrument displays useful qualitative information, but quantitative rise-time measurements under these conditions may not be accurate.

For example, a 1394b standard signal at the S800b rate has a bit rate of 983.0 Mb/s. 1.5 to 1.8 times this value is a range of 1.47 to 1.77 GHz. Therefore, you should not use a 1.5 GHz measurement system for making quantitative rise-time measurements of this standard.

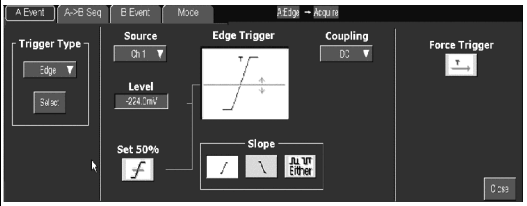
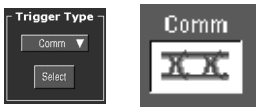
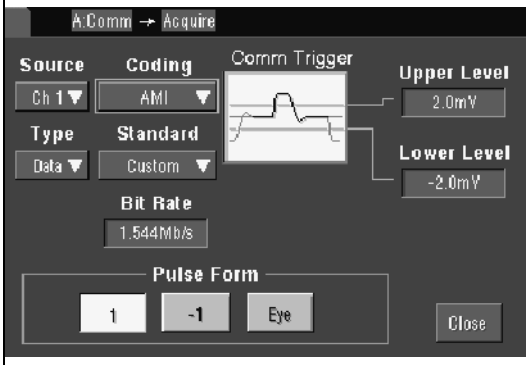
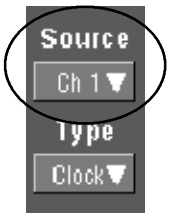
When just the instrument bandwidth falls within 1.5-1.8 (0.8 for optical signals) times the bit rate of a selected mask standard, the instrument displays the message “Consider system bandwidth when testing at this bit rate.” in the status area above the graticule.

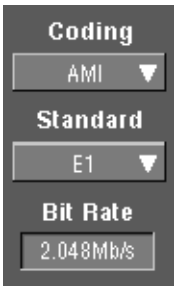
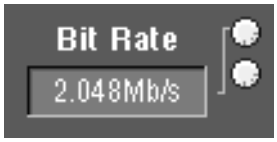
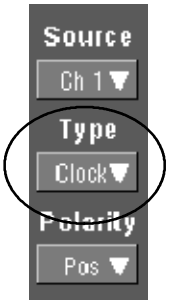
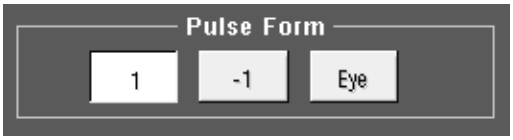
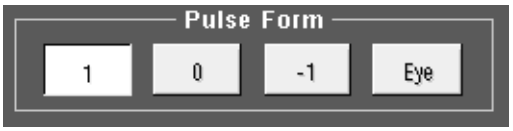
Communication (Comm) Triggering

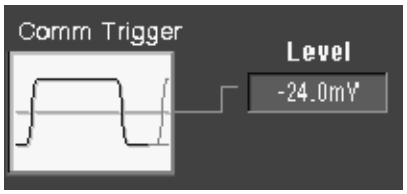
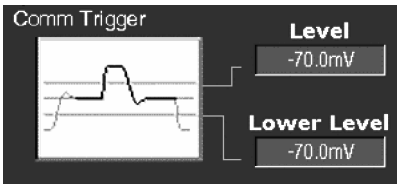
Communication (Comm) triggering sets the instrument to trigger on industry-standard communication signals. This section describes how to access and operate the communication trigger features.

Communication Triggering

To set the instrument to trigger on communication signals, do the following procedure.

Overview	Communication triggering	Related control elements and resources
Access the trigger control window	**1.** From the button bar, touch Trig and select the A Event trigger tab. The instrument opens the Trigger Setup control window.	 
Select a communications trigger	**2.** Touch the Comm button. The instrument displays the Comm Trigger controls.	 
Select comm trigger source	**3.** Touch the Source button to select the signal source channel. Select from channel 1 through channel 4.	

Overview	Communication triggering (cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Select comm trigger coding and standard	**4.** Touch the Coding button and select the appropriate code type for your signal from the list. The code selected determines which standards are available as well as other parameters, such as trigger threshold and pulse form. **5.** Touch the Standard button, and select the appropriate signal standard from the list. The standard selected determines the bit rate. **6.** The Bit Rate field shows the bit rate for the selected standard. Touch the Bit Rate field, and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to enter the serial data stream bit rate for nonstandard bit rates. ***Note.*** *Changing the bit rate means the instrument is not triggering in accordance with the standard. The Standard type changes to Custom when you change the bit rate value.*	 
Select comm trigger type	**7.** Touch the Type button to select the signal type. Select from Data, Clock, and R Clk (recovered clock). Recovered clock is only available for NRZ coded signals. Data or clock sets the instrument to trigger on a data stream or clock signal on the input source, respectively. Refer to *Recovered Clock (R Clk) Key Points* on page C-31 for information on the Recovered Clock function. **8.** If Type is set to Clock, the instrument displays the Polarity button. Touch Polarity to set the clock signal polarity for the instrument to trigger on Pos(itive) or Neg(ative) clock edges.	
Select comm trigger pulse form	**9.** Depending on the code setting, the instrument displays different sets of Pulse Form buttons. Touch the appropriate Pulse form button to select a pulse form setting, where each button means: AMI: Isolated +1, Isolated -1, and eye diagram CMI: +1 (binary 1), 0 (binary zero), -1 (inverse of binary 1), and eye diagram NRZ and MLT3: eye diagram only (no buttons displayed)	 

Overview	Communication triggering (cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Select comm trigger threshold levels	**10.** Depending on the code and standard setting, the instrument displays the Clock Level field with one or two threshold fields. Touch each Level field and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to enter the comm signal threshold level values.	 

Recovered Clock (R Clk) Key Points

The following are key recovered clock (R Clk) points:

- Recovered clock is a synchronous clock signal derived from the serial communications signal by using a Phase Lock Loop (PLL) clock recovery circuit.
- The recovered clock function only applies to NRZ source signals with a signal bit rate that is less than or equal to 3.125 Gb/s. The recovered clock and recovered data (up to 1.25 Gb/s) are also available at the front panel of a CSA7000B Series instrument.
- When you select recovered clock, the instrument attempts to trigger on and acquire a lock on the derived clock signal. If the source data stream is interrupted or is very distorted, then the instrument may not acquire a lock or may lose signal lock, causing an unstable waveform display.

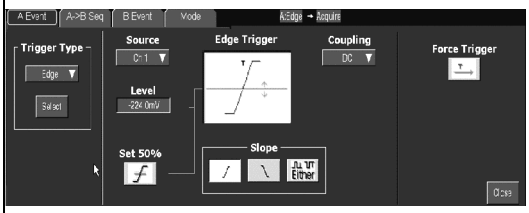
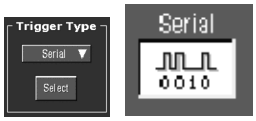
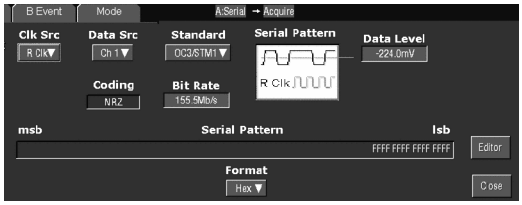
  If this occurs, verify that the source signal is correct, and then push the LEVEL (Push to set 50%) front-panel knob to force the instrument to reacquire a lock on the data stream.

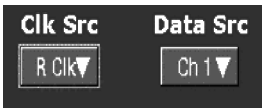
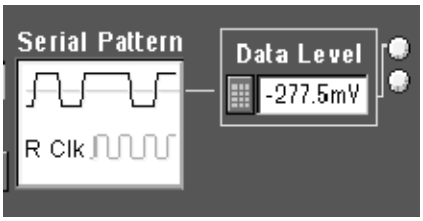
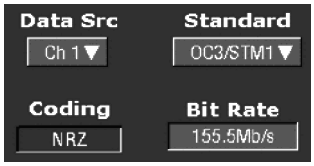
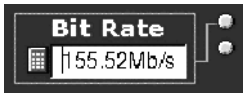
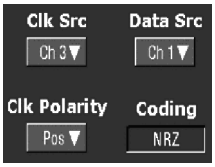
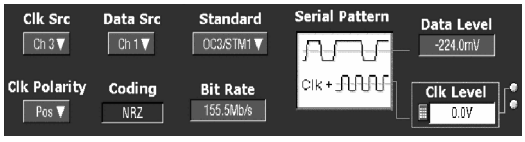
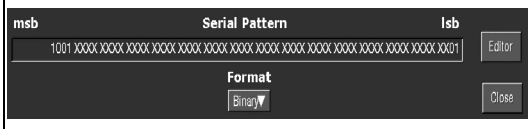
Serial Pattern Trigger

Serial pattern trigger sets the instrument to trigger on a user-defined NRZ data stream pattern. This section describes how to access and operate the serial pattern trigger function.

Serial Pattern Trigger Setup

To set the instrument to trigger on a user-defined serial data stream, do the following procedure.

Overview	Serial trigger setup	Related control elements and resources
Access the trigger control window	**1.** From the button bar, touch Trig, and select the A Event trigger tab. The instrument opens the Trigger Setup control window.	 
Select serial trigger	**2.** Touch the Serial button. The instrument displays the Serial Trigger controls.	 

Overview	Serial trigger setup (cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Select data source	**3.** Touch the Data Src button to select the serial data source. Select from channel 1 through channel 4.	
	4. Touch the Data Level field and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to enter the serial data stream data threshold level.	
Select serial trigger coding and standard	**5.** The Coding button always shows NRZ code type. **6.** Touch the Standard button, and select the appropriate standard from the list. The standard selected determines the bit rate.	
	7. The Bit Rate field shows the bit rate for the selected standard. Touch the Bit Rate field, and use the multipurpose knob or keypad to enter the serial data stream bit rate for nonstandard bit rates. ***Note**: Changing the bit rate means the instrument is not triggering in accordance with the standard.*	
Select clock source, polarity, and level	**8.** Touch the Clk Src button to select the serial data clock source. Select from channel 1 through channel 4 and R Clk (recovered clock). Recovered clock is only available for NRZ coded signals. Refer to *Recovered Clock (R Clk) Key Points* on page C-31 for information on the Recovered Clock function.	
	9. If the clock source is different than the data source (except for R Clk), the instrument displays the Clk Polarity button and the Clk Level field. Touch Clk Polarity to set the clock signal polarity to Pos(itive) or Neg(ative). Touch the Clk Level field, and use the arrow buttons, multipurpose knob, or keypad to enter the clock signal threshold level.	
View the current serial trigger pattern	**10.** The Serial Pattern Data field shows the current serial pattern. Touch the Format button to select the pattern display format from the drop-down list. Available formats are binary and hexadecimal.	

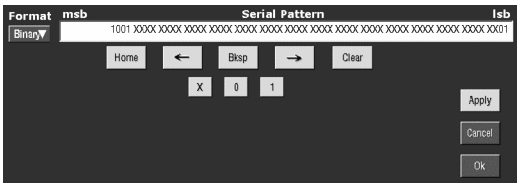
Overview	Serial trigger setup (cont.)	Related control elements and resources
Edit the serial trigger pattern	**11.** Touch the Editor button. The instrument displays the Serial Trigger edit controls. **12.** To enter the serial data pattern in binary format, touch the Format button, and select Binary. To enter the serial data in hexadecimal format, touch the Format button, and select Hex. The editor updates the keypad for the selected format. **13.** Touch the Home button to move the insertion cursor to the right end of the pattern string. **14.** Touch the left-arrow or right-arrow button to move the insertion cursor left or right in the pattern field. You can also use the mouse or the keyboard arrow keys to move the insertion cursor. **15.** Touch the Backspace button to erase the character to the left of the insertion cursor. **16.** Touch the Clear button to erase all pattern data from the pattern field. **17.** Touch the appropriate keypad character to enter a character. You can also use the keyboard to enter binary or hexadecimal characters. You can enter a maximum of 64 binary characters or 16 hexadecimal characters.	  Format msb Serial Pattern lsb Binary 1001 XXXX XXXX XXXX

Table C- 4: ITU-T masks

None	32Mb 32.064 Mb/s	97Mb 97.728 Mb/s	DS1 Rate 1.544 Mb/s
DS2 Rate Sym 6.312 Mb/s	DS2 Rate Coax 6.312 Mb/s	DS3 Rate 44.736 Mb/s	E1 Sym Pair 2.048 Mb/s
E1 Coax Pair 2.048 Mb/s	E2 8.448 Mb/s	E3 34.368 Mb/s	E4 Binary 0 139.26 Mb/s
E4 Binary 1 139.26 Mb/s	STM1E Binary 0 155.52 Mb/s	STM1E Binary 1 155.52 Mb/s	

Table C- 5: ANSI T1.102 masks

None	DS1 1.544 Mb/s	DS1A 2.048 Mb/s	DS1C 3.152 Mb/s
DS2 6.312 Mb/s	DS3 44.736 Mb/s	DS4NA 139.26 Mb/s	DS4NA Max Output 139.26 Mb/s
STS-1 Pulse 51.84 Mb/s	STS-1 Eye 51.84 Mb/s	STS-3 155.52 Mb/s	STS-3 Max Output 155.52 Mb/s

Table C- 6: Ethernet masks

None	100Base-TX STP 125 Mb/s	100Base-TX UTP 125 Mb/s	1000B-SX/LX 1.25 Gb/s
1000B-CX Norm, TP2 1.25 Gb/s	1000B-CX Abs, TP2 1.25 Gb/s	1000B-CX Abs, TP3 1.25 Gb/s	XAUI, Near 3.125 Gb/s
XAUI, Far 3.125 Gb/s	EFM 125 Mb/s (draft)		

Table C- 7: SONET/SDH masks

None	OC1/STM0 51.84 Mb/s	OC3/STM1 155.52 Mb/s	OC12/STM4 622.08 Mb/s	OC48/STM16 2.4883 Gb/s
OC48-FEC 2.666 Gb/s				

Table C-8: Fibre Channel masks

None	FC133 Optical 132.8 Mb/s	FC266 Optical 265.6 Mb/s	FC531 Optical 531.2 Mb/s
FC1063 Optical 1.0625 Gb/s	FC1063 Optical Draft Rev 11	FC2125 Optical 2.125 Gb/s	

Table C-9: Fibre Channel Electrical masks

None	FC133E Elec. 132.8 Mb/s	FC266E Elec. 265.6 Mb/s	FC531E Elec. 531.2 Mb/s
FC1063E Elec. 1.0625 Gb/s	FC1063E Norm, Beta, Transm	FC1063E Norm, Delta, Transm	FC1063E Norm, Gamma, Transm
FC1063E Abs, Beta, Transm	FC1063E Abs, Delta, Transm	FC1063E Abs, Gamma, Transm	FC1063E Abs, Beta, Recv
FC1063E Abs, Delta, Recv	FC1063E Abs, Gamma, Recv	FC2125E Norm, Beta, Transm	FC2125E Norm, Delta, Transm
FC2125E Norm, Gamma, Trans	FC2125E Abs, Beta, Transm	FC2125E Abs, Delta, Transm	FC2125E Abs, Gamma, Transm
FC2125E Abs, Beta, Recv	FC2125E Abs, Delta, Recv	FC2125E Abs, Gamma, Recv	FC4250E Abs, Beta, Recv
FC4250E Abs, Beta, Transm	FC4250E Abs, Delta, Recv	FC4250E Abs, Delta, Transm	FC4250E Abs, Gamma, Recv
FC4250E Abs, Gamma, Transm	FC4250E Norm, Beta, Transm	FC4250E Norm, Delta, Transm	FC4250E Norm, Gamma, Transm

Table C-10: InfiniBand masks

None	2.5 Optical 2.5 Gb/s	2.5 Electrical 2.5 Gb/s

Table C-11: Serial ATA masks

None	G1 Tx 1.5 Gb/s	G1 Rx 1.5 Gb/s
G2 Tx 3.0 Gb/s	G2 Rx 3.0 Gb/s	

Table C-12: USB 1.1/2.0 masks

None	FS 12 Mb/s	HS:T1 480 Mb/s	HS:T2 480 Mb/s
HS:T3 480 Mb/s	HS:T4 480 Mb/s	HS:T5 480 Mb/s	HS:T6 480 Mb/s

Table C-13: 1394b masks

None	S400b T1 491.5 Mb/s	S400b T2 491.5 Mb/s	S400β Optical 491.5 Mb/s
S800b T1 983.0 Mb/s	S800b T2 983.0 Mb/s	S800β Optical 983.0 Mb/s	S1600b T1 1.966 Gb/s
S1600b T2 1.966 Gb/s	S1600β Optical 1.966 Gb/s		

Table C-14: Rapid IO LP-LVDS masks

None	Drv 500 Mb/s	Drv 750 Mb/s	Drv 1.0 Gb/s
Drv 1.5 Gb/s	Drv 2.0 Gb/s	Ext Drv 500 Mb/s	Ext Drv 750 Mb/s
Ext Drv 1.0 Gb/s	Ext Drv 1.5 Gb/s	Ext Drv 2.0 Gb/s	Rcv 500 Mb/s
Rcv 750 Mb/s	Rcv 1.0 Gb/s	Rcv 1.5 Gb/s	Rcv 2.0 Gb/s

Table C-15: Rapid IO Serial masks

None	RIO Serial 1.25 Gb/s	RIO Serial 2.5 Gb/s	RIO Serial 3.125 Gb/s

Table C-16: IOF masks

None	SFI/SPI-5 TA Data 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 TC Data 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 TA Clock 2.488 Gb/s
SFI/SPI-5 TC Clock 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RB Data 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RD Data 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RB Clock 2.488 Gb/s
SFI/SPI-5 RD Clock 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 TA Data 3.125 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 TC Data 3.125 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 TA Clock 3.125 Gb/s
SFI/SPI-5 TC Clock 3.125 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RB Data 3.125 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RD Data 3.125 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RB Clock 3.125 Gb/s
SFI/SPI-5 RD Clock 3.125 Gb/s	VSR OC192/STM64 1.24416 Gb/s	TFI-5 2.488 Gb/s	TFI-5 3.1104 Gb/s

Table C-17: PCI-Express masks

None	PCI-Express Transm 2.5 Gb/s	PCI-Express Recv 2.5 Gb/s	

Table C-18: SAS masks

None	SAS IR 1.5 Gb/s	SAS CR 1.5 Gb/s	SAS XR 1.5 Gb/s
SAS IR AASJ 1.5 Gb/s	SAS CR AASJ 1.5 Gb/s	SAS XR AASJ 1.5 Gb/s	SAS SATA 1.5 Gb/s
SAS IR 3.0 Gb/s	SAS CR 3.0 Gb/s	SAS XR 3.0 Gb/s	SAS IR AASJ 3.0 Gb/s
SAS CR AASJ 3.0 Gb/s	SAS XR AASJ 3.0 Gb/s	SAS SATA 3.0 Gb/s	

Supported Communication Trigger Codes and Standards

Tables C-19 through C-26 list all supported communication trigger standards. Note that HDB3, B3ZS, B6ZS, and B8ZS are considered to be subsets of the AMI code set.

***NOTE**. The communications trigger standards available for an instrument depend on the bandwidth and/or configuration of that instrument.*

Table C-19: AMI trigger standards

Custom	32Mb 32.064 Mb/s	97Mb 97.728 Mb/s	DS1 1.544 Mb/s
DS1A 2.048 Mb/s	DS1C 3.152 Mb/s	DS2 6.312 Mb/s	DS2 Rate Sym 6.312 Mb/s
DS2 Rate Coax 6.312 Mb/s	DS3 44.736 Mb/s	E1 2.048 Mb/s	E2 8.448 Mb/s
E3 34.368 Mb/s	STS-1 51.84 Mb/s		

Table C-20: B3ZS trigger standards

Custom	DS3 44.736 Mb/s	STS-1 51.84 Mb/s	

Table C-21: B6ZS trigger standards

Custom	DS2 6.312 Mb/s	DS2 Rate Sym 6.312 Mb/s	

Table C-22: B8ZS trigger standards

Custom	DS1 1.544 Mb/s	DS1C 3.152 Mb/s	DS2 Rate Coax 6.312 Mb/s

Table C-23: CMI trigger standards

Custom	DS4NA 139.26 Mb/s	E4 139.26 Mb/s
STM1E 155.52 Mb/s	STS-3 155.52 Mb/s	STM-0 CMI 51.84 Mb/s

Table C-24: HDB3 trigger standards

Custom	E1 2.048 Mb/s	E2 8.448 Mb/s
E3 34.368 Mb/s	DS1A 2.048 Mb/s	STM-0 HDBx 51.84 Mb/s

Table C-25: MLT3 trigger standards

Custom	100Base-TX 125 Mb/s	

Table C-26: NRZ trigger standards

Custom	2.5 IBand 2.5 Gb/s	EFU 125.0 Mb/s	FC133 132.8 Mb/s
FC266 265.6 Mb/s	FC531 531.2 Mb/s	FC1063 1.0625 Gb/s	FC2125E 2.125 Gb/s
FC4250 4.25 Gb/s	FS USB 12 Mb/s	G1 ATA 1.5 Gb/s	G2 ATA 3.0 Gb/s
G3 ATA 6.0 Gb/s	GB Ethernet 1.25 Gb/s	HS USB 480 Mb/s	OC1/STM0 51.84 Mb/s
OC3/STM1 155.5 Mb/s	OC12/STM4 622.1 Mb/s	OC48/STM16 2.488 Gb/s	OC48-FEC 2.666 Gb/s
PCI-Express 2.5 Gb/s	RapidIO 500M 500 Mb/s	RapidIO 750M 750 Mb/s	RapidIO 1.0G 1.0 Gb/s
RapidIO 1.5G 1.5 Gb/s	RapidIO 2.0G 2.0 Gb/s	RIO Serial 1G 1.25 Gb/s	RIO Serial 2G 2.5 Gb/s
RIO Serial 3G 3.125 Gb/s	S400b 491.5 Mb/s	S800b 983.0 Mb/s	S1600b 1.966 Gb/s
SFI/SPI-5 2.5G 2.5 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 3.1G 3.1 Gb/s	TFI-5 2.5G 1.488 Gb/s	TFI-5 3.1G 3.11 Gb/s
VSR OC192 1.244 Gb/s	XAUI 3.125 Gb/s		

Automatic Communication Signal Measurements

Table C–27 lists the automatic communication signal measurements that are part of the Serial Mask Testing features.

Table C-27: Supported communications measurements and their definition

Name	Definition
Ext Ratio	The ratio of eye top to base. *Ext Ratio = $PTop_{mean}/PBase_{mean}$*
Extinction Ratio %	The ratio of eye base to top in %. *Ext Ratio % = $100*(PBase_{mean}/PTop_{mean})$*
Extinction Ratio dB	The ratio of eye top to base in dB. *Ext Ratio dB = $10*Log(PTop_{mean}/PBase_{mean})$*
Eye Height	The eye height in watts or volts. *Eye Height = $(PTop_{mean} - 3*PTop_{sigma}) - (PBase_{mean} + 3*PBase_{sigma})$*
Eye Width	The eye width in seconds. *Eye Width = $(TCross2_{mean} - 3*TCross2_{sigma}) - (TCross1_{mean} + 3*TCross1_{sigma})$*
Crossing %	The eye crossing point as a percentage of eye height. *Crossing % = $100*[(PCross1_{mean} - PBase_{mean})/(PTop_{mean} - PBase_{mean})]$*
Eye Top	The top of the eye.
Eye Base	The base of the eye.
Jitter Pk-Pk	The peak-to-peak value for the edge jitter in the current horizontal units. *Jitter PP = $TCross1_{PP}$*
Jitter RMS	The RMS value of the edge jitter in the current horizontal units. *Jitter RMS = $TCross1_{sigma}$*
Jitter 6σ	*6 x (Jitter RMS)*
Noise Pk-Pk	The peak-to-peak value of the noise of the top or base of the signal as specified by the user. *Noise Pk-Pk = $PTop_{pk-pk\ or}\ PBase_{pk-pk}$*
Noise RMS	The RMS value of the noise of the top or base of the signal as specified by the user. *Noise RMS = $PTop_{sigma\ or}\ PBase_{sigma}$*
S/N Ratio	Ratio of the signal amplitude to the noise of the top or base of the signal as specified by the user. *S/N Ratio = $(PTop - PBase)/(PTop_{sigma}\ or\ PBase_{sigma})$*

Table C-27: Supported communications measurements and their definition (Cont.)

Name	Definition
Duty Cycle Distortion	The peak-to-peak time variation of the 1st eye crossing measured at the MidRef as a percent of the eye period. $DCD\ (sec) = 100\% \times TDCD_{p\text{-}p}/(TCross2_{mean} - TCross2_{mean})$
Quality Factor	Ratio of eye size to noise. $Quality\ Factor = (PTop_{mean} - PBase_{mean})/(PTop_{sigma} + PBase_{sigma})$

Levels Used in Taking Eye Measurements

All eye-diagram measurements are based on the power level, the voltage level, or the time locations of edges within each acquisition.

Figure C-5 shows an eye-diagram and the areas from which values are taken that are used to calculate measurements.

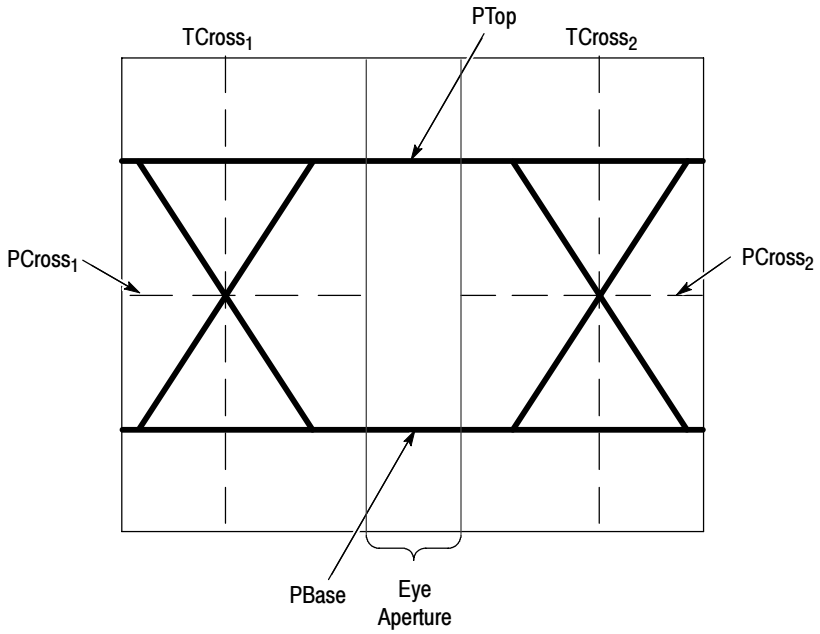


Figure C-5: Eye-diagram and optical values

P Values

The P values include the mean and standard deviation of the vertical location of PTop and PBase. These areas are used with a specified sample size to statistically measure the following values:

- $PTop_{mean}$, the mean value of PTop
- $PTop_{sigma}$, the standard deviation of PTop
- $PTop_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the vertical peak-to-peak deviation of PTop
- $PBase_{mean}$, the mean value of PBase within the Eye Aperture[1]
- $PBase_{sigma}$, the standard deviation of PBase within the Eye Aperture[1]
- $PBase_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the vertical peak-to-peak deviation of PBase

[1] **The Eye Aperture defaults to the center 20% of the interval from $TCross_1$ to $TCross_2$.**

T1 Values

The T1 values are vertical and horizontal values associated with the leftmost crossing point. These areas are used to establish the following directions:

- $TCross1_{mean}$, the horizontal mean of the left crossing point at $TCross_1$
- $TCross1_{sigma}$, the horizontal standard deviation of the left crossing point at $TCross_1$
- $TCross1_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the horizontal peak-to-peak deviation of the left crossing point at $TCross_1$
- $PCross1_{mean}$, the vertical mean of the left crossing point at $PCross_1$

T2 Values

The T2 values are vertical and horizontal values associated with the rightmost crossing point. These areas are used to establish the following directions:

- $TCross2_{mean}$, the horizontal mean of the right crossing point at $TCross_2$
- $TCross2_{sigma}$, the horizontal standard deviation of the right crossing point at $TCross_2$
- $TCross2_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the horizontal peak-to-peak deviation of the right crossing point at $TCross_2$

DCD Values

The duty cycle distortion (DCD) values are horizontal values associated with the rightmost crossing point at 50% of the eye height. These areas are used to establish the $DCD_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the horizontal peak-to-peak deviation of the left crossing point at half the height of the eye.

Supported Mask Types and Standards

Tables C–28 through C–17 list all supported mask types and standards.

***NOTE**. The standards available for an instrument depend on the options, bandwidth, and configuration of that instrument.*

Table C- 28: ITU-T masks

None	32Mb 32.064 Mb/s	97Mb 97.728 Mb/s	DS1 Rate 1.544 Mb/s
DS2 Rate Sym 6.312 Mb/s	DS2 Rate Coax 6.312 Mb/s	DS3 Rate 44.736 Mb/s	E1 Sym Pair 2.048 Mb/s
E1 Coax Pair 2.048 Mb/s	E2 8.448 Mb/s	E3 34.368 Mb/s	E4 Binary 0 139.26 Mb/s
E4 Binary 1 139.26 Mb/s	STM1E Binary 0 155.52 Mb/s	STM1E Binary 1 155.52 Mb/s	

Table C- 29: ANSI T1.102 masks

None	DS1 1.544 Mb/s	DS1A 2.048 Mb/s	DS1C 3.152 Mb/s
DS2 6.312 Mb/s	DS3 44.736 Mb/s	DS4NA 139.26 Mb/s	DS4NA Max Output 139.26 Mb/s
STS-1 Pulse 51.84 Mb/s	STS-1 Eye 51.84 Mb/s	STS-3 155.52 Mb/s	STS-3 Max Output 155.52 Mb/s

Table C- 30: Ethernet masks

None	100Base-TX STP 125 Mb/s	100Base-TX UTP 125 Mb/s	1000B-SX/LX 1.25 Gb/s
1000B-CX Norm, TP2 1.25 Gb/s	1000B-CX Abs, TP2 1.25 Gb/s	1000B-CX Abs, TP3 1.25 Gb/s	XAUI, Near 3.125 Gb/s
XAUI, Far 3.125 Gb/s	EFM 125 Mb/s (draft)		

Table C-31: SONET/SDH masks

None	OC1/STM0 51.84 Mb/s	OC3/STM1 155.52 Mb/s	OC12/STM4 622.08 Mb/s	OC48/STM16 2.4883 Gb/s
OC48-FEC 2.666 Gb/s				

Table C-32: Fibre Channel masks

None	FC133 Optical 132.8 Mb/s	FC266 Optical 265.6 Mb/s	FC531 Optical 531.2 Mb/s
FC1063 Optical 1.0625 Gb/s	FC1063 Optical Draft Rev 11	FC2125 Optical 2.125 Gb/s	

Table C-33: Fibre Channel Electrical masks

None	FC133E Elec. 132.8 Mb/s	FC266E Elec. 265.6 Mb/s	FC531E Elec. 531.2 Mb/s
FC1063E Elec. 1.0625 Gb/s	FC1063E Norm, Beta, Transm	FC1063E Norm, Delta, Transm	FC1063E Norm, Gamma, Transm
FC1063E Abs, Beta, Transm	FC1063E Abs, Delta, Transm	FC1063E Abs, Gamma, Transm	FC1063E Abs, Beta, Recv
FC1063E Abs, Delta, Recv	FC1063E Abs, Gamma, Recv	FC2125E Norm, Beta, Transm	FC2125E Norm, Delta, Transm
FC2125E Norm, Gamma, Trans	FC2125E Abs, Beta, Transm	FC2125E Abs, Delta, Transm	FC2125E Abs, Gamma, Transm
FC2125E Abs, Beta, Recv	FC2125E Abs, Delta, Recv	FC2125E Abs, Gamma, Recv	FC4250E Abs, Beta, Recv
FC4250E Abs, Beta, Transm	FC4250E Abs, Delta, Recv	FC4250E Abs, Delta, Transm	FC4250E Abs, Gamma, Recv
FC4250E Abs, Gamma, Transm	FC4250E Norm, Beta, Transm	FC4250E Norm, Delta, Transm	FC4250E Norm, Gamma, Transm

Table C-34: InfiniBand masks

None	2.5 Optical 2.5 Gb/s	2.5 Electrical 2.5 Gb/s

Table C-35: Serial ATA masks

None	G1 Tx 1.5 Gb/s	G1 Rx 1.5 Gb/s
G2 Tx 3.0 Gb/s	G2 Rx 3.0 Gb/s	

Table C-36: USB 1.1/2.0 masks

None	FS 12 Mb/s	HS:T1 480 Mb/s	HS:T2 480 Mb/s
HS:T3 480 Mb/s	HS:T4 480 Mb/s	HS:T5 480 Mb/s	HS:T6 480 Mb/s

Table C-37: 1394b masks

None	S400b T1 491.5 Mb/s	S400b T2 491.5 Mb/s	S400β Optical 491.5 Mb/s
S800b T1 983.0 Mb/s	S800b T2 983.0 Mb/s	S800β Optical 983.0 Mb/s	S1600b T1 1.966 Gb/s
S1600b T2 1.966 Gb/s	S1600β Optical 1.966 Gb/s		

Table C-38: Rapid IO LP-LVDS masks

None	Drv 500 Mb/s	Drv 750 Mb/s	Drv 1.0 Gb/s
Drv 1.5 Gb/s	Drv 2.0 Gb/s	Ext Drv 500 Mb/s	Ext Drv 750 Mb/s
Ext Drv 1.0 Gb/s	Ext Drv 1.5 Gb/s	Ext Drv 2.0 Gb/s	Rcv 500 Mb/s
Rcv 750 Mb/s	Rcv 1.0 Gb/s	Rcv 1.5 Gb/s	Rcv 2.0 Gb/s

Table C-39: Rapid IO Serial masks

None	RIO Serial 1.25 Gb/s	RIO Serial 2.5 Gb/s	RIO Serial 3.125 Gb/s

Table C- 40: IOF masks

None	SFI/SPI-5 TA Data 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 TC Data 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 TA Clock 2.488 Gb/s
SFI/SPI-5 TC Clock 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RB Data 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RD Data 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RB Clock 2.488 Gb/s
SFI/SPI-5 RD Clock 2.488 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 TA Data 3.125 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 TC Data 3.125 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 TA Clock 3.125 Gb/s
SFI/SPI-5 TC Clock 3.125 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RB Data 3.125 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RD Data 3.125 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 RB Clock 3.125 Gb/s
SFI/SPI-5 RD Clock 3.125 Gb/s	VSR OC192/STM64 1.24416 Gb/s	TFI-5 2.488 Gb/s	TFI-5 3.1104 Gb/s

Table C- 41: PCI-Express masks

None	PCI-Express Transm 2.5 Gb/s	PCI-Express Recv 2.5 Gb/s	

Table C- 42: SAS masks

None	SAS IR 1.5 Gb/s	SAS CR 1.5 Gb/s	SAS XR 1.5 Gb/s
SAS IR AASJ 1.5 Gb/s	SAS CR AASJ 1.5 Gb/s	SAS XR AASJ 1.5 Gb/s	SAS SATA 1.5 Gb/s
SAS IR 3.0 Gb/s	SAS CR 3.0 Gb/s	SAS XR 3.0 Gb/s	SAS IR AASJ 3.0 Gb/s
SAS CR AASJ 3.0 Gb/s	SAS XR AASJ 3.0 Gb/s	SAS SATA 3.0 Gb/s	

Supported Communication Trigger Codes and Standards

Tables C–43 through C–50 list all supported communication trigger standards. Note that HDB3, B3ZS, B6ZS, and B8ZS are considered to be subsets of the AMI code set.

NOTE. *The communications trigger standards available for an instrument depend on the bandwidth and/or configuration of that instrument.*

Table C-43: AMI trigger standards

Custom	32Mb 32.064 Mb/s	97Mb 97.728 Mb/s	DS1 1.544 Mb/s
DS1A 2.048 Mb/s	DS1C 3.152 Mb/s	DS2 6.312 Mb/s	DS2 Rate Sym 6.312 Mb/s
DS2 Rate Coax 6.312 Mb/s	DS3 44.736 Mb/s	E1 2.048 Mb/s	E2 8.448 Mb/s
E3 34.368 Mb/s	STS-1 51.84 Mb/s		

Table C-44: B3ZS trigger standards

Custom	DS3 44.736 Mb/s	STS-1 51.84 Mb/s	

Table C-45: B6ZS trigger standards

Custom	DS2 6.312 Mb/s	DS2 Rate Sym 6.312 Mb/s	

Table C-46: B8ZS trigger standards

Custom	DS1 1.544 Mb/s	DS1C 3.152 Mb/s	DS2 Rate Coax 6.312 Mb/s

Table C- 47: CMI trigger standards

Custom	DS4NA 139.26 Mb/s	E4 139.26 Mb/s
STM1E 155.52 Mb/s	STS-3 155.52 Mb/s	STM-0 CMI 51.84 Mb/s

Table C- 48: HDB3 trigger standards

Custom	E1 2.048 Mb/s	E2 8.448 Mb/s
E3 34.368 Mb/s	DS1A 2.048 Mb/s	STM-0 HDBx 51.84 Mb/s

Table C- 49: MLT3 trigger standards

Custom	100Base-TX 125 Mb/s	

Table C- 50: NRZ trigger standards

Custom	2.5 IBand 2.5 Gb/s	EFU 125.0 Mb/s	FC133 132.8 Mb/s
FC266 265.6 Mb/s	FC531 531.2 Mb/s	FC1063 1.0625 Gb/s	FC2125E 2.125 Gb/s
FC4250 4.25 Gb/s	FS USB 12 Mb/s	G1 ATA 1.5 Gb/s	G2 ATA 3.0 Gb/s
G3 ATA 6.0 Gb/s	GB Ethernet 1.25 Gb/s	HS USB 480 Mb/s	OC1/STM0 51.84 Mb/s
OC3/STM1 155.5 Mb/s	OC12/STM4 622.1 Mb/s	OC48/STM16 2.488 Gb/s	OC48-FEC 2.666 Gb/s
PCI-Express 2.5 Gb/s	RapidIO 500M 500 Mb/s	RapidIO 750M 750 Mb/s	RapidIO 1.0G 1.0 Gb/s
RapidIO 1.5G 1.5 Gb/s	RapidIO 2.0G 2.0 Gb/s	RIO Serial 1G 1.25 Gb/s	RIO Serial 2G 2.5 Gb/s
RIO Serial 3G 3.125 Gb/s	S400b 491.5 Mb/s	S800b 983.0 Mb/s	S1600b 1.966 Gb/s
SFI/SPI-5 2.5G 2.5 Gb/s	SFI/SPI-5 3.1G 3.1 Gb/s	TFI-5 2.5G 1.488 Gb/s	TFI-5 3.1G 3.11 Gb/s
VSR OC192 1.244 Gb/s	XAUI 3.125 Gb/s		

Automatic Communication Signal Measurements

Table C–51 lists the automatic communication signal measurements that are part of the Serial Mask Testing features.

Table C-51: Supported communications measurements and their definition

Name	Definition
Ext Ratio	The ratio of eye top to base. *Ext Ratio = $PTop_{mean}/PBase_{mean}$*
Extinction Ratio %	The ratio of eye base to top in %. *Ext Ratio % = $100*(PBase_{mean}/PTop_{mean})$*
Extinction Ratio dB	The ratio of eye top to base in dB. *Ext Ratio dB = $10*Log(PTop_{mean}/PBase_{mean})$*
Eye Height	The eye height in watts or volts. *Eye Height = $(PTop_{mean} - 3*PTop_{sigma}) - (PBase_{mean} + 3*PBase_{sigma})$*
Eye Width	The eye width in seconds. *Eye Width = $(TCross2_{mean} - 3*TCross2_{sigma}) - (TCross1_{mean} + 3*TCross1_{sigma})$*
Crossing %	The eye crossing point as a percentage of eye height. *Crossing % = $100*[(PCross1_{mean} - PBase_{mean})/(PTop_{mean} - PBase_{mean})]$*
Eye Top	The top of the eye.
Eye Base	The base of the eye.
Jitter Pk-Pk	The peak-to-peak value for the edge jitter in the current horizontal units. *Jitter PP = $TCross1_{PP}$*
Jitter RMS	The RMS value of the edge jitter in the current horizontal units. *Jitter RMS = $TCross1_{sigma}$*
Jitter 6σ	*6 x (Jitter RMS)*
Noise Pk-Pk	The peak-to-peak value of the noise of the top or base of the signal as specified by the user. *Noise Pk-Pk = $PTop_{pk-pk\ or}\ PBase_{pk-pk}$*
Noise RMS	The RMS value of the noise of the top or base of the signal as specified by the user. *Noise RMS = $PTop_{sigma\ or}\ PBase_{sigma}$*
S/N Ratio	Ratio of the signal amplitude to the noise of the top or base of the signal as specified by the user. *S/N Ratio = $(PTop - PBase)/(PTop_{sigma}\ or\ PBase_{sigma})$*

Table C-51: Supported communications measurements and their definition (Cont.)

Name	Definition
Duty Cycle Distortion	The peak-to-peak time variation of the 1st eye crossing measured at the MidRef as a percent of the eye period. $DCD\ (sec) = 100\% \times TDCD_{p\text{-}p}/(TCross2_{mean} - TCross2_{mean})$
Quality Factor	Ratio of eye size to noise. $Quality\ Factor = (PTop_{mean} - PBase_{mean})/(PTop_{sigma} + PBase_{sigma})$

Levels Used in Taking Eye Measurements

All eye-diagram measurements are based on the power level, the voltage level, or the time locations of edges within each acquisition.

Figure C-6 shows an eye-diagram and the areas from which values are taken that are used to calculate measurements.

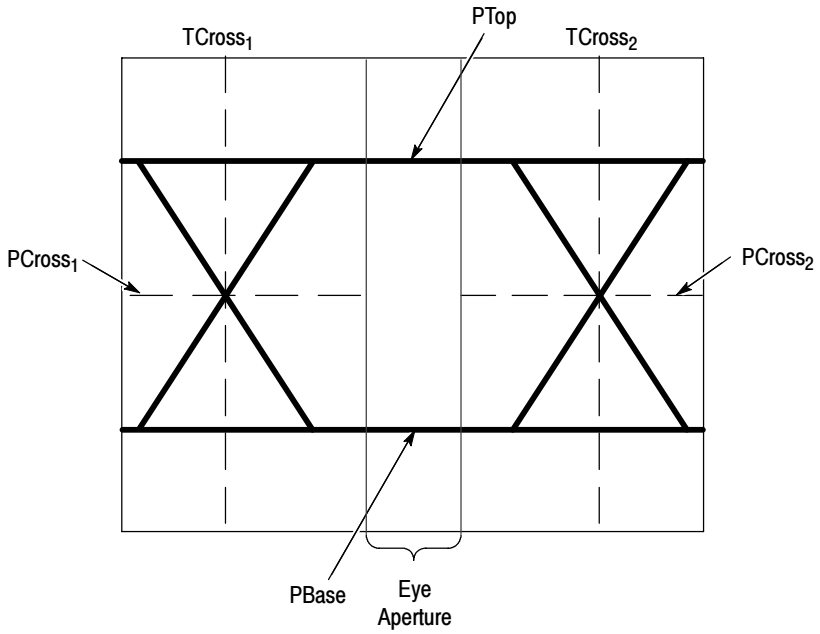


Figure C-6: Eye-diagram and optical values

P Values

The P values include the mean and standard deviation of the vertical location of PTop and PBase. These areas are used with a specified sample size to statistically measure the following values:

- $PTop_{mean}$, the mean value of PTop
- $PTop_{sigma}$, the standard deviation of PTop
- $PTop_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the vertical peak-to-peak deviation of PTop
- $PBase_{mean}$, the mean value of PBase within the Eye Aperture[1]
- $PBase_{sigma}$, the standard deviation of PBase within the Eye Aperture[1]
- $PBase_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the vertical peak-to-peak deviation of PBase

[1] **The Eye Aperture defaults to the center 20% of the interval from $TCross_1$ to $TCross_2$.**

T1 Values

The T1 values are vertical and horizontal values associated with the leftmost crossing point. These areas are used to establish the following directions:

- $TCross1_{mean}$, the horizontal mean of the left crossing point at $TCross_1$
- $TCross1_{sigma}$, the horizontal standard deviation of the left crossing point at $TCross_1$
- $TCross1_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the horizontal peak-to-peak deviation of the left crossing point at $TCross_1$
- $PCross1_{mean}$, the vertical mean of the left crossing point at $PCross_1$

T2 Values

The T2 values are vertical and horizontal values associated with the rightmost crossing point. These areas are used to establish the following directions:

- $TCross2_{mean}$, the horizontal mean of the right crossing point at $TCross_2$
- $TCross2_{sigma}$, the horizontal standard deviation of the right crossing point at $TCross_2$
- $TCross2_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the horizontal peak-to-peak deviation of the right crossing point at $TCross_2$

DCD Values

The duty cycle distortion (DCD) values are horizontal values associated with the rightmost crossing point at 50% of the eye height. These areas are used to establish the $DCD_{pk\text{-}pk}$, the horizontal peak-to-peak deviation of the left crossing point at half the height of the eye.

Appendix D: Cleaning

Use these procedures to clean your instrument. If additional cleaning is required, have your instrument serviced by qualified service personnel.

CAUTION. *To prevent getting moisture inside the instrument during external cleaning, use only enough liquid to dampen the cloth or applicator.*

Exterior Cleaning

Clean the exterior surfaces of the chassis with a dry lint-free cloth or a soft-bristle brush. If any dirt remains, use a cloth or swab dipped in a 75% isopropyl alcohol solution. Use a swab to clean narrow spaces around controls and connectors. Do not use abrasive compounds on any part of the chassis.

Clean the On/Standby switch using a dampened cleaning towel. Do not spray or wet the switch directly.

CAUTION. *Do not use chemical cleaning agents which might damage the plastics used in this instrument. Use only deionized water when cleaning the front-panel buttons. Use a 75% isopropyl alcohol solution as a cleaner and rinse with deionized water. Before using any other type of cleaner, consult your Tektronix Service Center or representative.*

Flat Panel Display Cleaning

The display is soft plastic and must be treated with care during cleaning.

CAUTION. *Improper cleaning agents or methods can damage the flat panel display.*

Do not use abrasive cleaners or commercial glass cleaners to clean the display.
Do not spray liquids directly on the display surface.
Do not scrub the display with excessive force.

Clean the flat panel display surface by gently rubbing the display with a clean-room wipe (such as Wypall Medium Duty Wipes, #05701, available from Kimberly-Clark Corporation).

If the display is very dirty, moisten the wipe with distilled water or a 75% isopropyl alcohol solution and gently rub the display surface. Avoid using excess force or you may damage the plastic display surface.

Glossary

Glossary

AC coupling
A type of signal transmission that blocks the DC component of a signal but uses the dynamic (AC) component.

Accuracy
The closeness of the indicated value to the true value.

Acquisition
The process of sampling signals from input channels, digitizing the samples into data points, and assembling the data points into a waveform record. The waveform record is stored in memory. The trigger marks time zero in that process.

Acquisition interval
The time duration of the waveform record divided by the record length. Except in equivalent time, the instrument acquires one data point for every acquisition interval.

Aliasing
A false representation of a signal due to insufficient sampling of high frequencies or fast transitions. A condition that occurs when an instrument digitizes at an effective sampling rate that is too slow to reproduce the input signal. The waveform displayed on the instrument may have a lower frequency than the actual input signal.

Amplitude
The High waveform value less the Low waveform value.

AND
A logic (Boolean) function in which the output is true when and only when all the inputs are true. On the instrument, a trigger logic pattern and state function.

Analog-to-Digital Converter
A device that converts an analog signal to a digital signal.

Area
Measurement of the waveform area taken over the entire waveform or the gated region. Expressed in mixed amplitude and time units, such as volt-seconds. Area above ground is positive; area below ground is negative.

Attenuation
The degree the amplitude of a signal is reduced when it passes through an attenuating device such as a probe or attenuator. That is, the ratio of the input measure to the output measure. For example, a 10X probe will attenuate, or reduce, the input voltage of a signal by a factor of 10.

Automatic trigger mode
A trigger mode that causes the instrument to automatically acquire if triggerable events are not detected within a specified time period.

Autoset
A function of the instrument that automatically produces a stable waveform of usable size. Autoset sets up front-panel controls based on the characteristics of the active waveform. A successful autoset will set the volts/div, time/div, and trigger level to produce a coherent and stable waveform display.

Average acquisition mode
In this mode, the instrument acquires and displays a waveform that is the averaged result of several acquisitions. Averaging reduces the apparent noise. The instrument acquires data as in the sample mode and then averages it according to a specified number of averages.

Averaging
Displaying a trace that is the combined result of several acquisitions, thereby reducing apparent noise.

Bandwidth
The highest frequency signal the instrument can acquire with no more than 3 dB (× .707) attenuation of the original (reference) signal.

Burst width
A timing measurement of the duration of a burst.

Control knob
S*ee Knob.*

Channel
One type of input used for signal acquisition. The instrument has four channels.

Channel/probe deskew
A relative time delay for each channel. This lets you align signals to compensate for the fact that signals may come in from cables of differing length.

Channel Reference Indicator
The indicator on the left side of the display that points to the position around which the waveform contracts or expands when vertical scale is changed. This position is ground when offset is set to 0 V; otherwise, it is ground plus offset.

Control window
A group of related controls for a major instrument function that the instrument displays at the right of the screen.

Coupling
The association of two or more circuits or systems in such a way that power or information can be transferred from one to the other. You can couple the input signal to the trigger and vertical systems several different ways.

Cursors
Paired markers that you can use to make measurements between two waveform locations. The instrument displays the values (expressed in volts or time) of the position of the active cursor and the distance between the two cursors.

Cycle area
A measurement of waveform area taken over one cycle. Expressed in volt-seconds. Area above ground is positive; area below ground is negative.

Cycle mean
An amplitude (voltage) measurement of the arithmetic mean over one cycle.

Cycle RMS
The true Root Mean Square voltage over one cycle.

dB

Decibel: a method of expressing power or voltage ratios. The decibel scale is logarithmic. It is often used to express the efficiency of power distribution systems when the ratio consists of the energy put into the system divided by the energy delivered (or in some cases, lost) by the system. One milliwatt of optical power is usually the optical reference for 0 dBm. The formula for decibels is:

$$dB = 20\log\left(\frac{Vi}{Vl}\right) \qquad \textit{for optical,} \quad dB = 10\log\left(\frac{Po}{Pi}\right)$$

where V_i is the voltage of the incident pulse, V_l is the voltage reflected back by the load, P_o is the power out, P_i is the power in, and log is the decimal-based logarithmic function.

dBm

A logarithmic measure of power referenced to 1 milliwatt (1 mW optical power = 0.0 dBm):

$$dBm = 10 \log\left(\frac{optical\ power}{1\ mW}\right)$$

DC coupling

A mode that passes both AC and DC signal components to the circuit. Available for both the trigger system and the vertical system.

Delay measurement

A measurement of the time between the middle reference crossings of two different waveforms.

Delay time

The time between the trigger event and the acquisition of post trigger data.

Digitizing

The process of converting a continuous analog signal such as a waveform to a set of discrete numbers representing the amplitude of the signal at specific points in time. Digitizing is composed of two steps: sampling and quantizing.

Display system
The part of the instrument that shows waveforms, measurements, control windows, status, and other parameters.

Dragging
The act of changing your touch panel selection by moving your finger without removing it from the screen. The selection that is activated is the last one that you were touching before removing your finger.

Dual Graticule
A display with two graticules. Each one is half the height of the single graticule.

Edge Trigger
Triggering occurs when the instrument detects the source passing through a specified voltage level in a specified direction (the trigger slope).

Enhanced Bandwidth
A digital signal processing filter, applied on the digitized data stream from an input channel, that reduces its risetime, it may extend its bandwidth on some models, and does flatten its response and corrects phase linearity. Since these filters are matched across channels, response is better matched. You can enable Enhanced Bandwidth on any or all of the vertical input channels of the instrument.

Envelope acquisition mode
A mode in which the instrument acquires and displays a waveform that shows the variation extremes of several acquisitions.

Equivalent-time sampling (ET)
A sampling mode in which the instrument acquires signals over many repetitions of the event. These instruments use a type of equivalent-time sampling called *random equivalent-time sampling*, which uses an internal clock that runs asynchronously with respect to the input signal and the signal trigger. The instrument takes samples continuously, independent of the trigger position, and displays them based on the time difference between the sample and the trigger. Although the samples are taken sequentially in time, they are random with respect to the trigger.

Fall Time

A measurement of the time it takes for the trailing edge of a pulse to fall from a HighRef value (typically 90%) to a LowRef value (typically 10%) of its amplitude.

Frequency

A timing measurement that is the reciprocal of the period. Measured in Hertz (Hz) where 1 Hz = 1 cycle per second.

Gated Measurements

A feature that lets you limit automated measurements to a specified portion of the waveform. You define the area of interest using the vertical cursors.

Glitch positive trigger

Triggering occurs if the instrument detects positive spike widths less than the specified glitch time.

Glitch negative trigger

Triggering occurs if the instrument detects negative spike widths less than the specified glitch time.

Glitch either trigger

Triggering occurs if the instrument detects either positive or negative spike widths less than the specified glitch time.

GPIB (General Purpose Interface Bus)

An interconnection bus and protocol that allows you to connect multiple instruments in a network under the control of a controller. Also known as IEEE 488 bus. It transfers data with eight parallel data lines, five control lines, and three handshake lines.

Graticule

A grid on the display screen that creates the horizontal and vertical axes. You can use it to visually measure waveform parameters.

Ground (GND) coupling
Coupling option that disconnects the input signal from the vertical system.

Hardcopy
An electronic copy of the display in a format useable by a printer or plotter.

Hi Res acquisition mode
An acquisition mode in which the instrument averages all samples taken during an acquisition interval to create a record point. That average results in a higher-resolution, lower-bandwidth waveform. This mode only works with real-time, non-interpolated sampling.

High
The value used as 100% in automated measurements (whenever high ref, mid ref, and low ref values are needed as in fall time and rise time measurements). May be calculated using either the min/max or the histogram method. With the min/max method (most useful for general waveforms), it is the maximum value found. With the histogram method (most useful for pulses), it refers to the most common value found above the mid point.

Holdoff, trigger
The time after a trigger signal that elapses before the trigger circuit will accept another trigger signal. Trigger holdoff helps ensure a stable display.

Horizontal acquisition window
The range of the segment of the input signal that the acquisition system acquires.

Horizontal bar cursors
The two horizontal bars that you position to measure the voltage parameters of a waveform. The instrument displays the value of the active (moveable) cursor with respect to ground and the voltage value between the bars.

Horizontal Reference Point
The point about which the trace is expanded or contracted when horizontal size adjustments are made. The horizontal reference point remains anchored as the rest of the trace grows or shrinks around it.

Initialize
Setting the instrument to a completely known, default condition.

Interpolation
The way the instrument calculates values for record points when the instrument cannot acquire all the points for a complete record with a single trigger event. That condition occurs when the instrument is limited to real time sampling and the time base is set to a value that exceeds the effective sample rate of the instrument. The instrument has two interpolation options: *linear* or *sin(x)/x interpolation*.

Linear interpolation calculates record points in a straight-line fit between the actual values acquired. Sin(x)/x computes record points in a curve fit between the actual values acquired. It assumes all the interpolated points fall in their appropriate point in time on that curve.

Intensity
Display brightness.

Knob
A rotary control.

Knob Resolution
The amount of change caused by each click of a knob.

Live Waveforms
Waveforms that can update as the acquisition system updates them. Channel waveforms are live waveforms; reference waveforms are not. Math waveforms are live if they contain live waveforms in their expressions: Ch1 + Ref1 defines a live math waveform; Ref1 + Ref2 does not.

Logic state trigger
The instrument checks for defined combinatorial logic conditions on channels 1, 2, and 3 on a transition of channel 4 that meets the set slope and threshold conditions. If the conditions of channels 1, 2, and 3 are met then the instrument triggers.

Logic pattern trigger
The instrument triggers depending on the combinatorial logic condition of channels 1, 2, 3, and 4. Allowable conditions are AND, OR, NAND, and NOR.

Low
The value used as 0% in automated measurements (whenever high ref, mid ref, and low ref values are needed as in fall time and rise time measurements). May be calculated using either the min/max or the histogram method. With the min/max method (most useful for general waveforms) it is the minimum value found. With the histogram method (most useful for pulses) it refers to the most common value found below the mid point.

Maximum
Amplitude (voltage) measurement of the maximum amplitude. Typically the most positive peak voltage.

Mean
Amplitude (voltage) measurement of the arithmetic mean over the entire waveform.

Measurement
An automated numeric readout that the instrument provides directly from the displayed trace in real time, without operator intervention.

Measurement Parameter
One of several controls that the instrument operator can exercise over the automated measurement process.

Measurement Statistics
The accumulation of a history of individual measurement readouts, showing the mean and standard deviation of a selected number of samples.

Measurement Tracking
The process of automatically adjusting the measurement parameters to reflect changes in the trace.

Mesial
The middle point of a range of points. The middle measurement point between proximal and distal points for timing measurements, and the intermediate height between baseline and topline for amplitude measurements.

Minimum
Amplitude (voltage) measurement of the minimum amplitude. Typically the most negative peak voltage.

Mode
A stable condition of oscillation in a laser. A laser can operate in one mode (single mode) or in many modes (multimode).

Multipurpose knobs
Front-panel knobs you can use to change the value of the assigned parameter.

NAND
A logic (Boolean) function in which the output of the AND function is complemented (true becomes false, and false becomes true). On the instrument, that is a trigger logic pattern and state function.

Negative duty cycle
A timing measurement representing the ratio of the negative pulse width to the signal period, expressed as a percentage.

Negative overshoot measurement
Amplitude (voltage) measurement.

$$NegativeOvershoot = \frac{Low - Min}{Amplitude} \times 100\%$$

Negative width

A timing measurement of the distance (time) between two amplitude points — falling-edge *MidRef* (default 50%) and rising-edge *MidRef* (default 50%) — on a negative pulse.

Normal trigger mode

A mode on which the instrument does not acquire a waveform record unless a valid trigger event occurs. It waits for a valid trigger event before acquiring waveform data.

NOR

A logic (Boolean) function in which the output of the OR function is complemented (true becomes false, and false becomes true). On the instrument, a trigger logic pattern and state function.

OR

A logic (Boolean) function in which the output is true if any of the inputs are true. Otherwise the output is false. On the instrument, a trigger logic pattern and state function.

Peak Detect acquisition mode

A mode in which the instrument saves the minimum and maximum samples over two adjacent acquisition intervals. For many glitch-free signals, this mode is indistinguishable from the sample mode. (Peak detect mode works with real-time, non-interpolation sampling only.)

Peak-to-Peak

Amplitude (voltage) measurement of the absolute difference between the maximum and minimum amplitude.

Period

A timing measurement of the time covered by one complete signal cycle. It is the reciprocal of frequency and is measured in seconds.

Persistence
The amount of time a data point remains displayed. There are three persistence modes available in the instrument Variable, Infinite, and Off.

Phase
A timing measurement between two waveforms of the amount one leads or lags the other in time. Phase is expressed in degrees, where 360° comprise one complete cycle of one of the waveforms. Waveforms measured should be of the same frequency or one waveform should be a harmonic of the other.

Pixel
A visible point on the display. The instrument display is 640 pixels wide by 480 pixels high.

Positive duty cycle
A timing measurement of the ratio of the positive pulse width to the signal period, expressed as a percentage.

Positive overshoot
Amplitude (voltage) measurement.

$$PositiveOvershoot = \frac{Max - High}{Amplitude} \times 100\%$$

Positive width
A timing measurement of the distance (time) between two amplitude points — rising-edge *MidRef* (default 50%) and falling-edge *MidRef* (default 50%) — on a positive pulse.

Posttrigger
The specified portion of the waveform record that contains data acquired after the trigger event.

Pretrigger
The specified portion of the waveform record that contains data acquired before the trigger event.

Probe
An input device.

Probe compensation
Adjustment that improves low-frequency response of a probe.

Proximal
The point closest to a reference point. As used in the instrument, the beginning measurement point for timing measurements.

Pulse trigger
A trigger mode in which triggering occurs if the instrument finds a pulse, of the specified polarity, with a width between, or optionally outside the user-specified lower and upper time limits.

Quantizing
The process of converting an analog input that has been sampled, such as a voltage, to a digital value.

Real-time sampling
A sampling mode where the instrument samples fast enough to completely fill a waveform record from a single trigger event. Use real-time sampling to capture single-shot or transient events.

Record length
The specified number of samples in a waveform.

Recovered Clock
A clock signal derived from and synchronous with a received data sequence.

Reference memory
Memory in an instrument used to store waveforms or settings. You can use that waveform data later for processing. The instrument saves the data even when the instrument is turned off or unplugged.

Reference Waveforms
Waveforms that are static, not live (see live waveforms). Reference waveforms are channel or math waveforms that you save to references. Once saved, they do not update.

Rise time
The time it takes for a leading edge of a pulse to rise from a *LowRef* value (typically 10%) to a *HighRef* value (typically 90%) of its amplitude.

RMS
Amplitude (voltage) measurement of the true Root Mean Square voltage.

Runt trigger
A mode in which the instrument triggers on a runt. A runt is a pulse that crosses one threshold but fails to cross a second threshold before recrossing the first. The crossings detected can be positive, negative, or either.

Sample acquisition mode
The instrument creates a record point by saving the first sample during each acquisition interval. That is the default mode of the acquisition.

Sample interval
The time interval between successive samples in a time base. For real-time digitizers, the sample interval is the reciprocal of the sample rate. For equivalent-time digitizers, the time interval between successive samples represents equivalent time, not real time.

Sampling
The process of capturing an analog input, such as a voltage, at a discrete point in time and holding it constant so that it can be quantized. Two general methods of sampling are: *real-time sampling* and *equivalent-time sampling.*

Screen text
Lines displayed on screen that you use to indicate measurement reference levels and points that an automatic measurement is using to derive the measurement value.

Setting
The state of the front panel and system at a given time.

Setup control window
A group of related controls for a major instrument function that the instrument displays across the bottom of the screen.

Setup/Hold trigger

A mode in which the instrument triggers when a data source changes state within the setup or hold time relative to a clock source. Positive setup times precede the clock edge; positive hold times follow the clock edge. The clock edge may be the rising or falling edge.

Selected waveform

The waveform on which all measurements are performed, and which is affected by vertical position and scale adjustments. The light over one of the channel selector buttons indicates the current selected waveform.

Slew Rate trigger

A mode in which the instrument triggers based on how fast a pulse edge traverses (slews) between an upper and lower threshold. The edge of the pulse may be positive, negative, or either. The instrument can trigger on slew rates faster or slower than a user-specified rate.

Slope

The direction at a point on a waveform. You can calculate the direction by computing the sign of the ratio of change in the vertical quantity (Y) to the change in the horizontal quantity. The two values are rising and falling.

Statistical Measurement

An automated measurement that is derived from color graded waveform data and is based on histograms computed at the crossing levels. A statistical measurement can be selected only in color graded display mode.

Tek Secure

This feature erases all waveform and setup memory locations (setup memories are replaced with the factory setup). Then it checks each location to verify erasure. This feature finds use where this *instrument* is used to gather security sensitive data, such as is done for research or development projects.

Time base
The set of parameters that let you define the time and horizontal axis attributes of a waveform record. The time base determines when and how long to acquire record points.

Timeout trigger
A trigger mode in which triggering occurs if the instrument does NOT find a pulse, of the specified polarity and level, within the specified time period.

Trace
The visible representation of an input signal or combination of signals. Identical to waveform.

Trace Expression
The definition of what the trace displays. It can include one or more channels combined arithmetically and modified by functions.

Trigger
An event that marks time zero in the waveform record. It results in acquisition and display of the waveform.

Trigger level
The vertical level the trigger signal must cross to generate a trigger (on edge trigger mode).

Vertical acquisition window
The vertical range of the segment of the input signal that the acquisition system acquires.

Vertical bar cursors
The two vertical bars you position to measure the time parameter of a waveform record. The instrument displays the value of the active (moveable) cursor with respect to the trigger and the time value between the bars.

Waveform
The shape or form (visible representation) of a signal.

Waveform database mode
An acquisition mode that processes and displays a larger sample of data. The waveform database is a three-dimensional accumulation of source waveform data over several acquisitions. In addition to amplitude and timing information, the database includes a count of the number of times a specific waveform point has been acquired.

Waveform interval
The time interval between record points as displayed.

XY format
A display format that compares the voltage level of two waveform records point by point. It is useful for studying phase relationships between two waveforms.

YT format
The conventional instrument display format. It shows the voltage of a waveform record (on the vertical axis) as it varies over time (on the horizontal axis).

Index

Index

Symbols

<, A Trigger control window, 3-66
>, A Trigger control window, 3-66

Numbers

1 recent setup file 1, B-2
100%, Zoom, B-5
50/50%, Zoom, B-5
80/20%, Zoom, B-5

A

A event (main) trigger setup, B-7
A Only, trigger, how to set up, 3-91
A Only, A Trigger control window, 3-91
A Then B, A->B Seq Trigger control window, 3-91, 3-92
A Trigger
  holdoff, 3-55
  level presets, 3-56, 3-57
  trigger when, 3-79
A Trigger control window, 3-65, 3-67, 3-71, 3-76, 3-78, 3-80, 3-81, 3-84, 3-91
  <, 3-66
  >, 3-66
  A Only, 3-91
  AND, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
  Ch1, Ch2 ..., 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71, 3-76, 3-78, 3-80, 3-82, 3-85
  clock source, 3-82
  data source, 3-82
  define inputs, 3-78, 3-80, 3-82, 3-83, 3-85
  define pattern type, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
  delay time, 3-91
  either, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71
  falling edge, 3-80, 3-82
  FALSE, 3-78, 3-81
  glitch, 3-65, 3-66, 3-84
  level, 3-66, 3-70, 3-77
  logic, 3-78, 3-80, 3-81
  lower level, 3-74
  NAND, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
  negative, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71
  NOR, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
  OR, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
  pattern, 3-78
  polarity and width, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69
  positive, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71
  pulse, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71, 3-76
  rising edge, 3-80, 3-82
  runt, 3-67, 3-84
  set thresholds, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
  set to ECL, 3-72
  set to TTL, 3-72
  setup/hold, 3-81, 3-84
  slew rate, 3-71
  source, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71, 3-74, 3-76
  state, 3-80
  thresholds, 3-68, 3-72
  timeout, 3-76, 3-84
  timer, 3-76
  transition, 3-71, 3-84
  trig delay, 3-91
  trigger if, 3-75
  trigger when, 3-78, 3-81
  TRUE, 3-78, 3-81
  upper level, 3-74
  width, 3-69, 3-84
  window, 3-74, 3-84
A Trigger level
  ECL, 3-56, 3-57
  TTL, 3-56, 3-57
  user, 3-56, 3-57
A->B Seq Trigger control window, 3-91, 3-92
  A Then B, 3-91, 3-92
A->b trigger sequence, B-8
About TekScope, B-16
Absolute reference, 3-122
AC coupling, Glossary-1
AC line voltage, trigger input, 3-45, 3-51
Access vertical set up help, 3-11
Accessory software, 1-10
Accuracy, Glossary-1
Acquisition, Glossary-1
  input channels and digitizers, 3-28
  interval, Glossary-1
  modes, 3-29
    Envelope, 3-36
  record, 3-30
  sampling (see sampling), 3-29
Acquisition controls
  acquisition control background, 3-28
  acquisition hardware, 3-28
  acquisition modes, 3-29
  aliasing illustrated, 3-23

average, 3-20, 3-24
condition, 3-22
envelope, 3-20, 3-24
equivalent-time sampling, 3-31
equivalent-time sampling, illustrated, 3-32
global controls, 3-22
Hi Res, 3-18, 3-24
interpolation, 3-32
IT (interpolated time), 3-32
linear interpolation, 3-33
methods to check and eliminate aliasing, 3-23
peak detect, 3-18, 3-24
preventing aliasing, 3-23
real time, 3-25
real-time sampling, 3-31
record length, 3-30
repetitive signal, 3-25
roll, 3-22
RUN/STOP, 3-24
Run/Stop button only, 3-21
sample, 3-18, 3-24
sample interval, 3-30
sampling and acquisition mode, 3-31
sampling process, 3-29
select the acquisition mode, 3-24
set the stop mode, 3-24
set waveform count (average and envelope only), 3-24
sin(x)/x interpolation, 3-32
SINGLE, 3-22, 3-24
single sequence, 3-22
single sequence off, 3-24
to disable roll mode, 3-28
to enable roll mode, 3-27
to select an acquisition mode, 3-24
to select real-time or equivalent-time sampling, 3-25
to set acquisition modes, 3-24
to set roll bode, 3-27
to single sequence roll mode, 3-27
to start acquiring, 3-26
to start and stop acquisition, 3-26
to stop acquiring, 3-26
to take a single acquisition, 3-26
to turn off roll mode acquisitions, 3-27
trigger point, 3-30
untriggered roll, 3-22
untriggered roll with single sequence, 3-22
using, 3-18
using FastFrame, 3-35
waveform database, 3-20, 3-24
waveform record, 3-30
Acquisition mode, B-6
spectral math, 3-182
Acquisition overview, 3-28
Acquisition preview, 3-99
Acquisition setup, B-5
Address, Tektronix, xvii
Advanced, 3-59
Aliasing, 3-23, 3-182, Glossary-1
eliminating, 3-23
illustrated, 3-23
recognizing, 3-182
All, B-12
Amplitude, A-1, B-11, Glossary-1
Analog-to-digital converter, Glossary-1
Analyzer control locks, 3-161
AND, Glossary-1
AND, A Trigger control window, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
Annotate, 3-125
waveforms on screen, 3-120
Annotated display, 3-120
Appearance, B-9
Applications, 1-12
derivative math waveforms, 3-150
integral math waveforms, 3-152
optional, 1-11
Area, A-1, B-12, Glossary-2
Attenuation, Glossary-2
Attenuation, input, B-4
Auto-increment file name, 3-200, 3-203, 3-208, 3-221
AutoBright, 3-112
Automated measurements, 3-119
of FFT math waveforms, 3-183
Automatic measurements, 3-119
high and low levels defined, A-6
levels used in taking, A-5, A-6, C-42, C-52
reference levels defined, A-6
reference levels defined (eye pattern/optical), A-7, C-43, C-53
Automatic trigger mode, 3-46, 3-52, Glossary-2
Autoset, 3-11, B-5, Glossary-2
how to execute, 3-9
undoing, 3-9
undo, B-5
Autoset Undo, 3-9
Autoset undo, B-3
AUX Out configuration, B-15
Auxiliary trigger, 3-45, 3-51
Average, 3-20, 3-24, 3-36
Average acquisition mode, Glossary-2
Averaging, Glossary-2
spectral math, 3-182

B

B event (delayed) trigger setup, B-8
B Trigger control window, 3-93
Backing up user files, 1-9
Bandwidth, B-4, Glossary-2
  Enhanced, 3-5
Bitmap, file format, 3-214
Blackman-Harris, 3-170, 3-172, 3-177, 3-189
Burst width, A-1, B-12
Button
  DELAY, 3-49
  E-mail on Trigger, 3-58
  FORCE TRIG, 3-57
  SET LEVEL TO 50%, 3-51
  SINGLE TRIG, 3-58
  ZOOM, 3-105, 3-106

C

Calibrate probes, 3-141
Calibrate the oscilloscope, 3-140
Calibration instructions, 3-140
Calibration status, 3-140
CD-ROMs, optional applications, 1-11
Center, 3-164
Ch1 - Ch2, B-14
Ch1 * Ch2, B-14
Ch1, Ch2 ..., A Trigger control window, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71, 3-76, 3-78, 3-80, 3-82, 3-85
Ch3 - Ch4, B-14
Ch3 * Ch4, B-14
Channel, 3-121, Glossary-3, Glossary-8, Glossary-13
  configuration, 3-29
  readout, 3-109
  reference indicator, Glossary-3
  trigger input, 3-45, 3-51
Channel-probe deskew, 3-141, Glossary-3
Channels
  deskew, 3-141
  digitizer configuration, 3-28
  shared horizontal window, 3-17
  shared parameters, illustrated, 3-17
Circuit loading, Glossary-3
Cleaning
  exterior, D-1
  flat panel display, D-2
Clear all references and setups, 3-211
Clipping
  derivative math waveforms, 3-151
  how to avoid, 3-151, 3-152
  integral math waveforms, 3-152
Clock source, A Trigger control window, 3-82
Color
  math, 3-111
  palette, 3-111, B-10
  reference, 3-111
Color palette, 3-111, 3-116, B-10
  changing, 3-116
  definition, 3-111, B-10
Colors, B-9
Comm, B-12
  setup, B-8
  trigger, B-7
  triggering, 3-95
Comm trigger, C-28
Communication, remote, 3-233
Communication trigger codes supported, C-38, C-49
Communication trigger standards supported, C-38, C-49
  AMI, C-39, C-49
  B3ZS, C-39, C-49
  B6ZS, C-39, C-49
  B8ZS, C-39, C-49
  CMI, C-39, C-50
  HDB3, C-40, C-50
  MLT3, C-40, C-50
  NRZ, C-40, C-50
Communications trigger, C-28
  accessing, C-4
  accessing the control window, C-32
  applying the serial pattern data, C-34
  binary format, C-33, C-34
  bit rate, C-29, C-33
  clock source, C-33
  code type, C-29
  control window access, C-28
  display format, C-33
  edit controls, C-34
  edit the serial trigger pattern, C-34
  format, C-33
  functions, C-4, C-5
  hexadecimal format, C-33, C-34
  key points, C-31
  level, C-33
  mask testing, C-21
  phase lock loop, C-31
  polarity, C-33
  pulse form, C-29
  recovered clock, C-29, C-31, C-33
  recovered clock key points, C-31
  selecting, C-28
  selecting a code, C-33
  selecting a data source, C-33

selecting a source, C–28
selecting a standard, C–29, C–33
selecting a trigger, C–32
selecting a type, C–29
serial data, C–33
serial data pattern, C–34
serial pattern data, C–33
threshold level, C–33
threshold levels, C–30
view the trigger pattern, C–33
Configuration
software installation, 1–10–1–12
system, 1–5
Connect input signal, 3–6
Connecting and conditioning your signals, 3–3
Connecting peripherals, 1–6
Connection, to a network, 1–13
connection, to a LAN, 1–13
Connectivity tools, 2–2
Contacting Tektronix, xvii
Contents and index, B–16
Control knob, Glossary–3
Control window, Glossary–3
A Trigger, 3–65, 3–67, 3–71, 3–76, 3–78, 3–80, 3–81, 3–84, 3–91
A->B Seq Trigger, 3–91, 3–92
B trigger, 3–93
Controlling data input and output, 3–199
Copy, B–3
a waveform, 3–224
setup, B–3
waveforms, 3–224
Copy MyScope control window, 3–239
Copying waveforms, 3–213
Coupling, 3–4, B–4
ground, Glossary–7
trigger, 3–47
Create custom control window, 3–235
Create MyScope control window, 3–235
Creating and using math waveforms, 3–145
Cross-hair, graticule, 3–116, B–9
Crossing %, A–4, B–12, C–41, C–51
Cursor, 3–129
controls, B–11
measurements, 3–119, 3–130, 3–192
mode, B–11
position, 3–134, B–11
sources, 3–134
style, 3–135
tracking, 3–135
type, 3–134, B–11
types, 3–131
units, 3–133
Cursor controls window, 3–134
Cursor measurements, 3–192
Cursor readout, V-bars, 3–192
Cursors, 3–130, Glossary–3
using, 3–131
with derivative waveforms, 3–151, 3–159
with FFT waveforms, 3–183, 3–192
Cursors menu
cursor controls, B–11
cursor mode, B–11
cursor position, B–11
cursor setup, B–11
cursor type, B–11
h-bars, B–11
independent, B–11
screen, B–11
track, B–11
v-bars, B–11
waveform, B–11
Custom control window, 3–235
Customer feedback, B–16
Customize measurements, 3–120
Customizing the display, 3–110
Cycle area, A–1, B–12, Glossary–3
Cycle Distortion, C–41, C–51
Cycle distortion, A–5, B–12
Cycle mean, A–1, B–11, Glossary–3
Cycle RMS, A–1, B–11, Glossary–3

D

Data, controlling input and output, 3–199
Data input/output, 3–199
all settings are retained, 3–200
avoiding setup/waveform mismatches, 3–200
begin your chart, 3–223
bitmap, file format, 3–214
copy your file, 3–227
copying waveforms, 3–213
delete a reference waveform file, 3–212
delete the file, 3–213
delete the reference, 3–211
display the reference control window, 3–206, 3–209, 3–211
display the setups control window, 3–202, 3–204
display your reference waveform, 3–211
export your file, 3–220
exporting and copying waveforms, 3–213
file formats, 3–214
find the file directory, 3–212
find the source directory, 3–204, 3–210
find your file, 3–212

finish the chart, 3-223
hardcopy formats, 3-229
image, 3-229
import the waveform data, 3-222
JPEG, file format, 3-214
label the waveform, 3-207
margins, 3-229
MathCad, file format, 3-214
MathLab, file format, 3-214
name a destination, 3-203
name the file, 3-221
name your setup, 3-202, 3-203
numeric, file format, 3-214
orientation, 3-229
page setup window, 3-230
palette, 3-229
paper, 3-229
PNG, file format, 3-214
print preview window, 3-231
print window, illustration, 3-228
printing waveforms, 3-228
recall a reference waveform from a file, 3-210
recall setup from a file, 3-204
recall the setup, 3-204
recall the waveform, 3-209
recall your setup, 3-205
recall your waveform, 3-211
remote communication, 3-233
retaining current settings, 3-200
save all waveforms to files, 3-208
save the file, 3-221
save the setup, 3-202
save the waveform to a file, 3-208
save the waveform to a reference, 3-207
save your setup, 3-203
save your waveform, 3-209
saving and recalling a setup, 3-199
saving and recalling waveforms, 3-205
select a destination, 3-208, 3-220
select directory and name file, 3-208
select for copy, 3-224
select for export, 3-215
select setup for copy, 3-224
select setup for export, 3-215
select the waveform to save, 3-206
select your setup, 3-205
select your waveform, 3-210
setup to copy images, 3-225
setup to copy measurements, 3-227
setup to copy waveforms, 3-225, 3-226
setup to export histograms, 3-219
setup to export images, 3-216
setup to export measurements, 3-219
setup to export waveforms, 3-217
specify a line-graph chart, 3-223
spreadsheet, file format, 3-214
text, file format, 3-214
to clear references, 3-211
to copy your waveform, 3-224
to date/time stamp hardcopies, 3-232
to display the date and time, 3-232
to export your waveform, 3-215
to get the current time, 3-232
to preview the page, 3-230
to print from front panel, 3-228
to print from menu bar, 3-228
to recall your setup, 3-204
to recall your waveform, 3-209
to save to a file, 3-202
to save your setup, 3-201
to save your waveform, 3-206
to set the date and time, 3-232
to set up the page, 3-229
to use an exported waveform, 3-222
using auto-increment filename, 3-200
view, 3-229
Data Source, A Trigger control window, 3-82
Date and time
display, 3-112, B-10
displaying, 3-232
on hardcopies, 3-232
setting, 3-112, 3-232
dB, 3-187, Glossary-4
dBm, Glossary-4
DC coupling, Glossary-4
DC offset, with math waveforms, 3-152
Decibel, Glossary-4
Default setup, how to execute, 3-10
Define inputs, A Trigger control window, 3-78, 3-80, 3-82, 3-83, 3-85
Define pattern type, A Trigger control window, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
Defining and displaying waveforms, 3-100
Degree, 3-188
DELAY, button, 3-49
Delay, B-12
measurement, Glossary-4
mode on, B-6
time, Glossary-4
Delay time, A Trigger control window, 3-91
Delayed runs after time, 3-49
Delayed trigger, 3-49
how to set up, 3-91
Delayed triggerable on events, 3-49
Delete all refs, B-1
Derivative math waveform, 3-150

applications, 3-150
derivation of, 3-150
procedure for measuring, 3-151, 3-159
record length of, 3-150
Description
key features, 1-1
product, 1-1, C-1
Deskew, 3-141, B-4, Glossary-3
channels, 3-141
vertical controls window, 3-141
Diagnostics, B-15
Differentiation
of a derivative, 3-150
waveform, 3-149
Digitizing, Glossary-4
process, defined, 3-29
Display
customizing, 3-110, 3-111
date and time, B-10
elements, 3-98
persistence, 3-111, B-9
settings, 3-111
setup, 3-114, B-9
style, 3-111, B-9
styles, 3-114
system, Glossary-5
Display control, 3-99
Display control window
dots, 3-113
infinite persistence, 3-113
variable persistence, 3-113
vectors, 3-113
Display menu
appearance, B-9
color palette, B-10
colors, B-9
cross-hair, B-9
display date and time, B-10
display persistence, B-9
display setup, B-9
display style, B-9
Display trigger T, B-10
dots, B-9
frame, B-9
full, B-9
graticule style, B-9
grid, B-9
infinite persistence, B-9
intensified samples, B-9
linear, B-9
monochrome gray, B-10
monochrome green, B-10
n, B-10
no persistence, B-9
objects, B-9
persistence controls, B-9
remote display, B-10
reset all, B-9
screen text, B-9
sin(x)/x, B-9
spectral grading, B-10
temperature grading, B-10
user palette, B-10
variable persistence, B-9
vectors, B-9
waveform display on, B-10
waveform interpolation, B-9
xy, 3-34
yt, 3-34
Display on/off, B-1, B-4, B-13, B-14
Display trigger T, B-10
Displaying waveforms, 3-97
access the display Setup dialog box, 3-114
acquisition preview, 3-99
adjust the horizontal reference, 3-104
change graticule style, 3-116
change waveforms colors, 3-116
checking the zoom scale and position, 3-109
color palette, 3-111
customizable display elements, 3-111
customize graticule & waveforms, 3-116
customizing the display, 3-110
date and time, 3-112
defining and displaying waveforms, 3-100
display and acquisition controls, 3-102
display control, 3-99
display elements, 3-98
display persistence, 3-111
display settings, 3-111
display style, 3-111
dots, 3-111, 3-114
explore the zoom controls, 3-104
graticule, 3-98, 3-116
graticule area, 3-98
graticule style, 3-111
graticules, 3-101
horizontal position, 3-101, 3-102
horizontal position and the horizontal reference, 3-102
horizontal record length, 3-101
horizontal reference, 3-99, 3-102
horizontal scale, 3-101
horizontal zoom, 3-109
horizontal-scale readout, 3-99
infinite persistence, 3-113, 3-114, 3-115
intensified samples, 3-111, 3-114

intensity, 3-112
interpolation, 3-112, 3-113
linear, 3-114
linear interpolation, 3-113
math colors, 3-111
mouse, 3-102
mouse and touch screen operation, 3-102
normal and persistence displays, 3-113
operations on the timebase, 3-101
operations on waveforms, 3-100
operations performed based on the waveform type, 3-101
persistence, 3-115
persistence displays, 3-113
quick adjust the timebase (zoom), 3-104
record length, 3-101
reference colors, 3-111
reset zoom, 3-109, 3-110
scale, 3-101
screen text, 3-111
select a persistence mode, 3-115
select the display persistence, 3-114
select the display style, 3-114
select zoom, 3-106
set date and time, 3-112
set display styles, 3-114
set horizontal display parameters, 3-103
set up MultiView zoom, 3-108
set up zoom, 3-108
set vertical display parameters, 3-103
setting MultiView zoom controls, 3-105
setting zoom controls, 3-105
sin(x)/x interpolation, 3-113
sine(x)/x, 3-114
to display waveforms in the main graticule, 3-103
to zoom waveforms, 3-105
touch screen, 3-99, 3-102
trigger level marker, 3-112
trigger T, 3-112
using display controls, 3-110
using the display, 3-99
using the waveform display, 3-98
using zoom with waveforms, 3-105
variable persistence, 3-113, 3-114, 3-115
vectors, 3-111, 3-114
vertical offset, 3-101
vertical position, 3-101
vertical scale, 3-101
vertical zoom, 3-109
waveform display, 3-99
waveform intensity, 3-112
waveform interpolation, 3-112
waveforms, 3-116
zoom, 3-99, 3-101, 3-104
zoom a waveform, 3-107
zoom position, 3-109
zoom reset, 3-109, 3-110
zoom scale, 3-109
Dots, 3-111, 3-113, 3-114, B-9
display control window, 3-113
Dragging, Glossary-5
Dual display setup, 1-14
Dual graticule, Glossary-5
Duration, 3-161
Duty cycle, Glossary-10, Glossary-12
distortion, A-5
Duty Cycle Distortion, C-41, C-51

E

ECL, 3-66, 3-72, 3-77, 3-82
A Trigger level, 3-56, 3-57
Edge
setup, B-8
trigger, 3-45, B-7, Glossary-5
Edit menu
copy, B-3
copy setup, B-3
full screen, B-3
graticule, B-3
measurement, B-3
select for copy, B-3
waveform, B-3
Edit MyScope control window, 3-239
Either, A Trigger control window, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71
E-mail on Trigger buttons, 3-58
Enhanced Bandwidth, 3-5
Envelope, 3-20, 3-24, 3-36
acquisition mode, 3-36
Enhanced Bandwidth, Glossary-5
Envelope acquisition mode, Glossary-5
Environment requirements, 1-6
Equation editor, B-14
Equivalent time, B-6
Equivalent-time sampling, 3-31, 3-36
random, Glossary-5
Erase all references and setups, 3-211
Error log, B-15
Ethernet, 3-233
Excel, 3-222
Exiting the application, 1-12
Export, B-2
save format, 3-214
setup, B-2

waveforms, 3-215
Exporting files using PRINT button, 3-220
Exporting waveforms, 3-213
Ext ratio, B-12
Ext ratio (dB), B-12
Ext ratio %, B-12
External reference, B-15
External signals, B-15
Extinction Ratio, C-41, C-51
Extinction ratio, A-4
Extinction Ratio %, C-41, C-51
Extinction ratio %, A-4
Extinction Ratio DB, C-41, C-51
Extinction ratio dB, A-4
Eye
base, A-4
diagram, A-6
height, A-4
top, A-4
width, A-4
Eye Base, C-41, C-51
Eye base, B-12
Eye Height, C-41, C-51
Eye height, B-12
Eye Top, C-41, C-51
Eye top, B-12
Eye Width, C-41, C-51
Eye width, B-12

F

Fall time, A-1, B-12, Glossary-6
Falling edge, A Trigger control window, 3-80, 3-82
FALSE, A Trigger control window, 3-78, 3-81
Fast acquisition
to select the format, 3-34
to set display format, 3-33
to set the display readout options, 3-117
Fast Fourier transforms, description, 3-160
FastFrame, 3-35, 3-121, 3-147
controls, B-6
FastFrame time stamp, illustrated, 3-41
interactions, 3-36
RUN/STOP, 3-36
select the FastFrame and time stamps selection controls, 3-40
select the frame to view, 3-38
select the reference frame, 3-40
set frame count, 3-37
set frame length, 3-37
setup, B-6
time stamping frames, 3-39
to lock the reference position frames, 3-41
to set FastFrame mode, 3-37
turn readouts on or off, time stamps, 3-39
using FastFrame acquisitions, 3-36
view multiple frames, 3-38
FastFrame mode, using, 3-37
FastFrame setup, horizontal menu, 3-37, 3-41
FFT math waveform
automated measurements of, 3-183
phase suppression, 3-188
procedure for displaying, 3-185
procedure for measuring, 3-183, 3-192
File formats, 3-214
File menu
1 recent setup file !, B-2
delete all refs, B-1
display on/off, B-1
export, B-2
export setup, B-2
full screen, B-2
graticule, B-2
instrument setup, B-1
label, B-1
measurements, B-2
minimize, B-2
page setup, B-2
position/scale, B-1
print, B-2
print preview, B-2
recall default setup, B-1
recall waveform, B-1
reference setup, B-1
reference waveforms, B-1
run application, B-2
save waveform, B-1
select for export, B-2
shutdown, B-2
waveform, B-2
Flat panel display, cleaning, D-2
Flattop2 window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-179
Flexible control access, 3-5
FORCE TRIG button, 3-57
Frame
graticule, 3-116, B-9
horizontal menu, 3-38, 3-40
Frame count, horizontal menu, 3-37
Frame length, horizontal menu, 3-37
Frame, horizontal menu, 3-40
Frequency, A-1, B-12, Glossary-6
Frequency domain controls, 3-160
Front panel, triggering, 3-49
Full, graticule, 3-116, B-9

Full screen, B-2, B-3

G

Gate controls, 3-162
Gated measurements, Glossary-6
Gating, 3-129, B-12
  controls, 3-160
Gaussian window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-174
Glitch
  A Trigger control window, 3-65, 3-66
  either trigger, Glossary-6
  negative trigger, Glossary-6
  setup, B-8
Glitch trigger, 3-60, B-7, Glossary-6
  how to set up, 3-65
  how to setup, 3-84
GPIB, 3-233, Glossary-6
  configuration, B-15
  remote communication, 3-233
Graticule, 3-98, B-2, B-3, Glossary-6
  100% zoom, B-7
  50/50% zoom, B-7
  80/20% zoom, B-7
  area, 3-98
  measurements, 3-119
  size button, 3-101
  split, 3-108
  style, 3-111, 3-116, B-9
  zoom, B-7
Graticules, 3-101
Grid graticule, 3-116, B-9
Ground coupling, Glossary-7
GroupDelay, 3-188

H

Hamming window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-176, 3-189
Hanning window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-177, 3-189
Hardcopy, Glossary-7
Hardcopy formats, 3-229
H-bars, B-11
Help
  how to get, 3-10
  on window, B-16
Help menu, B-16
  about TekScope, B-16
  contents and index, B-16
  customer feedback, B-16
  help on window, B-16
  restore help, B-16
  technical support, B-16
Hi Res, 3-18
  acquisition mode, Glossary-7
High, A-1, Glossary-7
High level, B-11
High/low method, 3-121
Histogram, 3-127
  limit controls, 3-139
  mean, 3-127
  measurements, B-12
  setup window, 3-137
Histogram counting
  resetting, 3-137
  starting, 3-137
Histograms, 3-36, 3-136, 3-144
Hits in box, A-3, B-12
Holdoff, B-8
  A Trigger, 3-55
  trigger, 3-46
Holdoff, trigger, Glossary-7
Horiz, B-12
Horiz/acq, run/stop, B-6
Horiz/acq menu
  acquisition mode, B-6
  autoset, B-5
  delay mode on, B-6
  equivalent time, B-6
  FastFrame controls, B-6
  FastFrame setup, B-6
  horizontal/acquisition setup, B-5
  interpolated real time, B-6
  position/scale, B-6
  real time only, B-6
  resolution, B-6
  roll mode auto, B-6
  sampling modes, B-6
  zoom controls, B-5
  zoom setup, B-6
Horizontal
  acquisition window, Glossary-7
  acquisition window considerations, 3-14
  acquisition window, illustrated, 3-15
  bar cursors, Glossary-7
  cursors, 3-130
  delay, 3-90
  position, 3-48, 3-101, 3-102
  record length, 3-101
  reference, 3-99, 3-102
  scale, 3-15, 3-101
  zoom, 3-109
Horizontal menu
  FastFrame setup, 3-37, 3-41
  frame count, 3-37
  frame length%, 3-37

frame%, 3-38, 3-40
multiple frames, 3-38
Horizontal offset, overview, 3-14
Horizontal reference point, Glossary-7
Horizontal scale and offset, setting up, overview, 3-14
Horizontal scale vs. record length vs. sample interval vs. resolution, 3-15
Horizontal/acquisition setup, B-5
Horizontal-scale readout, 3-99

I

Image, printing, 3-229
Impulse response testing, 3-169
Incoming inspection procedure, 1-19–1-28
Independent, B-11
Independent vs. shared Window, 3-17
Infinite persistence, 3-114, 3-115, B-9
display control window, 3-113
Initialize, Glossary-8
Input, 3-199
Input conditioning background, 3-11
Input coupling, 3-6
AC, 3-6
DC, 3-6
GND, 3-6
Installation, 1-5–1-18, C-3
incoming inspection procedure, 1-19
option, B-16
software installation, 1-10–1-12
Instrument
diagnostics, B-15
id, B-16
setup, B-1
Integral math waveform, 3-152
applications, 3-152
derivation of, 3-152
record length of, 3-152
Integration, waveform, 3-151
Inten samp, 3-114
Intensified samples, 3-114, B-9
Intensity, Glossary-8
Waveform, 3-112
Internal reference, B-15
Interpolated real time, B-6
Interpolation, 3-32, 3-112, 3-113, B-9, Glossary-8
Introduction, to this manual, xv

J

Jitter
6 sigma, A-4, B-12
pk-pk, B-12
pk-pk measurement, A-4
RMS, A-4
rms, B-12
Jitter 6 sigma, C-41, C-51
Jitter Pk-Pk measurement, C-41, C-51
Jitter RMS, C-41, C-51
JPEG, file format, 3-214

K

Kaiser-Bessel window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-177
Key features, C-2
Knob, Glossary-8
multipurpose, 3-133, Glossary-10
resolution, Glossary-8
trigger MAIN LEVEL, 3-48

L

Label, B-1, B-4, B-14
Label the waveform, 3-207
LAN, enabling, 1-13
LAN connection, 1-13
Level
A Trigger control window, 3-66, 3-70, 3-77
trigger, 3-48
Level presets, 3-56
A Trigger, 3-57
Line, trigger input, 3-45, 3-51
Linear, 3-114, B-9
Linear interpolation, 3-33, 3-113, Glossary-8
Logic pattern setup, B-8
Logic pattern, trigger, B-7
Logic qualified trigger, 3-84
Logic state setup, B-8
Logic state, trigger, B-7
Logic trigger, 3-62
definitions, 3-62
pattern, Glossary-9
state, 3-61, 3-62, Glossary-9
Logic triggering, 3-59
Logic, A Trigger control window, 3-80, 3-81
logic, 3-78
pulse, 3-65
Logic, main trigger menu, pulse, 3-71, 3-76
Low, A-2, Glossary-9
Low frequency compensation, 3-142
Low level, B-11
Low method, 3-121

M

Magnitude spectrum, B-14
Magnitude verses frequency, 3-160
Main trigger menu
  polarity, 3-67, 3-69
  pulse, 3-71, 3-76
  Set to 50%, 3-51
  slope, 3-71
  state, 3-80, 3-81
  true for less than, 3-79
  true for more than, 3-79
  width, 3-65, 3-67
Manuals, related, xvi
Margins, printing, 3-229
mask standards supported, C-34, C-45
Mask testing, 3-144, C-1, C-8
  access the setup window, C-15, C-19, C-20
  accessing, C-4
  accessing the edit window, C-17
  adding a mask vertex, C-18, C-22
  aligning the mask and signal, C-24
  aligning waveform and mask, C-10
  autofit, C-10, C-11
  autofit and persistence interaction, C-26
  autoset, C-9, C-10
  autoset parameters, C-10
  AUX OUT, C-12
  bandwidth, C-27
  beep, C-12
  bit rate, C-27
  both polarities, C-13
  changing the tolerance, C-24
  completion, C-12
  control window functions, C-4
  copy a current mask, C-16
  create new mask segment, C-22
  creating a new mask, C-21
  creating a user mask, C-15
  creating an empty mask, C-21
  deleting a mask vertex, C-18
  display configuration, C-10
  display parameters, C-10
  easier to pass, C-11
  edit new mask segment, C-22
  edit user mask, C-22
  editing a user mask, C-17
  enable mask edit controls, C-17
  example, C-23
  failure, C-12
  functions, C-4
  harder to pass, C-11
  hookup, C-23
  image rescaling, C-10
  instrument settings, C-23
  interactions, C-26
  key points, C-26
  log date, C-12
  margin tolerance, C-11, C-26
  margins, C-11, C-26
  mask hits, C-26
  mask type, C-9
  masks directory, C-20
  moving a mask vertex, C-18
  negative polarity, C-13
  number of waveforms to test, C-12
  pass and fail parameters, C-12
  polarity, C-13
  positive polarity, C-13
  print, C-12
  recall mask dialog, C-20
  recalling a user mask from disk, C-20
  repeat, C-13
  reset, C-14
  results, C-14
  results viewing, C-25
  running, C-14
  samples to test, C-12
  save mask as dialog, C-19
  save waveform, C-12
  saving a user mask, C-16
  saving a user mask to disk, C-19
  segments, C-22
  segments and mask hits, C-26
  selecting a mask segment, C-17
  selecting a mask standard, C-15
  selecting a mask vertex, C-17
  selecting the mask type, C-15
  selecting the source, C-24
  setting instrument settings, C-21
  setup, C-9, C-25
  setup window, C-9
  signal source, C-9
  SRQ, C-12
  standard, C-9, C-10, C-15
  standards and bandwidth, C-27
  start testing, C-14
  stop test, C-14
  summary, C-14
  system bandwidth, C-27
  tolerance, C-11, C-24, C-26
  triggers, C-25
  vertex adding, C-22
  vertices, C-26
  waveform autofit, C-11
  waveform resizing, C-10

Mask types
1394b, C-37, C-47
ANSI T1.102, C-35, C-45
Ethernet, C-35, C-45
Fibre Channel, C-36, C-46
Fibre Channel Electrical, C-36, C-46
InfiniBand, C-37, C-47
IOF, C-38, C-48
ITU-T, C-35, C-45
PCI-Express, C-38, C-48
Rapid IO LP-LVDS, C-37, C-47
Rapid IO Serial, C-37, C-47
SAS, C-38, C-48
Serial ATA, C-37, C-47
SONET/SDH, C-35, C-46
USB 1.2/2.0, C-37, C-47
Mask types supported, C-34, C-45
Math, overview, 3-145
Math color, 3-111
Math menu
Ch1 - Ch2, B-14
Ch1 * Ch2, B-14
Ch3 - Ch4, B-14
Ch3 * Ch4, B-14
display on/off, B-13, B-14
equation editor, B-14
label, B-14
magnitude spectrum, B-14
math setup, B-13, B-14
phase spectrum, B-14
position/scale, B-13, B-14
set math averages, B-14
spectral controls, B-14
spectral setup, B-14
Math setup, B-13, B-14
Math waveforms, 3-121
apply averaging, 3-155
consider the source, 3-156
creating and using math waveforms, 3-145
cursor measurements, 3-151
defining math waveforms, 3-146
defining spectral math waveforms, 3-160
See also Spectral Math
derivative. *See* Derivative math waveform
derivative math waveform, illustration, 3-150
differentiation, 3-149
display the math control window, 3-153
expression syntax, 3-149
FastFrame, 3-147
functional transformation of an acquired waveform, illustration, 3-146
how to create, 3-147
how to manage displaying, 3-156
integral. *See* Integral math waveform
offset, position, and scale, 3-151
operations on math waveforms, 3-156
peak-peak amplitude measurement of a derivative waveform, illustration, 3-151
select a function, 3-154
select a math waveform, 3-153
select and display, 3-157
set scale and position, 3-158
source dependencies, 3-148
sources, 3-148
spectral analysis of an impulse, illustration, 3-145
spectral math waveforms, 3-160
take automatic measurements, 3-158
take cursor measurements, 3-159
to define a math waveform, 3-153
to define an expression, 3-153
to define/edit a math expression, 3-154
to use, 3-157
to use math waveforms, 3-157
using math, 3-147
using math waveforms, 3-156
waveform differentiation, 3-149
waveform integration, 3-151
MathCad, file format, 3-214
MathLab, file format, 3-214
Max, 3-125
Maximum, A-2, B-11, B-12, Glossary-9
Mean, 3-125, A-2, A-3, B-11, B-12, Glossary-9
Mean +- 1 stddev, A-3
Mean +- 2 stddev, A-3
Mean +- 3 stddev, A-3
Measure menu
all, B-12
amplitude, B-11
area, B-12
burst width, B-12
Comm, B-12
crossing %, B-12
cycle area, B-12
cycle distortion, B-12
cycle mean, B-11
cycle RMS, B-11
delay, B-12
ext ratio, B-12
ext ratio (dB), B-12
ext ratio %, B-12
eye height, B-12
eye top, B-12
eye width, B-12
fall time, B-12
frequency, B-12
gating, B-12

high level, B-11
histogram measurements, B-12
hits in box, B-12
Horiz, B-12
jitter 6 sigma, B-12
jitter pk-pk, B-12
jitter rms, B-12
low level, B-11
maximum, B-11, B-12
mean, B-11, B-12
mean +-1 stddev, B-12
mean +-2 stddev, B-12
mean +-3 stddev, B-12
measurement setup, B-11
median, B-12
minimum, B-11, B-12
more, B-12
neg duty cycle, B-12
neg overshoot, B-11
negative width, B-12
noise pk-pk, B-12
noise RMS, B-12
off, B-12
peak hits, B-12
peak-to-peak, B-11, B-12
period, B-12
phase, B-12
pos duty cycle, B-12
pos overshoot, B-11
positive width, B-12
reference levels, B-12
reset histograms, B-12
reset statistics, B-12
rise time, B-12
RMS, B-11
s/n ratio, B-12
snapshot, B-11
standard deviation, B-12
statistics, B-12
statistics controls, B-12
time, B-12
value count, B-12
value mean, B-12
Vert, B-12
waveform histograms, B-12
Measurement, B-3, Glossary-9
accessing, C-6
amplitude, A-1, Glossary-1
annotation, 3-125
area, A-1, Glossary-2
burst width, A-1, Glossary-2
comm, C-6
Crossing %, C-41, C-51
crossing %, A-4
cycle area, A-1, Glossary-3
cycle mean, A-1, Glossary-3
cycle RMS, A-1, Glossary-3
definitions, C-41, C-51
delay, Glossary-4
duty cycle, Glossary-10, Glossary-12
Duty Cycle Distortion, C-41, C-51
duty cycle distortion, A-5
Extinction Ratio, C-41, C-51
extinction ratio, A-4
Extinction Ratio %, C-41, C-51
extinction ratio %, A-4
Extinction Ratio DB, C-41, C-51
extinction ratio dB, A-4
Eye Base, C-41, C-51
eye base, A-4
Eye Height, C-41, C-51
eye height, A-4
Eye Top, C-41, C-51
eye top, A-4
Eye Width, C-41, C-51
eye width, A-4
fall time, A-1
frequency, A-1, Glossary-6
functions, C-6
gated, Glossary-6
high, A-1, Glossary-7
hits in box, A-3
Jitter 6 sigma, C-41, C-51
jitter 6 sigma, A-4
Jitter Pk-Pk, C-41, C-51
jitter pk-pk, A-4
Jitter RMS, C-41, C-51
jitter RMS, A-4
low, A-2, Glossary-9
mask, C-6
maximum, A-2, Glossary-9
mean, A-2, A-3, Glossary-9
mean +- 1 stddev, A-3
mean +- 2 stddev, A-3
mean +- 3 stddev, A-3
median, A-3
minimum, A-2, Glossary-10
negative duty cycle, A-2
negative overshoot, A-2
negative width, A-2
Noise Pk-Pk, C-41, C-51
noise pk-pk, A-4
Noise RMS, C-41, C-51
noise RMS, A-4
overshoot, Glossary-12
parameter, Glossary-9

peak hits, A-3
peak-to-peak, A-2, Glossary-11
period, A-2, Glossary-11
phase, A-2, Glossary-12
pk-pk, A-3
positive duty cycle, A-2
positive overshoot, A-3
positive width, A-3
propagation delay, A-1
Quality Factor, C-42, C-52
quality factor, A-5
rise time, A-3, Glossary-14
RMS, A-3, Glossary-14
S/N Ratio, C-41, C-51
S/N ratio, A-5
setup, B-11
statistics, 3-125, Glossary-9
stddev, A-3
tracking, Glossary-10
undershoot, Glossary-10
waveform count, A-3
width, Glossary-11, Glossary-12
Measurement accuracy, ensuring maximum, 3-139–3-144
Measurements, B-2, C-41, C-51
automated, 3-119
Classes of, 3-119
cursor, 3-130
eye diagram, A-6
eye measurement levels, C-42, C-52
high and low levels defined, A-6
levels used in taking, A-5, A-6, C-42, C-52
reference levels defined, A-6
reference levels defined (eye pattern/optical), A-7, C-43, C-53
supported, C-41, C-51
Measuring waveforms, 3-119
absolute reference, 3-122
access gating, 3-129
annotate measurement, 3-125
annotate waveforms on screen, 3-120
annotated display, 3-120
automatic measurements, 3-119
calibrate the oscilloscope, 3-140
change cursor position, 3-134
channel, 3-121
check the calibration status, 3-140
components determining time cursor readout values, 3-132
connect the probe calibration fixture, 3-141
cursor, 3-129
cursor measurements, 3-119
cursor types, 3-130, 3-131
cursor units depend on sources, 3-133
cursors are display limited, 3-131
cursors ignore the selected waveform, 3-131
cursors treat sources independently, 3-132
customize measurements, 3-120
display measurement statistics, 3-125
display the calibration instructions, 3-140
display the cursor controls window, 3-134
enable & position the gates, 3-129
FastFrame, 3-121
gates, 3-121
gating, 3-129
graticule, cursor and automatic measurements, 3-119
high/low method, 3-121
histogram, 3-121, 3-127
histogram counting, 3-137
histogram counting stays on, 3-137
histogram mean, 3-122, 3-127
histogram measurements, 3-139
histogram size, 3-137
horizontal cursors, 3-130
horizontal histogram view and measurement data, illustrated, 3-136
indep, cursor, 3-135
low frequency compensation, 3-142
math waveforms, 3-121
max, 3-125
mean, 3-125
measure part of a waveform, 3-121
measurement gating, 3-129
measurement selection, 3-121
measurement sources, 3-121
min, 3-125
min-max, 3-122, 3-127
multipurpose knobs, 3-133
noise, 3-122
number of measurements, 3-121
open histogram setup window, 3-137
optimizing measurement accuracy, 3-139
paired cursors, 3-130
reference levels method, 3-122
reference-level calculation methods, 3-123
references, 3-121
relative reference, 3-122
remove measurements, 3-124
see statistics on measurement results, 3-120
select a cursor type, 3-134
select measurement parameters, 3-120
select measurement sources, 3-121
select the cursor sources, 3-134
select the waveform, 3-124
set cursor style, 3-135
set cursor tracking, 3-135

set display and reset histogram source and type, 3-138
set histogram display options, 3-138
set histogram limit controls, 3-139
set measurement reference levels, 3-126, 3-127
signal type, 3-122
sources, 3-121
split cursors, 3-130
standard deviation, 3-125
statistics, 3-120
take a snapshot of measurements, 3-128
take measurements on a frame, 3-121
taking automatic measurements, 3-119
taking cursor measurements, 3-130
taking histograms, 3-136, 3-144
to calibrate probes, 3-141
to compensate passive probes, 3-142
to compensate the oscilloscope, 3-139
to deskew channels, 3-141
to set the cursor sources, 3-134
to start and reset histogram counting, 3-137
to take automatic measurements, 3-123
tracking, cursor, 3-135
using automatic measurements, 3-121
using cursors, 3-131
using histograms, 3-137
vertical cursors, 3-130
vertical cursors measure from the trigger point, 3-132
zoom, 3-129
Median, A-3, B-12
Mesial, Glossary-10
Min, 3-125
take automatic measurements, 3-124
Minimize, B-2
Minimum, A-2, B-11, B-12, Glossary-10
Min-max, 3-127
Mode, Glossary-10
acquisition, 3-29, B-6
trigger, B-8
Monochrome gray, B-10
Monochrome green, B-10
More, B-12
Mouse, 3-102
Multipurpose knob, Glossary-10
Multipurpose knobs, 3-133, B-16
MultiView zoom, 3-105–3-118
See also Zoom
feature, 3-105
MyScope, using, 3-238
MyScope control window, 3-235

N

NAND, Glossary-10
NAND, A Trigger control window, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
Neg duty cycle, B-12
Neg overshoot, B-11
Negative duty cycle, A-2
Negative overshoot, A-2
Negative width, A-2, B-12
Negative, A Trigger control window, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71
Network connection, 1-13
No persistence, B-9
Noise
pk-pk, B-12
pk-pk measurement, A-4
reducing in phase FFTs, 3-188
reducing in phase waveforms, 3-168
RMS, A-4, B-12
Noise Pk-Pk measurement, C-41, C-51
Noise RMS, C-41, C-51
NOR, Glossary-11
NOR, A Trigger control window, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
Normal trigger mode, 3-46, 3-52, Glossary-11
Normal, display, B-10
Numeric, file format, 3-214
Nyquist frequency, 3-182

O

Objects, display, B-9
Off, B-12
Offset, B-4
DC. *See* DC Offset
vertical, 3-12, 3-151, 3-152
Option installation, 1-12, B-16
Option key, 1-12
Option software, 1-12
Options key, B-16
Options list, B-16
OR, Glossary-11
OR, A Trigger control window, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
Orientation, printing, 3-229
Output, 3-199
Overshoot, Glossary-12

P

Page preview, 3-230
Page setup, B-2

Palette, printing, 3-229
Paper, printing, 3-229
Pattern trigger, 3-61, 3-77
  how to setup, 3-78
pcAnywhere, B-10
Peak detect, 3-18, 3-24
Peak detect acquisition mode, Glossary-11
Peak hits, A-3, B-12
Peak-to-peak, A-2, B-11, B-12, Glossary-11
Performance verification, 1-11
  of functions, 1-20
  self tests, 1-19
Period, A-2, B-12, Glossary-11
Peripheral, connecting, 1-6
Persistence, 3-113
Persistence controls, B-9
Phase, A-2, B-12, Glossary-12
Phase spectrum, B-14
Phase suppression, 3-168
Phase verses frequency, 3-160
Phone number, Tektronix, xvii
Pixel, Glossary-12
Pk-pk, A-3
Plug&play software, 1-10–1-18
PNG, file format, 3-214
Polarity and width, A Trigger control window, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69
Polarity, main trigger menu, 3-67, 3-69
Pos duty cycle, B-12
Pos overshoot, B-11
Position, vertical, 3-151, 3-152, B-4
Position/scale, B-1, B-4, B-6, B-13, B-14
Positive duty cycle, A-2
Positive overshoot, A-3
Positive width, A-3, B-12
Positive, A Trigger control window, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71
Posttrigger, 3-44, Glossary-12
Powering off, 1-9
Powering on, 1-8
Preferences, B-16
Pretrigger, 3-44, Glossary-12
Print, B-2
Print preview, 3-231, B-2
Printing, 3-228
  waveforms, 3-228
Probe
  cal, B-4
  calibrate, 3-141
  calibration fixture, 3-141
  compensation, Glossary-13
  definition, Glossary-13
  low frequency compensation, 3-142
Probe-channel deskew, 3-141, Glossary-3
Probes and signal connection, 3-3
Product
  description, 1-1
  software, 1-2
Product description, C-1
Product support, contact information, xvii
Programmer help, 1-10
Propagation delay, A-1
Proximal, Glossary-13
Pulse trigger, Glossary-13
Pulse triggering, 3-59
  A Trigger control window, 3-67
Pulse, A Trigger control window, 3-65, 3-69, 3-71, 3-76

Q

Q Factor, C-42, C-52
Q factor, A-5
Quality Factor, C-42, C-52
Quality factor, A-5, B-12
Quantizing, Glossary-13
Quitting the application, 1-12

R

Window trigger, B-7
Radian, 3-188
Range, vertical input, 3-12
Readout
  channel, 3-109
  cursor, V-bars, 3-192
  trigger, 3-53
Real time only, B-6
Real time, acquisition controls, 3-25
Real-time sampling, 3-31, Glossary-13
Recall default setup, B-1
Recall waveform, B-1
Recalling a setup, 3-199
Recalling a waveform, 3-205
Recent setup file, B-2
Record, acquisition, shared by all channels, 3-17
Record length, 3-15, 3-101, 3-161, Glossary-13
  defined, 3-30
  derivative math waveforms, 3-150
  integral math waveforms, 3-152
Recovered, clock, 3-95, Glossary-13
Recovered clock, C-29, C-31, C-33
  key points, C-31
Rectangular window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-175, 3-189
Reference

clock, B-15
color, 3-111
levels, 3-126, 3-127
levels method, 3-122
memory, Glossary-13
setup, B-1
waveforms, B-1, Glossary-13
Reference selection, B-15
Reference-level calculation methods, 3-123
References, 3-121
clear, 3-211
clearing, 3-211
delete, 3-211
Related manuals, xvi
Relative reference, 3-122
Release notes, for plug & play software, 1-10
Remote communication, 3-233
Remote control, B-10
Remote display, B-10
Remove measurements, 3-124
Repetitive signal, 3-25
Reset all, B-9
Reset histogram counting, 3-137
Reset histograms, B-12
Reset statistics, B-12
Reset zoom factors, zoom menu, 3-109
Resolution, 3-15, 3-161, B-6
Resolution bandwidth, 3-164, 3-190
Restore help, B-16
Right-click map, 2-11
Rise time, A-3, B-12, Glossary-14
Rising edge, A Trigger control window, 3-80, 3-82
RMS, A-3, B-11, Glossary-14
Roll mode
auto, B-6
illustrated, 3-22
untriggered, 3-22
untriggered, with single sequence, 3-22
using, 3-27
Run application, B-2
RUN/STOP, 3-24, 3-36
Run/stop, B-6, B-8
Run/Stop button only, 3-21
Runt setup, B-8
Runt trigger, 3-60, B-7, Glossary-14
A Trigger control window, 3-67
how to set up, 3-67–3-96
how to setup, 3-84

S

S/N Ratio, C-41, C-51
S/N ratio, A-5, B-12
Sample, 3-18, 3-24
Sample acquisition mode, Glossary-14
Sample interval, 3-15, Glossary-14
defined, 3-30
Samples, number of, 3-21
Sampling, 3-31, Glossary-14
modes, B-6
process, defined, 3-29
process, illustrated, 3-29–3-34
Sampling and acquisition mode, 3-31
Save format, export, 3-214
Save waveform, B-1
Saving a setup, 3-199
Saving a waveform, 3-205
Scale, 3-101
horizontal, B-6
vertical, 3-151, B-1, B-4
Scaling and positioning, 3-4
Screen, B-11
Screen text, 3-111, B-9, Glossary-14
Second monitor setup, 1-14
Select for copy, B-3
Select for export, B-2
Select input coupling, 3-6
Select slope, 3-71
Select the input signal channel, 3-6
Select waveform interpolation, 3-114
Selected waveform, Glossary-15
Selecting zoom, 3-106
Sequential triggering, 3-85
Serial Mask Testing and Serial Triggering, C-1
Serial number, B-16
Serial pattern setup, B-8
Serial pattern trigger, C-32
setup, C-32
Serial pattern triggering, 3-95
Serial pattern, trigger, B-7
Serial trigger, C-3, C-32
accessing, C-7
bit rate, C-7
clk level, C-7
clk polarity, C-7
clk src, C-7
coding, C-7
control window, C-7
data level, C-7
data src, C-7
editor, C-7
format, C-7
functions, C-7
key features, C-3

standard, C-7
Service support, contact information, xvii
Set FFT vert scale, 3-187
Set horizontal acquisition window, 3-7
SET LEVEL TO 50% button, 3-51
Set math averages, B-14
Set thresholds, A Trigger control window, 3-78, 3-80, 3-85
Set time & date, B-15
Set to 50%, main trigger menu, 3-51
Set to ECL, A Trigger control window, 3-72
Set to TTL, A Trigger control window, 3-72
Set vertical acquisition window, 3-7
Set/hold trigger, 3-63
Setting, Glossary-14
Setting acquisition controls, 3-17
Setting vertical range and position, 3-13
Setup
control window, Glossary-14
dual display, 1-14
file, B-2
recalling, 3-199
saving, 3-199
second monitor, 1-14
Setup and hold trigger, how to setup, 3-84
Setup/hold setup, B-8
Setup/hold trigger, 3-62, B-7
how to set up, 3-81
maximum hold time, 3-63
negative setup or hold times, 3-63
positive setup or hold times, 3-63
trigger point location, 3-63
Shutdown, B-2
Shutting down, 1-9
Signal connection and conditioning, 3-2
Signal path compensation, 3-139–3-144
Sin(x)/x, 3-114, B-9
Sin(x)/x interpolation, 3-32, 3-113, Glossary-8
SINGLE, 3-22, 3-24
Single sequence, 3-22
Single sequence off, 3-24
SINGLE TRIG button, 3-58
Single-shot sampling, 3-31
Site considerations, 1-6
Size, zoom, B-5, B-7
Slew rate trigger, 3-61, Glossary-15
600 ps limitation, 3-73
7.5 ns limitation, 3-73
how to set up, 3-71–3-96
Slope, Glossary-15
Slope, main trigger menu, 3-71
Slope, trigger, 3-48
Snapshot, B-11
Snapshot of measurements, 3-128
Software, upgrade, 1-3
Software installation, 1-10–1-12
Source, A Trigger control window, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71, 3-76
Sources, 3-121
Span, 3-163
Spectral analysis, displaying phase, 3-188
Spectral analyzer controls, 3-190
Spectral averaging, 3-160
Spectral controls, B-14
Spectral grading, B-10
Spectral Math, reference level, 3-166
Spectral math
3 dB BW in bins, 3-172
acquisition mode, 3-182
affects of frequency domain control adjustments, illustrated, 3-165
affects of trigger jitter, 3-181
aliasing, 3-182
averaging, 3-182
bandwidth, 3-190
Blackman-Harris, 3-170, 3-172, 3-177, 3-189
center, 3-164
center frequency, 3-190, 3-192
coefficients, 3-172, 3-173
coherent gain, 3-172
dB, 3-166, 3-187
dBm, 3-166, 3-187
defining spectral math waveforms, 3-160
definition of gate parameters, illustrated, 3-163
degree, 3-188
display the math control window, 3-184, 3-185
display the spectral waveform, 3-186
duration, 3-161, 3-191
duration and resolution control effects, illustrated, 3-162
example, 3-193
example of scallop loss for a Hanning Window without zero fill, illustration, 3-173
example of the effects of setting the phase suppression threshold, illustrated, 3-169
FFT length, 3-171
Flattop2 window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-179, 3-189
frequency domain controls, 3-160
frequency domain span, 3-191
frequency range, 3-190
frequency span, 3-190
gate controls, 3-162
gate duration, 3-191
gate position, 3-191
gating controls, 3-160
Gaussian window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-174, 3-189

group delay, 3-169, 3-188
Hamming window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-176, 3-189
Hanning window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-177, 3-189
how aliased frequencies appear in a spectral waveform, illustrated, 3-183
impulse response testing, 3-169
Kaiser-Bessel window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-177, 3-189
linear, 3-166, 3-187
magnitude verses frequency, 3-160
multiple analyzer control locks, 3-161
nearest side lobe, 3-172, 3-173
phase reference point, 3-191
phase reference position, 3-168
phase unwrap, 3-168
  algorithm, 3-168
  dejitter, 3-168
phase verses frequency, 3-160
radian, 3-188
real and imaginary magnitudes, 3-167
recognizing aliasing, 3-182
record length, 3-161, 3-191
Rectangular window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-175, 3-189
reducing noise, 3-188
reference level offset, 3-167
resolution, 3-161, 3-191
resolution bandwidth, 3-164, 3-190, 3-191
sample rate, 3-190, 3-191
scale factor, 3-187, 3-188
scallop Loss, 3-172
scallop loss, 3-172
select a predefined spectral analysis math waveform, 3-184
select a spectral waveform, 3-185
select spectral analysis setup, 3-185
select the window type, 3-189
set the frequency domain controls, 3-190
set the magnitude scale, 3-187
set the phase scale, 3-188
set the time domain controls, 3-191
set time and frequency domain control tracking, 3-189
setup, B-14
span, 3-163
spectral analyzer controls, 3-161
spectral averaging, 3-160
suppression threshold, 3-168
swept sine wave analysis, 3-184
take cursor measurements, 3-192
Tek Exponential window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-181, 3-189
Tek Exponential window in the time and the frequency domains, illustration, 3-181
time and frequency domain graphs for the Flattop2 window, illustration, 3-180
time and frequency domain graphs for the Rectangular window, illustration, 3-175
time and frequency graphs for the Gaussian Window, illustration, 3-174
time and frequency graphs for the Hanning window, illustration, 3-177
time and frequency graphs for the Kaiser-Bessel window, illustration, 3-178
time and frequency graphs of the Blackman-Harris window, illustration, 3-179
time and frequency graphs of the Hamming window, 3-176
time domain controls, 3-160
to define a spectral math waveform, 3-185
to select a predefined spectral math Waveform, 3-184
to take automated measurements of a spectral math waveform, 3-183
to take cursor measurements of a spectral math waveform, 3-183
unwrap phase, 3-188
using spectral math controls, 3-161
using the frequency domain controls, 3-163
using the gate controls, 3-162
using the magnitude controls, 3-166
using the phase controls, 3-168
using the time controls, 3-161
using windows to filter, 3-170
window characteristics, 3-170, 3-172
window functions, 3-160
windowing the time domain record, illustrated, 3-171
zero phase reference, 3-172, 3-173
Spectral math waveform
  aliasing, 3-182
  phase suppression, 3-168
  undersampling, 3-182
  zero phase reference, 3-173
Spectral math waveforms. *See* Spectral Math
Split cursors, 3-130
Spreadsheet, file format, 3-214
Standard deviation, 3-125, B-12
Start histogram counting, 3-137
State, main trigger menu, 3-80, 3-81
State trigger, 3-62, 3-80
  how to set up, 3-80
Statistical measurement, Glossary-15
Statistics, 3-125, B-12
  controls, B-12
  on measurement results, 3-120

Status, calibration, 3-140
Stddev, A-3

T

Technical support, B-16
  contact information, xvii
Tek Exponential window, 3-170, 3-172, 3-181
Tek Secure, 3-211, B-15, Glossary-15
Tektronix, contacting, xvii
TekVISA, 2-2
Temperature compensation, 3-139–3-144
Temperature grading, B-10
Termination, B-4
Text
  file format, 3-214
  On screen, 3-111
  on screen, B-9
Thresholds, A Trigger control window, 3-68, 3-72
Time, B-12
  get current, 3-232
Time base, Glossary-16
Time cursor readout values, 3-132
Time domain controls, 3-160
Timebase, 3-101
Timeout, trigger, B-7
Timeout trigger, 3-61, 3-76, Glossary-16
  A Trigger control window, 3-76
  how to set up, 3-76
  how to setup, 3-84
Timer, A Trigger control window, 3-76
To autoset the instrument, 3-9
To get more help, 3-10
To reset the instrument, 3-10
Touch screen, 3-99, 3-102
Trace, Glossary-16
Trace expression, Glossary-16
Track, B-11
Transition
  setup, B-8
  trigger, 3-61, B-7
Transition trigger, how to setup, 3-84
Trig delay, A Trigger control window, 3-91
Trigger, 3-44, Glossary-16
  A Only, 3-91
  AC line voltage, 3-45, 3-51
  auxiliary, 3-45, 3-51
  coupling, 3-47
  delay, 3-49
  edge, 3-45, Glossary-5
  glitch, 3-60, 3-65, 3-84, Glossary-6
  holdoff, 3-46
  level, 3-48, Glossary-16
  level marker, 3-112
  line, 3-45, 3-51
  logic, 3-59, 3-62
  marker, 3-112
  mode, 3-46
  overview, 3-43
  pattern, 3-61, 3-78
  position, 3-48
  pulse, 3-59
  readout, 3-53
  runt, 3-60, 3-67, 3-84, Glossary-14
  setup, B-7
  setup and hold, 3-84
  setup/hold, 3-62, 3-63, 3-81
  slew rate, 3-61, Glossary-15
  slope, 3-48
  source, 3-45
  state, 3-62, 3-80
  status lights, 3-53
  T, 3-112, B-10
  timeout, 3-61, 3-76, 3-84, Glossary-16
  transition, 3-61, 3-84
  types, 3-50
  width, 3-60, 3-69, 3-84
  window, 3-61, 3-74, 3-84
Trigger after A, 3-91
Trigger after events, 3-92
Trigger after time, 3-91
  how to set up, 3-91
Trigger and display, 3-5
Trigger MAIN LEVEL knob, 3-48, 3-50
Trigger menu
  a event (main) trigger setup, B-7
  a->b trigger sequence, B-8
  b event (delayed) trigger setup, B-8
  comm, B-7
  comm setup, B-8
  edge, B-7
  edge setup, B-8
  glitch, B-7
  glitch setup, B-8
  holdoff, B-8
  logic pattern, B-7
  logic pattern setup, B-8
  logic state, B-7
  logic state setup, B-8
  mode, B-8
  quick select, B-7
  run/stop, B-8
  runt, B-7
  runt setup, B-8

serial pattern, B-7
serial pattern setup, B-8
setup/hold, B-7
setup/hold setup, B-8
timeout, B-7
timeout setup, B-8
transition, B-7
transition setup, B-8
width, B-7
width setup, B-8
window, B-7
window setup, B-8
Trigger point, defined, 3-30
Trigger when
A Trigger, 3-79
A Trigger control window, 3-78, 3-81
transition is <, A Trigger control window, 3-73
transition time >, A Trigger control window, 3-73
Trigger with Reset, 3-94
Trigger, delayed, how to set up, 3-91
Trigger, glitch, how to set up, 3-65
Trigger, runt, how to set up, 3-67–3-96
Trigger, slew rate, how to set up, 3-71–3-96
Trigger, timeout, how to set up, 3-76
Trigger, width, how to set up, 3-69–3-96
Pinpoint triggering, overview of, 3-43
Triggering
advanced, 3-45
advanced triggering, 3-59
comm triggering, 3-46, 3-95
define inputs, 3-80
define logic, 3-80
define the clock source and edge, 3-82
define the data source, 3-82
delayed trigger system, 3-49
edge, 3-45
glitch trigger, 3-60
horizontal position, 3-48
logic qualify, 3-84
logic trigger definitions, 3-62
overview of, 3-43
pattern trigger, 3-61
posttrigger, 3-44
pretrigger, 3-44
runt trigger, 3-60
select glitch triggering, 3-65
select runt triggering, 3-67
select setup/hold Triggering, 3-81
select the polarity, 3-67, 3-69
select the polarity and width, 3-65
select the source, 3-65, 3-67, 3-69, 3-71, 3-76
select timeout triggering, 3-76
select transition triggering, 3-71
select width triggering, 3-69
sequential triggering, 3-85
serial pattern triggering, 3-46, 3-95
set the data and clock levels, 3-82
set the level, 3-66, 3-70, 3-77
set the setup and hold times, 3-83
set the thresholds, 3-68
set the timer, 3-76
set the transition time, 3-72
set thresholds, 3-80
set to trigger if width, 3-66
set to trigger when, 3-67, 3-70, 3-73, 3-76
set trigger when, 3-81
Setting mode and holdoff, 3-75
setup/hold trigger, 3-62
slope and level, 3-48
state trigger, 3-62
the trigger event, 3-44
timeout trigger, 3-61
to check trigger status, 3-53
to define a time qualified pattern trigger, 3-79
to define new trigger level presets, 3-57
to define pattern inputs, 3-78, 3-85
to define the logic, 3-78, 3-85
to e-mail on trigger, 3-58, 3-59
to force a trigger, 3-57
to logic qualify a trigger, 3-84
to select a preset trigger level, 3-56
to select the trigger mode, 3-52
to select the trigger slope, 3-50
to select the trigger source, 3-51
to select the trigger type, 3-50
to set holdoff, 3-55
to set level, 3-50
to set mode and holdoff, 3-66, 3-69, 3-70, 3-73, 3-77, 3-79, 3-81, 3-83
to set the trigger coupling, 3-52
to set thresholds, 3-78, 3-85
to set to 50%, 3-51
to set trigger when, 3-78
to set up B Triggering, 3-93
to single trigger, 3-58
to trigger based on transition time, 3-71
to trigger on A (Main) only, 3-91
to trigger on a glitch, 3-65
to trigger on a pattern, 3-78
to trigger on a runt pulse, 3-67
to trigger on a state, 3-80
to trigger on B After Time, 3-91
to trigger on B Events, 3-92
to trigger on setup/hold time violations, 3-81
transition trigger, 3-61
trigger and horizontal delay summary, 3-90

trigger based on pulse timeout, 3-76
trigger based on pulse width, 3-69
trigger coupling, 3-47
trigger holdoff, 3-46
trigger location and level from display, 3-54
trigger modes, 3-46
trigger on a pattern, 3-77
Trigger on a window, 3-74
trigger sources, 3-45, 3-86
trigger status from acquisition readout, 3-53
trigger status from trigger status lights, 3-53
trigger types, 3-45, 3-86
triggering concepts, 3-44
triggering from the front panel, 3-49
triggering with horizontal delay off, 3-86
triggering with horizontal delay on, 3-88
triggering with Reset, 3-89
using sequential triggering, 3-86
width, 3-60
window trigger, 3-61
Triggering from the front panel, 3-49
True for less than, main trigger menu, 3-79
True for more than, main trigger menu, 3-79
TRUE, A Trigger control window, 3-78, 3-81
TTL, 3-66, 3-72, 3-77, 3-82
A Trigger level, 3-57
trigger level, 3-56

U

Undershoot, Glossary-10
Undo autoset, B-3, B-5
Unpacking, 1-5
Update, software, 1-3
Upgrade, software, 1-3
URL, Tektronix, xvii
User files, backing up, 1-9
User palette, B-10
User preferences, B-16
USER, A Trigger level, 3-56, 3-57
Using the acquisition controls, 3-18
Using the waveform display, 3-98
Utilities menu
AUX Out configuration, B-15
external signals, B-15
GPIB configuration, B-15
instrument calibration, B-15
instrument diagnostics, B-15
multipurpose knobs, B-16
option installation, B-16
reference selection, B-15
set time and date, B-15
Tek Secure, B-15
user preferences, B-16

V

Value count, B-12
Value mean, B-12
Variable persistence, 3-114, 3-115, B-9
display control window, 3-113
Varying vertical offset, 3-14
V-bars, B-11
Vectors, 3-111, 3-113, B-9
display control window, 3-113
Verification, incoming inspection procedure, 1-19
Version number, B-16
Vert, B-12
Vertical
acquisition window, Glossary-16
acquisition window considerations, 3-12
bar cursors, Glossary-16
control window, deskew, 3-141
cursors, 3-130, 3-132
deskew, 3-141, Glossary-3
Vertical menu
attenuation, B-4
bandwidth, B-4
coupling, B-4
deskew, B-4
display on/off, B-4
label, B-4
offset, B-4
position/scale, B-4
probe cal, B-4
termination, B-4
vertical setup, B-4
zoom controls, B-4
zoom setup, B-5
Vertical offset, 3-101
discussion on setting, 3-12
Vertical position, 3-101
Vertical range, discussion on setting, 3-12
Vertical scale, 3-101
Vertical scale and offset
illustrated, 3-13
uses for, 3-3
Vertical setup, B-4
purpose, 3-3
Vertical window, overview, 3-11, 3-12
View, printing, 3-229
Virtual keyboard, control window, 3-199, 3-206
VNC, B-10
Voltage

overrange and underrange points, 3-12
overview, 3-12

W

Waveform, B-2, B-3, B-11, Glossary-16
clipping. *See* Clipping
copying, 3-213
count, A-3
database, 3-20, 3-24, 3-36, Glossary-17
differentiation, 3-149
display, 3-99
display on, B-10
displaying, 3-97
exporting, 3-213
FFTs, 3-160
histograms, B-12
integration, 3-151
intensity, 3-112
interpolation, 3-112, B-9
interval, Glossary-17
printing, 3-228
recalling, 3-205
save formats, 3-214
saving, 3-205
Waveform clipping. *See* Clipping
Waveform record, 3-30
definition applied to all channels, 3-17
illustrated, 3-30, 3-132
spectral source, long versus short, 3-161
Waveforms
and zoom, 3-105
clear, 3-211
delete, 3-211
Measuring, 3-119
Web site address, Tektronix, xvii
Width, Glossary-11, Glossary-12
setup, B-8
trigger, B-7
Width trigger, 3-60, 3-69
A Trigger control window, 3-69
how to set up, 3-69–3-96
how to setup, 3-84
main trigger menu, 3-65, 3-67
Window, 3-170
Blackman-Harris, 3-189
characteristics, 3-172
characteristics of, 3-170
Flattop2, 3-189
functions, 3-160
Gaussian, 3-189
Hamming, 3-189
Hanning, 3-189
Kaiser-Bessel, 3-189
rectangular, 3-189
rectangular vs. bell-shaped, 3-175
selecting, 3-171
setup, B-8
Tek Exponential, 3-189
trigger, 3-61
Window trigger
defining limits, 3-75
how to setup, 3-84
logic inputs, 3-75
setting up, 3-74
Source, 3-74
threshold levels, 3-74
trigger if, 3-75
Windows, descriptions of, 3-189

X

XY, format, 3-34, Glossary-17
XYZ, format, 3-34

Y

YT, format, 3-34, Glossary-17

Z

Zero phase reference point, 3-173
establishing for impulse testing, 3-173
Zoom, 3-99, 3-101, 3-105–3-118, 3-129
100%, B-5, B-7
50/50%, B-5, B-7
80/20%, B-5, B-7
a waveform, 3-107
and waveforms, 3-105
button, 3-106
controls, B-4, B-5
feature, 3-105
graticule, B-5, B-7
graticule size, B-7
lock, 3-110
reset zoom factors, 3-109
scroll, 3-110
setup, 3-101, B-5, B-6
Size, B-5